THE ISLAMIC TENDENCY IN AL-JĀḤIZ’S PROSE WORKS: A STUDY OF SELECTED TEXTS FROM THE RASĀ‘IL AL-JĀḤIZ COLLECTION

ZAMRI ARIFIN

A THESIS SUBMITTED TO UNIVERSITY OF WALES IN FULFILMENT OF THE REQUIREMENTS FOR THE DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

IN THE DEPARTMENT OF THEOLOGY AND RELIGIOUS STUDIES AND ISLAMIC STUDIES UNIVERSITY OF WALES, LAMPETER, WALES, UNITED KINGDOM

2005
ABSTRACT

The aim of this thesis is to examine the Islamic tendency in al-Jāḥīz’s prose works, with special reference to the selected texts from the Rasā‘il al-Jāḥīz collection. This thesis consists of eight chapters including the introductory chapter, and is divided into two parts. Part one covers three chapters. This part starts with an analysis of the historical background of study and literature review. It then proceeds to a brief discussion on the development of Arabic literature, and ends with a discussion on the significance of al-Jāḥīz and his prose work as a whole. Part two consists of five chapters. This part deals with an analysis of the text from twenty-one extant risāla from the collection. This covers textual introductions, an analysis of the main issue in the risāla, the use of the Qur’ān and Ḥadīth and the style of writing. In the course of investigating all these subjects, provisions of classical Arabic literature works, particularly al-Jāḥīz’s works, have been referred to and various sources of Arabic language and literature studies have been consulted.

It has been found in this thesis that the nature of al-Jāḥīz’s work focused on adab and social issues including religious, political, scientific elements etc. Al-Jāḥīz’s observations on Islamic elements and issues such as theological, legal, ethical and social are scattered among his rasā‘il. This study has also revealed that the rasā‘il of al-Jāḥīz, which has been chosen for an extensive study in this thesis, in many of its aspects constitutes a rich resource for Islamic studies. It would seem that the Qur’ānic verses and the Ḥadīth of the Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) constitute the main sources in al-Jāḥīz’s works. Therefore, we hope that this thesis will encourage further study, especially in the fields of Islamic studies and particularly in Arabic prose literature study.
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Praise be to Allah, Whom we beseech for aid, guidance and forgiveness, and to Whom we turn in repentance. We seek refuge with Allah from the wickedness within us and from our evil deeds. Whom Allah guide none may lead astray; whom He leaves in error has no guide. We testify that there are no other deities save God, Alone without partner. We testify that Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) is His Slave and His Messenger.

Over the three years in which I have been involved with this study, a lot of people have lent me assistance and encouragement. This study has also been made possible through the help extended to me by many gracious people to all of whom I am greatly indebted and grateful.

My deep and sincere appreciation goes to my supervisor Dr. Mawil Izzi Dien of the Department of Theology and Religious and Islamic Studies, University of Wales, Lampeter, who was tremendously instrumental in helping me to think systematically not only in relation to this study, but also to Islamic thought as a whole. I would like also to thank him for his encouragement and criticism throughout the stages of the preparation of this thesis. His incisive criticism on matters of substance and of style helped me to refine both my argument and my prose. It has been a great honour and pleasure to have been his student. Special thanks also go to Dr. Francis Knight, the Head of department of Theology and Religious and Islamic Studies, for
her help particularly to obtain the financial assistance of the Departmental Bursary; firstly, for attending a three months English course at University of Wales, Aberystwyth, and secondly, for collecting data at the School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London and the British Library. It was there that I was able to read the collection of al-Jāḥīz's work. Research for this thesis also took me to Egypt, where I had an opportunity to read and collect Arabic sources on al-Jāḥīz and Arabic prose literature in general. It is important to note that one particular part of this thesis was presented at BRISMES in 2004 which was held at SOAS, London. I wish to thank the TRS and UKM for making my presentation possible. I wish also to thank the chairperson and panellists of my panel for their valuable suggestions.

My special thanks also go to Professor Dr. Yusouf Izzi Dien, a famous Iraqi Adib and Dr. Mawil's father, who offered excellent advice and guidance at one particularly crucial point. In addition, he gave the benefit of his expertise and offered invaluable advice to me.

For the non-academic staff of UWL, I would like to firstly thank, Mrs Marlene Albett, the secretary of the Department of Theology, Paula Yates, the postgraduate assistant of the Department of Theology, for the help that they offered me. I thank also all the staff of the Academic Computer Service at UWL for all the facilities made available for my use. Thanks also go to all the staff of the UWL library (my second home) for their co-operation throughout my study, especially Mrs Jenny Brecher, the library administrator, and Ms Kathy Miles, of the inter-library loan section, for getting me the material not available in this library. I am indebted to Serena Gibb, Ian Showell and others, who have critically read early drafts of this thesis, corrected the
style and language of the thesis and offered valuable remarks. I would like also to take
this opportunity to thank all my friends in the Department of Theology and Religious
Studies. I spent my three years of college life in Wales among them, and by their
prayers to God I was supported. Also, all my colleagues in the Department of Arabic
Studies and Islamic Civilization, Faculty of Islamic Studies, The National University
of Malaysia, Malaysia.

Furthermore, this study would have been impossible without financial support
from the Malaysian Government through the National University of Malaysia (UKM)
and the Public Service Department Administration (JPA). This study would also have
never been completed without the support of my family. I would particularly like to
take this occasion to acknowledge with love and gratitude, my wife Hanani Yaacob,
and our four children – Nurul Haneen, Hifdzi Zaim, Hatem Zafir, Nurul Hilya – who
have given me the much needed companionship, understanding and constant support
and encouragement over the past three years. I also have to ask my wife and my
children to forgive me for not giving them enough time. Also, my gratitude goes to
my father, Almarhum (the Late) Haji Arifin\(^1\) and my mother Hajjah Aishah, and also
my parents in law, Haji Yaacob and Hajjah Rahmah, for their support to see this study
achieve its final form.

Finally, with the work of many scholars in the field of Arabic literature, I only
hope that this contribution will merit attention, and that readers will not spare me their
comments. I have drawn a lot of evidence from both past and present scholars as can

\(^1\)During the progress of the thesis, my father passed away on 16\(^{th}\) March 2004. It was a very difficult
and painful time for me because I had not seen him for more than two years, since I have been in the
UK to continue my study at UWL.
be seen from the footnotes and bibliography, and I am very grateful to all of them.

Needless to say, the responsibility for mistakes and any conjunctures remain mine alone. I have to admit that this thesis most certainly has its own weaknesses, due to lack of knowledge, experience and outlook. Hence, any suggestion for its improvement would be highly appreciated. I pray to God the Almighty to forgive the errors and mistakes I have made. Perfection and faultlessness only belongs to Allah, the Almighty.

والسلام عليكم ورحمة الله وبركاته
A. Transliteration:

Many Arabic words were transliterated into Roman alphabet in this thesis. The Library Congress System (LC) is used for this purpose. They are as follows:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ا} &= \text{a} \\
\text{ب} &= \text{b} \\
\text{ت} &= \text{t} \\
\text{ث} &= \text{th} \\
\text{ج} &= \text{j} \\
\text{ح} &= \text{h} \\
\text{خ} &= \text{kh} \\
\text{د} &= \text{d} \\
\text{ذ} &= \text{dh} \\
\text{ر} &= \text{r} \\
\text{ز} &= \text{z} \\
\text{س} &= \text{s} \\
\text{ش} &= \text{sh} \\
\text{ص} &= \text{s} \\
\text{ض} &= \text{d} \\
\text{ط} &= \text{t} \\
\text{ظ} &= \text{z} \\
\text{ع} &= \text{\`} \\
\text{غ} &= \text{gh} \\
\text{ف} &= \text{f} \\
\text{ق} &= \text{q} \\
\text{ك} &= \text{k} \\
\text{ل} &= \text{l} \\
\text{م} &= \text{m} \\
\text{n} &= \text{n} \\
\text{ه} &= \text{h} \\
\text{و} &= \text{w} \\
\text{ي} &= \text{y} \\
\text{ء} &= \text{\'} \\
\text{أ} &= \text{a} \text{ (in construct state – at)}
\end{align*}
\]

B. Vowels:

a) Long vowels:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ا} &= \text{\‘a} \\
\text{و} &= \text{\‘u} \\
\text{ي} &= \text{\‘i}
\end{align*}
\]

b) Short vowels:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ا} &= \text{a} \\
\text{و} &= \text{u} \\
\text{ی} &= \text{i}
\end{align*}
\]
C: Notes:

1. The proper names and the names of the well-known cities such as Muhammad, Ahmad, Abdullah, Mecca, Basra, Baghdad and Cairo etc., have been spell as internationally known.

2. The year of death (abridged as d.) had been given wherever available in both the Islamic (Hijri) and the Christian (or Common) calendars; e.g. 206/821-2 = 206 (Anno Hijrae) corresponding to parts of 821-2 (Anno Domini).

3. The letter (b.) is short for 'Ibn' = 'son of', whereas 'born' is written in full.

4. In the bibliography, author with Arabic names that begin with definite article “al” is listed according to their main surnames. For example, al-Jāḥīẓ is included under “J”.

LIST OF ABBREVIATION

This thesis has not used many abbreviations. The following is a list of abbreviations used in this thesis:

A.D. (*Anno Domini*): Gregorian calendar.

A.H. (*Anno Hegirae*): Islamic calendar.

Art. : Article.

b.: ibn (son of)

B.C.: Before Christ.

bt.: bint (daughter of)

cf. : compare.

d.: date of death of an author or scholar (to show the age in which he lived).

d. c: uncertain date of death of an author or scholars.

e. g. (*exempli gratia*): for example.

et. al. (*et. Alii*): and others.

etc. (*et cetera*): And the others; so forth.

Eds.: Editors.


i.e. (*id est*): that is.

MS: manuscript.

p.: page.

pp.: pages.

Pl.: Plural.

p.b.u.h.: Peace be Upon Him.
rev.: Revised.

r.: reign.

Sing.: Singular.

Transl.: Translation.

viz. (videlicet): namely.

Vol.: Volume.

vs.: Verses

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL ABBREVIATIONS

The following is a list of bibliographical abbreviation used in this thesis:

_Al-Aghānī_: Kitāb al-aghānī by Abū al-Faraj al-ʿAsfahānī.

_Al-Amārī_: al-Amārī fi lughāt al-ʿArab by al-Qāṭīnī.

_Al-Amkina wa al-miyāh wa al-jībāl_: Kitāb al-amkina wa al-miyāh wa al-jībāl by al-Iskandārī.

_Al-Bayān wa al-tabyīn_: Kitāb al-bayān wa al-tabyīn by al-Jāḥīz.

_Al-Bidāya wa al-nihāya_: Al-Bidāya wa al-nihāya fi al-tārīkh by Ibn Kathīr.

_Bughyat al-wuḥūt_: Bughyat al-wuḥūt fi ṭabaqāt al-lughawiyyīn wa al-nuḥāt by al-Suyūṭī.

_Al-Bukhārī_: Kitāb al-bukhārī by al-Jāḥīz.

_Al-Bursān wa al-Uṣūra_: Kitāb al-bursān wa al-Uṣūra wa al-ṣumyān wa al-ḥūlān by al-Jāḥīz.

_Faḍl al-fatīzāl_: Faḍl al-fatīzāl wa ṭabaqāt al-Muṭʿazālī by Abū al-Qāsim al-Balkhī.

_Al-Fakhrī_: al-Fakhrī fi adab al-sulṭānīyya wa al-duwal al-Islāmīyya by Ibn al-Taqāṭīnī.

_Al-Farq bayn al-firaq_: al-Farq bayn al-firaq wa bayān al-ṣirqa al-nājiyya minhum by al-Baghdādī.


_Al-Hayawān_: Kitāb al-hayawān by al-Jāḥīz.

_Ḥayāt al-hayawān_: Ḥayāt al-hayawān al-kubrā by al-Dāmirī.

_Inbāh al-ruwwāt_: Inbāh al-ruwwāt ʿalā anbāʾ al-nuḥāt by al-Qifṭī.

_Al-Intiṣār wa al-radd_: al-Intiṣār wa al-radd ʿalā Ibn al-Rāwandī al-Mulḥīd by al-Khayyāṭ.

_Jamʿ al-jawāhir_: Jamʿ al-jawāhir fi al-mulḥ wa al-nawādir by al-Ḥusnī.

_Jamharat ansāb al-ʿArab_: Kitāb jamharat ansāb al-ʿArab by Ibn Ḥazm.

_Jawāhir al-adāb_: Jawāhir al-adāb fi adabiyāt wa inshāʾ lughāt al-ʿArab by al-Ḥāshimī.

Kashf al-żunūn: Kashf al-żunūn  ṣan asāmī al-kutub wa al-funūn by Ḥājjī Khalīfa.


Kitāb al-kharāj: Kitāb al-kharāj wa śinā'at al-kitāba by Qudāma b. Ja’far.

Khizānat al-adab: Khizānat al-adab wa lub lubāb lisān al-ṣArab by al-Baghdādī.


Al-Maḥāsin wa al-aḍḍāl: Kitāb al-maḥāsin wa al-aḍḍād by al-Jāhīz.

Maqālāt al-Islāmiyyīn: Maqālāt al-Islāmiyyīn wa ikhtīlāf al-muṣallīn by al-Asfārī.


Murūj al-dhahab: Murūj al-dhahab wa maṣādīn al-jawhar by al-Mas‘ūdī.


Risāla fī kitmān al-sīr: Risāla fī kitmān al-sīr by Ḥifẓ al-lisān by al-Jāhīz.


Risāla fī al-nubl wa al-tanabbul: Risāla fī al-nubl wa al-tanabbul wa dhimm al-kibr by al-Jāhiz.


Al-ṣināʿṭayn: al-ṣināʿṭayn al-kitāba wa al-shīr by Al-Ṣaḵkarī.


Tārīkh Baghdādī: Tārīkh Baghdād aw madīnat al-salām by al-Khaṣīb al-Baghdādī.

Al-Tanbih wa al-radd: al-Tanbih wa al-radd ʾalā ahl al-ahwāʾ wa al-bidaʾ by al-Shāfī.


LIST OF THE TITLES OF AL-JĀHIZ’S BOOKS AND RASĀ’IL APPEARING IN THE TEXT WITH ENGLISH TRANSLATION

5. *Al-Burṣūn wa al-ʿurjān wa al-ʿumyān wa al-ḥūlān*: The book of lepers, cripples, the blind, cross-eyed.
18. *Risāla fi faṣl mā bayn al-rijāl wa al-nisāʾ wa farq mā bayn al-dhukūr wa al-ināš*: The difference between men and women, and the distinction between males and females.
29. Risāla fī al-maʾ āsh wa al-maʾ ād fī al-adāb wa tadbīr al-nās wa muʿ āmalatihim: Letter for this world and the next on manners, managing men and social relationship.
32. Risāla fī manāqib khulafāʾ banī al-ʾAbbās: The Virtue of the Caliphs of the Abbasids.
33. Risāla fī manāqib al-Turk wa ʾāmmat jund al-khīlāfā: The merit of the Turks and of the Imperial army as a whole.
34. Risāla fī al-masāʾil wa al-jawābū fī al-maʾ rifā: Questions and answers about knowledge.
35. Risāla fī al-mawadda wa al-khilāf: On affection and friendship.
38. Risāla fī muṣākhakar al-jawārī fī al-ghilmān: Boasting match between girls and pretty boys.
41. Risāla fī al-muball wa al-tanabbul wa dhimm al-kibr: True and assumed nobility: An attack on pride.
42. Risāla fī al-qiyār: Singing slave-girls.
44. Risāla fī al-shārib wa al-mashrīb: Drink and the drinkers.
45. Risāla fī sināʿat al-quwwād: The art of the masters craftsmen.
46. Risāla fī ʿabqāʿ al-muḥaṣṣarīn: Types of singers.
47. Risāla fī tafsīl al-baḥr al-zahr: Superiority of the belly to the back.

50. *Risāla fī taṣwīb ʿAlī fī taḥkīm al-ḥakamayn*: Support for ʿAlī over the arbitration by two arbiters.

51. *Risāla fī al-wuqā‘a wa al-muwakkalān*: Steward and those that appoint them.

52. *Al-Tāj fī akhlāq al-mulūk*: Book of the crown concerning the conduct of kings.
# TABLE OF CONTENTS
## (IN BRIEF)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ABSTRACT</td>
<td>i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DECLARATION / STATEMENTS</td>
<td>ii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS</td>
<td>iii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRANSLITERATION, VOWELS AND THE RULES OF APPLICATION</td>
<td>vii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS</td>
<td>ix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIBLIOGRAPHICAL ABBREVIATION</td>
<td>xi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIST OF THE TITLES OF AL-JĀḤIZ'S BOOKS AND RASĀ'IL</td>
<td>xiv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APPEARING IN THE TEXT WITH ENGLISH TRANSLATION</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TABLE OF CONTENTS (IN BRIEF)</td>
<td>xvii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TABLE OF CONTENTS (IN DETAIL)</td>
<td>xxi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## INTRODUCTORY CHAPTER

1-20

## CONCLUSION

20

### PART ONE

**AL-JĀḤIZ AND HIS WORKS**

### CHAPTER ONE: THE SIGNIFICANCE OF AL-JĀḤIZ

22-47

**CONCLUSION**

47

### CHAPTER TWO: THE SIGNIFICANCE OF AL-JĀḤIZ'S WORKS

48-93

**CONCLUSION**

93
PART TWO

A STUDY OF SELECTED TEXTS FROM THE RASÄ‘IL AL-JÄĦIZ COLLECTION

CHAPTER THREE: THE RASÄ‘IL CONCERNING THE ĀDĀB 94

3.1 Introduction 95-99

3.2 Risāla fi al-mdīl al-mdīs āsh 99-120

3.3 Risāla fi al-hāsid al-maḥsūd 121-134

3.4 Risāla fi faṣl mā bayn al-‘adāwa wa al-ḥasad 135-146

3.5 Risāla fi kitmān al-sirr wa hīf al-lisān 146-159

3.6 Risāla fi ḥafṣīl al-nuṭq ʿalā al-ṣamt 160-169

3.7 Risāla fi al-jidda wa al-hazl 170-181

3.8 Risāla fi al-nubl wa al-tanabbul wa dhamm al-kibr 182-190

3.4 CONCLUSION 190-191

CHAPTER FOUR: THE RASÄ‘IL CONCERNING THE SOCIAL GROUP ISSUES 192

4.1 Introduction 192-193

4.2 Risāla fi al-qiyān 193-206
4.3 Risāla fi al-nisā’ 207-214

4.4 Risāla fi mufākharat al-jawārī wa al-ghilmān 214-226

4.5 Risāla fi tafsīl al-baṣr al-ṣāliḥ al-gahār. 227-233

4.6 Risāla fi al-mu‘allimān 233-245

4.7 Risāla fi taqāṣū ah-mughannīn 245-249

4.8 Risāla fi dhamm al-kuttāb 250-254

4.9 CONCLUSION 254-256

CHAPTER FIVE: THE RASĀ'IL CONCERNING THE SEMI-THEOLOGY ISSUES 257

5.1 Introduction 257-259

5.2 Risāla fi ḥujaj al-nubuwwa 259-278

5.3 Risāla fi ṭal-radd al-ṣāliḥ al-mushabbīha 278-288

5.4 Risāla fi ṭal-shāriṭ wa al-mashhārūb 288-301

5.5 CONCLUSION 301-302

CHAPTER SIX: THE RASĀ'IL CONCERNING THE SEMI-POLITICAL ISSUES 303

6.1 Introduction 303-304

6.2 Risāla fi ṭal-radd al-ṣāliḥ al-Nāṣārā 304-327
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

## INTRODUCTORY CHAPTER

1.1 Background of the study. 1
1.2 Significance of the study. 5
1.3 Type of Research. 8
1.4 The Scope of Research. 9
1.5 Literature review/Survey of Sources 10
1.6 Aims and objective of study. 17
1.7 Organization of the study. 18
1.8 Conclusion. 20

## PART ONE

**AL-JĀḤIZ AND HIS WORKS**

### CHAPTER ONE: THE SIGNIFICANCE OF AL-JĀḤIZ

1.1 Al-Jāḥiz’s life. 22
1.2 Al-Jāḥiz’s Intellectual Development. 31
1.3 Al-Jāḥiz and Muʿtazila. 40
1.4 Conclusion. 47

### CHAPTER TWO: THE SIGNIFICANCE OF AL-JĀḤIZ WORKS

2.1 Prose literature work before al-Jāḥiz. 48
2.2 The Significance of al-Jāḥiz’s prose work. 53
2.3 A Brief Introduction to al-Jāḥiz’s main works:
   2.3.1 *Al-Ḥayawān* 61
   2.3.2 *Al-Bayān wa al-tabyīn* 66
   2.3.3 *Al-Bukhalāʾ* 70
2.4 Rasā'il of al-Jāḥīz.

2.4.1 The definition of Risāla.

2.4.2 The collection of the rasā'il of al-Jāḥīz.

2.5 The Significance of al-Jāḥīz’s Methodology of writing and composition.

2.6 Conclusion.

PART TWO

A STUDY OF SELECTED TEXTS FROM
THE RASĀ'IL AL-JĀḤĪZ COLLECTION

CHAPTER THREE: THE RASĀ'IL CONCERNING THE ĀDĀB

3.1 Introduction

3.2. Risāla fī al-maṣād wa al-maṣād

3.2.1 Title and the Text of the Risāla.

3.2.2 Addressee of the Risāla

3.2.3 The Purpose and the date of Writing.

3.2.4 Organization of the Text.

3.2.5 Analysis of the main issue in the Risāla.

3.2.5.1 Al-Jāḥīz’s instructions to his addressee.

3.2.5.2 The Conclusion of the Risāla.

3.2.6 The Use of the Qurʾān and Ḥadīth in the text.

3.2.7 The Language of the Risāla.

3.3 Risāla fī al-ḥāsid al-maḥsūd

3.3.1 Background of the Risāla.

3.3.2 The text of the Risāla.

3.3.3 Structure of the Risāla.

3.3.4 Analysis of the main issues in the Risāla.

3.3.4.1 Al-Jāḥīz’s view on Envy.

3.3.4.2 The Characteristic of Envious People.

3.3.5 The Use of the Qurʾān and Ḥadīth in the text.
3.3.6 Language of the Risāla.

3.4 Risāla fi ṭaṣallal mā bayn al-ʿadīwa wa al-ḥasad
3.4.1 Textual Background of the Risāla.
3.4.2 The Addressee and the date of composition.
3.4.3 Structure of the Text.
3.4.4 Analysis of the main issues in the Risāla.
   3.4.4.1 The Significance of the Risāla.
   3.4.4.2 The Nature of the Scholars.
   3.4.4.3 Enmity and Envy.
   3.4.4.4 Types of Envious People.
   3.4.4.5 The Conclusion of the Risāla.
3.4.5 The Style of Writing.

3.5 Risāla fi kitmān al-sīr r wa ḥīfẓ al-lisān
3.5.1 The title and the text of the Risāla.
3.5.2 The Addressee of the Risāla.
3.5.3 Outline of the Risāla.
3.5.4 Analysis of the main issue in the Risāla.
   3.5.4.1 The Tongue and the Reason.
   3.5.4.2 The Release of Secret.
   3.5.4.3 The Backbiting.
3.5.5 Analysis of the use of the Qurʾān in the text.
3.5.6 Analysis of the use of Ḥadīth in the text.

3.6 Risāla fi ṭaṣfiḥ al-nuṣq ʿalā al-ṣamt
3.6.1 The text of the Risāla.
3.6.2 The Addressee of the Risāla.
3.6.3 Outline of the Risāla.
3.6.4 Analysis of the main issues in the Risāla.
   3.6.4.1 Evidences of the Virtue of Speech.
   3.6.4.2 The Virtue of ʿIlm al-Kalām .
3.6.5 Analysis of the use of the Qurʾān and Ḥadīth.
3.6.6 The language of the Risāla.
3.7. Risāla fī al-jidd wa al-hazl 170
3.7.1 Text and title of the Risāla. 170
3.7.2 The Addressee and the date of composition. 171
3.7.3 Outline of the Risāla. 172
3.7.4 Analysis of the main issues in the Risāla. 173
   3.7.4.1 The Relationship between the author and his addressee. 174
   3.7.4.2 Some of Mu'tazilite doctrines. 176
   3.7.4.3 Final Instruction 177
3.7.5 Analysis of the use of the Qur'ān and Ḥadīth. 178
3.7.6 The Language of the Risāla. 180

3.8 Risāla fī al-nabl wa al-lanabbul wa dhamm al-kibr 182
3.8.1 The text of the Risāla. 182
3.8.2 The Addressee of the Risāla. 182
3.8.3 Outline of the Risāla. 183
3.8.4 Analysis of the main issue in the Risāla. 183
   3.8.4.1 The Definition of Nobility. 184
   3.8.4.2 The Definition of Pride. 185
   3.8.4.3 The Divine Pride. 186
   3.8.4.4 Pardonable Pride. 186
   3.8.4.5 The Pride of Iblīs. 187
   3.8.4.6 Other Issues within the Risāla. 187
3.8.5 Analysis of the Style of Writing. 188

3.9 CONCLUSION 190

CHAPTER FOUR: THE RASĀ'IL CONCERNING THE ISSUES OF SOCIAL GROUPS 192

4.1 Introduction 192

4.2 Risāla fī al-qiyyān 193
4.2.1 The Text of the Risāla. 193
4.2.2 The nature and purpose of the Risāla.
4.2.3 The Structure of the Risāla.
4.2.4 Analysis of the main issues in the Risāla.
  4.2.4.1 The issue of al-Qiyān.
  4.2.4.2 The issue of relation between men and women.
  4.2.4.3 The issue of legitimacy of song.
4.2.5 Analysis of the use of the Qur’an and Hadith.

4.3 Risāla fī al-nisā’.
  4.3.1 The text and title of the Risāla.
  4.3.2 The purpose and date of composition.
  4.3.3 Analysis of the content and style of writing.

4.4 Risāla fīmūskharaṭ al-jawāri wa al-ghilmān
  4.4.1 Background of the Risāla.
  4.4.2 The Structure of the Risāla.
  4.4.3 Analysis of the main issue in the Risāla.
    4.4.3.1 The issue of al-Liwāt (Homosexuality)
  4.4.4 The style of writing.

4.5 Risāla fī tasā’il al-baṣr ʿalā al-ṣadr.
  4.5.1 Background of the Risāla.
  4.5.2 The Structure of the Risāla.
  4.5.3 Analysis of the main issue in the Risāla.
    4.5.3.1 The homosexual practice.
    4.5.3.2 The merit of belly over the back.
    4.5.3.3 The penalty for the fornication.
    4.5.3.4 The conclusion of the Risāla.
  4.5.4 The style of writing.

4.6 Risāla fī al-muʿallimān
  4.6.1 The significance of the Risāla.
  4.6.2 The nature of the Risāla.
  4.6.3 The Structure of the Risāla.
4.6.4 Analysis of the main issue and the style of writing.
   4.6.4.1 The Mu'allim and Mu'addib.
   4.6.4.2 The question of homosexuality.
   4.6.4.3 The important of the Sultan.
   4.6.4.4 The question of the trade and merchants.

4.7 Risâla fi tabaqût al-mughannîn
   4.7.1 Background of the Risâla.
   4.7.2 The scheme of the Risâla.
   4.7.3 Analysis of the main issue in the Risâla.
      4.7.3.1 Branches of knowledge.
      4.7.3.2 The science and music.
   4.7.4 The style of writing.

4.8 Risâla fi dhamm al-kuttâb
   4.8.1 Background and the significance of the Risâla.
   4.8.2 Analysis of the Risâla.

4.9 CONCLUSION

CHAPTER FIVE: THE RASÂ'IL CONCERNING THE SEMI-THEOLOGY ISSUES

5.1 Introduction

5.2. Risâla fi hujaj al-nubuwâ
   5.2.1 The Significance of the Risâla
   5.2.2 Title of the Risâla.
   5.2.3 The text of the Risâla.
   5.2.4 The Time of composition.
   5.2.5 Outline of the Risâla.
   5.2.6 Analysis of the main issue in the Risâla.
      5.2.6.1 The proofs and signs of Nubuwâ.
      5.2.6.2 The author theology doctrine.
5.2.6.3 Evidence of Nubuwwa. 268
5.2.7 Analysis of the use of the Qur'ān and Ḥadīth in the text. 270
5.2.8 Language of the Risāla. 276

5.3 Risāla fi al-radd ʿalā al-mushabbiha 278
5.3.1 The Significance of the Risāla. 278
5.3.2 Date of composition and addressee of the Risāla. 279
5.3.3 The title and the text of the Risāla. 280
5.3.4 The Structure of the Risāla. 281
5.3.5 Analysis of the main issue in the Risāla. 282
5.3.5.1 The connection between the two risāla (i.e. Risāla fi al-radd ʿalā al-mushabbiha and Risāla fiṣnafy al-tashbih). 282
5.3.5.2 The meaning of “Tawḥīd”. 284
5.3.5.3 Category of the Anthropomorphist. 284
5.3.6 The style of writing. 286

5.4 Risāla fiṣal-shāriʿ wa al-mashrūb 288
5.4.1 The significance of the Risāla. 288
5.4.2 The addressee and the date of composition. 291
5.4.3 The Text of the Risāla. 292
5.4.4 The Structure of the Risāla. 293
5.4.5 Analysis of the main issue in the Risāla. 294
5.4.5.1 The introduction of the Risāla. 294
5.4.5.2 The advantages of Nabīḥ. 294
5.4.5.3 The disadvantages of Nabīḥ. 295
5.4.5.4 The type of Nabīḥ. 295
5.4.5.5 The reason of legitimacy of Nabīḥ. 296
5.4.5.6 Some additional juristic rules. 297
5.4.5.7 The purpose of the Risāla. 298
5.4.5.8 The conclusion of the Risāla. 299
5.4.6 The style of writing. 299

5.5 CONCLUSION 301
CHAPTER SIX: THE RASĀ'IL CONCERNING THE SEMI-POLITICAL ISSUES

6.1 Introduction

6.2 Risāla fi al-radd ʿalā al-Naṣīrī.
6.2.1 The significance of the Risāla.
6.2.2 The title and the text of the Risāla.
6.2.3 The addressee and the purpose of composition.
6.2.4 The Date of writing.
6.2.5 The Structure of the Risāla.
6.2.6 Analysis of the main issues in the Risāla.
   6.2.6.1 The issue of Muslims-Christians-Jews relation
   6.2.6.2 The doctrine and custom of Christianity.
   6.2.6.3 The argumentative issues.
6.2.7 The style of writing.

6.3 Risāla fī manākiš al-Turk wa ʿummā jund al-khilāfa
6.3.1 The Significance of the Risāla.
6.3.2 The Addressee of the Risāla.
6.3.3 The Date and the purpose of writing.
6.3.4 The title and the text of the Risāla.
6.3.5 The Structure of the Risāla.
6.3.6 Analysis of the main issue in the Risāla.
   6.3.6.1 The composition of army.
   6.3.6.2 The catalogue of virtue.
      6.3.6.2.1 The Khurasānī group.
      6.3.6.2.2 The Arab group.
      6.3.6.2.3 The Mawālī group.
      6.3.6.2.4 The Banawi group.
      6.3.6.2.5 The virtue of the Turks.
6.3.7 The style of writing.
6.4 CONCLUSION

CHAPTER SEVEN: THE RASĀ'IL CONCERNING THE QUASI-SCIENTIFIC ISSUE

7.1 Introduction.

7.2. Risāla al-tarbi' wa al-tadwīr.

7.2.1 The significance of the Risāla.

7.2.2 The Text and the title of the Risāla.

7.2.3 The Addressee of the Risūla.

7.2.4 Time and purpose of composition.

7.2.5 Outline of the Risūla.

7.2.6 Analysis of the main issue in the Risāla.

7.2.6.1 The introduction.

7.2.6.2 Catalogue of embarrassing questions.

7.2.7 Analysis of the use of the Qur'ān and Ḥadīth.

7.2.8 The Language of the Risūla.

7.3 Risūla fi tafṣīl al-sūr al-bādīn.

7.3.1 The significance of the Risūla.

7.3.2 Title and date of composition.

7.3.3 Text and structure of the Risūla.

7.3.4 Analysis of the main issue in the Risūla.

7.3.4.1 The virtues of the Blacks.

7.3.5 The style of writing.

7.4 CONCLUSION

CONCLUDING REMARKS

GLOSSARY OF ARABIC LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE TERMS

INDEX OF AL-JĀḤIZ' WORKS AS APPEARED IN MŪCJAM AL-UDĀBĀ' BY YĀQŪT AL-ḤAMAWĪ (d. 626/1229)

BIBLIOGRAPHY
A: PRIMARY SOURCES: 398
1.0 THE QUR'ĀN. 398
2.0 THE ḤADĪTH. 398
3.0 AL-JĀḤİZ'S WORKS. 398
4.0 OTHER THAN AL-JĀḤIZ'S WORKS. 402

B: SECONDARY SOURCES: 407
1.0 BOOKS. 407
2.0 ENCYCLOPEDIA. 414
3.0 DICTIONARY. 415
4.0 ARTICLES IN JOURNAL. 415
5.0 ARTICLES IN PROCEEDING. 417
6.0 OCCASIONAL PAPERS. 418
7.0 THESIS. 418
8.0 INTERNET. 418
INTRODUCTORY CHAPTER

1.1 Background of the Study:

It has been known that Arabic literature is one of the richest literary traditions in the world. Its history reached more than fifteen hundred years and it is generally divided into six periods: 1) the Pre-Islamic period; 2) the Early Islamic period; 3) the Umayyad period; 4) the Abbasid period; 5) the Mamlûk period; and 6) the Modern period.

To begin with, the first phase of Arabic literature was the pre-Islamic period (al-
\(^{\text{c}}\)Asr al-Jāhilî) or known as “the Heroic Age”\(^2\) which covers two centuries at least.\(^3\) A number of literary works such as shír (poetry), Khufba (oratory), and risāla (letter/epistle) etc. were written down during this period but, as described by Bakalla and the majority of them were handed down orally.\(^4\) The second phase of Arabic literature is the early Islamic in which the Qur‘ān was revealed and Muslim poets and writers started to produce what was to be later recognized as the beginnings of Islamic literature.\(^5\)

---

\(^1\) F.F. Arbuthnot suggests that Arabic literature may be divided into three main periods only. These are as follows: 1) The time before Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h), 2) From Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h) and his immediate successors, viz, Abū Bakr, ʿUmar b. al-Khaṭṭāb, ʿUthmān b. ʿAffān, ʿAlī b. Abī Ṭālib, through the Umayyad and Abbasid dynasties, to the end of the Caliphate of Baghdad (656/1258), and 3) From the fall of Baghdad to the present time. See Arbuthnot, Arabic Authors; a manual of Arabian history and literature, William Heinemann, London, 1890, p. 25.


\(^3\) Bakalla, Arabic culture through its language and literature, Kegan Paul, London, 1984, p.113.


\(^5\) Bakalla. Arabic culture, p.113.
third phase of Arabic literature is the Umayyad period of which the famous Arabist from the University of Oxford, Hamilton Gibb called "The Age of Expansion". Abd al-Ḥamīd al-Kātib (d. 132/750) and Ibn al-Muqaffa were recognized as the two foremost literary prose writers of this period.

The fourth phase of the Arabic literature is to be found in the Abbasid period that is known as the richest intellectual and literary age of the Arabs. At this time, Arabic literature reached a high standard and complexity. Goldziher, also one of the western Arabists, describes Arabic literature, which includes poetry and prose, at this period, as "a polite literature". Normally, among scholars, Arabic literature at this time is subdivided into two periods. The first period is known as the Golden Age and the second period as the Silver Age. The Golden Age period stretched from the year 132/750 and continued until 334/1055, and the Silver Age started from the year 334/1055 until 656/1258. Baghdad, the new capital for the Abbasid government and one of magnificent cities of the medieval world, became the centre of learning and every kind of intellectual life including literature. When explaining this situation in Baghdad, Gibb states that it was like 'the market' for literature and arts. Therefore, it was generally accepted as profound changes in Muslim social, political and intellectual cultural alike.

---

6 Gibb, Arabic literature, p. 32.
7 Bakalla, Arabic culture, p. 113.
10 Gibb, Arabic literature, p. 46.
11 Ibid., p. 46.
Al-Jāḥiz, who will be our focus in this present study, is rated as the most popular prose writer during this period.

The following period is the age of Mamlūk. It extends from the year 656/1258, which witnessed the end of the Abbasid Caliphate in Baghdad, until the year 1198/1800, which marks the beginning of Modern Arabic literature. This last period is also known as the nahḍa period which according to some account starting in the later half of the 19th century in Lebanon, then spreading to Egypt and Syria, then to other parts of the Arabic speaking world.

In early Arabic literature especially in the Umayyad period and the beginning of the Abbasid period, a kind of secretary art was employed to lay down the rules of conduct and behaviours for different classes of people. These rules were written in various literary styles and introduced in the shape of poems and anecdotes, etc. Thus, whoever occupies himself with classical Arabic literature will sooner or later find numerous prose works have come down from this period such as Risāla ilā al-kuttāb by Abd al-Ḥamīd al-Kātib and al-Adab al-kabīr and al-Adab al-ṣaghīr by Ibn Muqaffa.

---

12 Ibid, p. 142.
13 This term usually translated in English as ‘renaissance’ or ‘revival’, it was first used by Jurjī Zaydān and some other scholars to describe the process of Arabic literary and cultural development which occurred during the second half of the nineteenth and early twentieth century. For further detail, see Encyclopedia of Arabic literature, art. Al-Nahda, Vol. II, pp. 573-574. Nowadays, this movement is running under the new term which called “the Ḥadatha movement”. For excellent observation on this movement especially the Ḥadatha movement in Saudi literature, see, Izzi Dien, Religion, the State and the Ḥadatha movement in Saudi literature, BRISMES, (St. Andrew), 1992, pp. 574-581.
14 Beeston, Sample of Arabic Prose, p. 4.
Certainly, this type of writing ‘Adab’ was also a popular literary exercise in the Abbasid age and it is accepted amongst Arabic prose works, which combined anecdotal prose with other elements, including Qur’anic verses, Ḥadīth of the Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) and poetry. In this basis, it seems to me that Arabic literature in many of its aspects constitutes a rich resource for Islamic studies. In addition, our knowledge of Islamic medieval society depends almost exclusively upon literary sources. Therefore, it has been stated that anyone who seeks to understand the social, economic, political and intellectual life in Islamic history or the nature of foreign influences upon the people, can find echoes of all these things in poetry as well as in literary prose. For that reason, the main corpus of Arabic literature of the first two centuries of Islam is clearly the works of men deeply involved in the theological, political and social issues of the day. In conjunction with this matter, Chejne claims that in Arabic prose literature, especially in belles letter during the Abbasid period, writers such as al-Jāḥiz (d. 255/885), Ibn Qutayba (d. 276/890), al-Tanūkhī (d. 384/994), and Abū Ḥayyān al-Tawḥīdī (d. 419/1028) developed this branch of literature work into a height never attained before. Few specimens of such writing have been preserved by classical scholars. Special mention should be made of the works of al-Jāḥiz. On this basis, this present study will focus on all these considerations with special reference to the risāla of this famous Abbasid’s prose writer, known as al-Jāḥiz. 16

16 It is important to note here concerning the differences of the pronunciation of the nickname of “al-Jāḥiz”, whether it is al-Djāḥiz, Jāḥiz, al-Jāḥiz, al-Gāhez or al-Yāḥiz. Pellat, for instance used al-Gāhez or al-Djāḥiz, Walker in his translation of the works of al-Jāḥiz used Jāḥiz (without “al”) and Serafin Fanjul in his translation of Bukhalā’ into Spanish used al-Yāḥiz (al-Yāḥiz Libro de los Avaros, Madrid 1984), Ramazan Sėsėn in his catalogue of MS of al-Jāḥiz’s works at Topkapi Museum in Istanbul used Cāḥiz (Ramazan Sėsėn, Cāḥiz in ecerelinin Istanbul Kutu-phanelerindeki, Sarkiyat Mecmuasi, VI, 1965). This thesis, however, will use al-Jāḥiz with Arabic article “al” because “al-Jāḥiz” is already known throughout most centuries of Islamic history particularly in the area of Arabic literature studies.
1.2 Significance of the Study

Al-Jāḥīz lived more than a thousand years ago; however, there is consensus among scholars, researchers and students of Arabic literature that the writing of al-Jāḥīz constitutes a peak of literary attainment in Arabic. As a literary figure of the first rank, it is agreed unanimously that al-Jāḥīz has attracted much attention from students of Arabic literature. He is regarded as “one of the early masters of Arabic prose literature, a humorist, he was also a theologian associated with the Muʿtazilite movement. He was an adīb, a man of letters who hoped to educate his readers. He was a scholar of rare distinction in Arabic prose literature”.\(^\text{17}\) It is widely acknowledgeable that al-Jāḥīz can be considered as one of the first Muslim prose writers who expressed a great interest in Islamic thought. For al-Jāḥīz, as described by Khalidi, Islam in intellectual aspect is a beginning and not an end; this is based on al-Jāḥīz’s belief that Islam had inherited world civilization.\(^\text{18}\) This means that Islam did not end all intellectual activities but rather advancing it and the Qurʾān and Ḥadīth are the starting points for that advancement. Khalidi added that neither the veneration of antiquity of foreign cultures nor a conservative refusal to tolerate foreignness was acceptable but an open-mindedness which sought wisdom in all its manifestations, and whatever its sources.\(^\text{19}\)

\(^{19}\) *Ibid*, p. 104.
It is interesting to note here that al-Jāḥīz has over forty of his writings — of varying length — survive to the present day, from an estimated total of upwards of one hundred and twenty, or another estimated puts the figure at three hundred and sixty. Although much of his work has already been published, a vast field remains to be studied and explored. Almost all of his works deal with various subjects, as was described by Pellat, which includes animals, Arabic rhetoric and poetry, national characteristics, ethical qualities, human sexual behaviour, the various professions and ways of making a living and in fact countless other matters.

Bearing this issue in mind, one can easily understand why much research has been devoted to the study of al-Jāḥīz’s work and has occupied the minds of many. And indeed, much has been written regarding this great writer as Jackson comments, concerning the keenness of his observation; the insights he gives into the social life of the Basra of his day, the subject of his intellectual coterie, and in relation to his religious inclinations, in particular his espousal of Muṣṭazilite doctrines and so forth. While we would agree with Jackson on this, most of these studies have been written in Arabic, with very few written in English or other languages. In addition, most part of the research is centred on his contribution to literary form and expression, and not on the content of his ideas.

It is in this spirit that this present study that another aspect of al-Jāḥīz’s prose works will be examined. This study will concentrate on the Islamic tendency in al-Jāḥīz’s prose works. As far as we are aware, his observations on Islamic issues such as theological, legal and ethical, social are scattered throughout his books and rasā‘il. Therefore, any research project such as this must define its boundaries, since the potential area of research is too vast to encompass within one study. So, this thesis offers only an extensive analysis of this aspect in the selected texts from the Rasā‘il al-Jāḥīz collection.

To date, no work has focussed exclusively on this side, a vacuum which this study attempt to fill. Thus, the significance of this study emerges from the fact that the previous studies only focus on main works such as al-Ḥayawān, al-Bayān wa al-tabyān and al-Bukhārī as can be seen in the survey of sources in the following literature review.

In the effort to reach a good understanding of the topic that we are going to discuss in this thesis, a study of the rasā‘il al-Jāḥīz’s work is essential. For the purpose of this study, there are a number of his risāla that we can examine because it contains a vast amount of raw material for our subject of the discussion. We believe that the study of these rasā‘il can give us as much as information for our interest. Worth mentioning, by way of example, his Risāla al-tarbi‘ wa al-tadwīr, which is satirical work, as can be seen later on, where al-Jāḥīz has discussed various Islamic issues. Many of them are religious questions relating to the Prophet Ādam and Satan, to other prophets, kings, peoples and historical events mentioned in the Qur’ān, to angels and devils, to Paradise, Hell and the Day of Judgment, etc.24

---

24 The detail analysis of the risāla can be found in chapter seven of this thesis.
According to Mański, these entire elements arise in al-Jāḥiẓ’s works because the era of al-Jāḥiẓ witnessed the recording of the commentaries on the Qur’ān. For example, al-Ṭabarî (d. 310/923) and his *tafsīr* belong to a later period than that of al-Jāḥiẓ, but it contains the kinds of commentaries that circulated in earlier times. At the time of al-Jāḥiẓ also witnessed a great effort of collecting and examining the large body of Ḥadīth literature. It is enough here to mention as an example that al-Bukhārī (d. 256/870), the famous Ḥadīth scholar, was a contemporary of al-Jāḥiẓ. From this point of view, this study will also investigate the Qur’ānic verses and the Ḥadīth text that had been quoted by the author. Therefore, we hope that this study will be a new contribution to studies concerning al-Jāḥiẓ and his works.

1.3 Type of Research:

There are two basic locations for research: outside and inside. Outside research is what we call fieldworks. Fieldworks or field research deals with real life, while library research deals with whatever has already collected by field research. From this point of view, this present study is mainly a library research or inside research.

For this research, we have a variety of material we can utilize, especially printed sources. There are different kinds of printed sources we can use in this type of research such as handbooks, dissertation or thesis, periodicals, occasional papers, and etc. We have several resources, for instance, *Adab* literature, anecdotal and narrative literature,

---

historical literature, biographical literature and miscellaneous sources. Moreover, this study is inter-disciplinary, since it looks at texts from the *Rasāʾil al-Jāḥiẓ* collection from various angles and at empirical evidence.

1.4 The Scope of Research:

As it has been mentioned earlier that al-Jāḥiẓ has written a huge number of works with varying length and some of them are surviving to the present day, all of these works can be divided into two types; books and *rasāʾil*. The focus of this present study will be on the second type i.e. the *rasāʾil* by a detailed analysis of twenty-one extant Jāḥiẓian works.

This study will be based extensively upon the collections of the *rasāʾil* of al-Jāḥiẓ that have been edited by different scholars. The first collection is *Rasāʾil al-Jāḥiẓ* edited by ʿAbd al-Salam Muhammad Hārūn which in four volumes (Cairo, 1964-79) and reprinted by Dār al-Jīl, Beirut in 1991. The other collection is *Rasāʾil al-Jāḥiẓ* edited by Muhammad Bāsil ʿUyūn al-Sūd. This collection consists of four volumes printed by Dār al-Kutub al-ʿIlmiyya, Beirut in 2000. On the other hand, other works of al-Jāḥiẓ, apart from his *rasāʾil* are also taken into consideration here, since they contain references to the subject under discussion.
1.5 Literature Review/Survey of Sources:

It is possible to come across a wide range of books written by Arabs scholars concerning al-Jāḥiz and his works. So, the literature that this study is based on are primarily and secondary books, articles, and written materials produced by Arabs scholars and some Western scholars. Most of the material collected for the present study is in Arabic, but other parts of it are in English or translated into English.

In Adab literature particularly in classical period, these books can be among our references such as "Uyun al-akhbār by Ibn Qutayba (d. 276/889), al-Iqd al-farīd by Ibn ʿAbd Rabbih (d. 328/940), al-Aghānī by Abū al-Faraj al-Aṣbahānī (d. 363/972), al-Ṣināʾī by Abū Hilāl al-Ṣaʾkārī (d. 393/1005), Zahr al-šdāb by al-Ḥusayn al-Qayrawānī (d. 413/1022), Subḥ al-ṭaḥā by al-Qalqashandī (d. 821/1418), and al-Mustaqaff by al-Ibshīḥī (d. 850/1446) etc. All this books hopefully will provide us with some views about the works of al-Jāḥiz.

In addition, we will refer to historical literature books to find some information about personal life and also the political, economic and social condition in al-Jāḥiz’s era such as Tārīkh al-umam wa al-mulūk by al-Ṭabarī (d. 314/923), al-Kāmil fi al-tārīkh by Ibn al-Athīr (d. 630/1233), al-Bidāya wa al-nihāya by Ibn Kathīr (d. 774/1373), and al-Muqaddima by Ibn Khaldūn (d. 780/1378), etc.
On the other hand, Islamic biographical literature books are also important. It is varied, and often rich, in its genres. It offers collection of biographies of tradionists, judges, poets, grammarians, the Qur’ān reciters, exegetes, writers, women and other. This kind of writing is one of the most extensive areas of Arabic literature, because it is devoted to the life and works of individual authors throw many sidelights on the topic, which we are discussing now. The length of notices varies widely, some are very detail and some others are very brief. For example, Yāqūt al-Ḥamawī (d. 626/1229), author of the monumental biographical work “Muḥjam al-udabā” devotes thirty pages to discuss about al-Jāḥīz life and works (Cairo edition). Some other biographical dictionary also offers an account of al-Jāḥīz such as Murūj al-dhahab by al-Mas‘ūdī (d. 345/956), Anbāh al-ruwwāt by al-Qīṭṭī (d. 646/1248), ʿUyūn al-anbāʾ by Ibn Abī ʿUṣaybiʿa (d. 668/1270), Wafayāt al-ʿāyān by Ibn Khallikān (d. 681/1282), Bughyat al-wušāt by al-Suyūṭī (d. 911/1505) and Shadharāt al-dhahab by Ibn al-ʿImād (d. 1089/1679), etc.

Miscellaneous sources from the classical period also important to the study. For instance, the heresographical writings such as al-Farq bayn al-firaq of al-Baghdādī (d. 429/1037) and al-Mīlal wa al-nihāl of al-Shahrastānī (d. 459/1153). A long account of al-Jāḥīz’s theology side appeared in these two books. Al-Jāḥīz, as the founder of a particular sect of Muṭtazila, has a place in al-Mīlal wa al-nihāl, the standard work of al-Shahrastānī, as we shall see in later discussion. In addition, the bibliographical works such as al-Fihrist by Ibn Nadīm (d. 385/995), Sarḥ al-ṣuyūn by Ibn ʿUbdūṭa (d. 768/1366) and Kashf al-zāmīn by Ḥājjī Khalīfa (d. 1067/1657), the Ansāb literature particularly Kitāb al-Ansāb

---

27 Yāqūt, Muḥjam al-udabāʾ, Dār al-Maʿmūn, Cairo, undated, Vol. XVI, pp. 74-106. This work is also known by the title of Irshād al-arīb.
by al-Samānī (d. 562/1167), the geographical and historical works such as *Mūrūj al-
dhahab* by al-Masūdī (d. 345/956) also supply us with fragments of information and
cross references which are, at time necessary as other literary sources to construct a
composite picture of famous Arabic prose writers and their works.

However, the secondary sources are at various times very important and of a great
assistance to our present study, not because of the information they supply but for their
analysis and criticism of primary sources. There are number of Eastern and Western
scholars who have examined various aspects of al-Jāḥiz’s life and his prose works either
in Arabic or other languages.

For example, it is vital to understand that numerous secondary sources have been
written in Arabic regarding al-Jāḥiz’s life and works by Arabs scholars. Sandūbī, an
Egyptian scholar, for instance, draws very detail information about al-Jāḥiz’s life and
works in his book *Adab al-Jāḥiz*.28 Most of his material was drawn from primary sources.
As a result, the detail evidence present in the book cannot be found in any other
secondary sources. Al-Ḥājirī, another Egyptian scholar, describes Jāḥiz’s life and works
in his book *al-Jāḥiz ḥayātuh wa āḥāruh*. Besides giving a vivid picture of al-Jāḥiz’s life,
he puts al-Jāḥiz’s achievements in order to classify them according to the stages of al-
Jāḥiz’s biography and this study also offers a brief study of individual works by al-
Jāḥiz.29 Shafīq Jabrī, another scholar of al-Jāḥiz contributes towards the studies of al-
Jāḥiz through his book *al-Jāḥiz muḍallim al-aql wa al-adab*. In this book, Shafīq Jabrī

analysed al-Jāḥīz’s writing in a general approach. Nevertheless, the analysis of the original elements in al-Jāḥīz scientific inquiry is the most important part of Jabri’s book.\(^{30}\)


In addition, a number of Western scholars have also examined some aspects of al-Jāḥīz’s work. Charles Pellet, for instance, is of course, the acknowledged learned and the highest authority in the west on al-Jāḥīz, hugely contributes towards al-Jāḥīz’s studies by collecting and translating selected works of al-Jāḥīz in his book ʿThe life and works of Jāḥīz. This book is the fruits of many years of his research. According to Beeston, it is a noteworthy contribution towards making Arabic literature available to English reader.\(^{31}\)

\(^{30}\) See Jabri, al-Jāḥīz muʿallim al-ʿaql wa al-adab, Dār al-Maʿārif, Cairo, 1948.

This book was published firstly in French in 1967 and then translated into English 1969 and German in 1967. Pellat divides this book into two parts; twenty-seven pages on “the life and works” which serve as an introduction to main bulk of the book and in effect, this introduction is a summary of previous published articles. The main bulk of the book and the most valuable part consist of the second part, which contains a large number of short extracts from the whole range of al-Jāḥīz’s works.

Pellat, in addition, publishes critical edition and translates some of al-Jāḥīz’s works into French such as al-Bukhālāʾ and al-Tāj fī akhlaq al-mulūk which is attributed to al-Jāḥīz. However, his magnum opus devoted to al-Jāḥīz’s studies is entitled Le milieu basri en et la formation de Gāḥīz. In this book, Pellat draws some information about al-Jāḥīz’s life especially when he was in Basra, Baghdad and then in Sāmarrāʾ. This book has been translated into Arabic by Ibrāhīm al-Kīlānī.32 Subsequent of these books, Pellat’s article in The Encyclopaedia of Islam on al-Jāḥīz provides us with very useful material for this present study.33

On the other hand, the translation of some part of rasāʾil of al-Jāḥīz begins with William M. Hutchins in his Nine Essay of al-Jāḥīz. This translation is his tribute to the memory of Joseph Thayer Skold. The author translates nine risāla or essay34 of al-Jāḥīz namely Kitāb al-sirr wa ḥifẓ al-lisān, al-Fasıl mā bayn al-ṣadā wa al-ḥasad, Dhamm akhlaq al-kutāb, al-Maʾāsh wa al-maʾād, Fī al-jidd wa al-hazī, Mufākharat bayn al-

32 See Pellat, al-Ḥāj, fī al-Bāṣra wa Baḥḏḏl wa Sāmarrāʾ, Trans. by: Ibrāhīm al-Kīlānī, Dār Yaqzat al-
34 Hutchins prefers to use “essay” rather than “epistle”.
jawārī wa al-ghilmān, Taṣfīl al-baṭn ʿalā al-zahr, and Manāqib al-Turk. Only Risāla fī taṣfīl al-baṭn ʿalā al-zahr is translated from a MS in the British Library, and the rest from ʿAbd al-Salām Muhammad Hārūn’s edition. This translation starts with a brief introduction of al-Jāḥīz’s life and works and ends with a general bibliography and index. According to Beeston, this is a brave attempt at a terribly difficult task.35

Jim Colville is another translator who had already translated some of al-Jāḥīz’s prose work. Al-Bukhalā’ of al-Jāḥīz is his first translation. In Colville’s second book entitled Sobriety and mirth: a selection of the shorter writing of al-Jāḥīz, the author translates some shorter rasā’il of al-Jāḥīz such as al-Maʃāsh wa al-maʃūd, Fakhr al-sūdān ʿala al-bīlān, Fī al-maṣīh wa al-maḥsūd, Taṣfīl al-baṭn ʿala al-zahr, Mufākharat bayn al-jawārī wa al-ghilmān, and etc.36 Hārūn’s edition has been used by Colville as the basic text for this translation. This book is relatively recent writing on the Rasā’il of al-Jāḥīz that we have.

Other authors who have dealt with the classical Arabic literature has also given a brief information about the life and works of al-Jāḥīz, either directly or indirectly, such as Goldziher by his book A Short History of Classical Arabic Literature,37 Gibb through his book Arabic Literature: an introduction,38 and Brockelmann through his great book Geschichte der Arabischen Litteratur that has been translated into Arabic. Brockelmann’s

37 Joseph DeSomogyi in his preface to the book remarks that this is the only text-book written by Ignaz Golziher (1850-1921), Professor of Semitic at the University of Budapest, Hungary. It was written in Hungarian with the title of Az Arab irodalom rövid története and translated into Croatian under the title of Kralja povijest arabske knjiženosti.
38 Gibb, Arabic literature: an introduction, pp. 75-77.
book contains valuable resource material and is of interest to the academic reader particularly to the student of Arabic literature. Moreover Watt gives some explanation of the maturing of Arabic prose literature in his book *The Majesty that was Islam*. Arabic Authors: A Manual Arabian History and Literature written by F.F. Arbuthnot that has been published in 1890 is the first English book giving brief information concerning classical and medieval Arabic author including al-Jahiz.

Apart from these sources, there has been considerable extensive research at Doctorate level conducted on al-Jahiz and his works. Wadra Najm for instance, in her thesis entitled *Studies on the writing of al-Jahiz* deals with al-Jahiz’s social works such as *al-Bukhalā‘* and some of the *rasā‘il* of al-Jahiz. She tries to draw out through al-Jahiz’s works a picture of Abbasid society with its classes and social problem that occurred during that period.

Sa‘id H. Mansur in his Ph.D thesis entitled “*The Worldview of al-Jahiz in Kitāb al-Ḥayawān*” attempts to clarify the place of religion in al-Jahiz’s worldview in his magnus opus, al-Ḥayawān. He says that this thesis purport to find out al-Jahiz’s worldview as exemplified in this masterpiece and it tries to reconstruct al-Jahiz’s outlook on the universe and analyses his conception of the entire system of life. Whereas Mathias Zahniser focuses only on *Kitāb or Risāla fi al-‘Uthmāniyya* by al-Jahiz in his

---

40 Watt, *The Majesty that was Islam*, pp. 182-183.
Ph.D. thesis entitled "The ʿUthmāniyya of al-Jāḥīz: An analysis of content, method and sources". The author points out that The ʿUthmāniyya of al-Jāḥīz was a risāla or treatise on the imamate, and it was written for Caliph al-Maʿmūn. This risāla shows us the nature of the caliph's religious policy.44

A recent study that we have is by Lebenese Jamāl F. El-ʿAttār which contains valuable insights on al-Jāḥīz's political thought. Through his Ph.D. thesis entitled "The political thought of al-Jāḥīz with special reference to the question of Khilāfa (Imamate): A chronological approach", the author attempts to reconstruct chronologically al-Jāḥīz's political works and thought by a detailed analysis of twenty-seven extant Jāḥīzian works including books and some rasāʾil.45

As we have seen above, the material survey in this introductory chapter is relatively abundant, and its content is rich and sometimes is colourful. Based on these all works, we hope to reach to our aim in this study.

1.6 Aims and Objectives of Study:

This study will focus on the following objectives:

1. To study some of the earliest literary works in classical Arabic prose literature particularly in the Abbasid period.

2. To arrive at more fruitful understanding of al-Jāḥīz’s works especially in his *rasāʾil*.

3. To investigate that ‘Arabic literature in many of its aspect constitutes a rich resource for Islamic studies’.

4. To identify the Islamic tendency in the *rasāʾil* of al-Jāḥīz which contains the considerable Islamic interest.

1.7 Organisation of the Study:

This present study will be divided into two parts with the following tentative chapters:

Introductory Chapter contains of the background of study, significance of study, scope of study, aims and objective of study and literature review and survey of the sources, and at the beginning of this chapter, it is our task to introduce the structure of Arabic literature in brief.

PART ONE of the thesis is focuses on the historical background of al-Jāḥīz. The important of the studying the historical context lies in the essential role played by al-Jāḥīz in the development of prose literature writing. Part one consists of chapter one and two. Chapter one will focus briefly on the significance of al-Jāḥīz, which includes the personality of al-Jāḥīz and the development of his intellectual life.
In Chapter two, the discussion goes on to the significance of al-Jāḥiẓ’s works in general, which includes his main extant books and *risāla*. Before that, this chapter will also shed some light on an overview of Arabic prose literature before al-Jāḥiẓ and then give some introduction note about the development of early Abbasid prose literature. This chapter ends with the discussion on the significance of al-Jāḥiẓ’s methodology of writing and composition.

PART TWO of the thesis focuses on the extensive reading and analysis of the selected texts from the *Rasā’il al-Jāḥiẓ* collection. It begins with chapter three which is focuses on the *rasā’il* concerning ʿAdāb which carried the meaning of manners and character traits. There are seven *risāla* in this category such as *Risāla fi al-ma’ād wa al-māsh*, *Risāla fi faṣl ma ḏaṣ al-ṭadāv wa al-ḥasad*, *Risāla fi al-ḥāsid wa al-maḥsūl*, *Risāla fi kitmān al-sirr wa ḏifz al-lissān*, *Risāla fi taḥqīl al-mutq ‘alā al-ṣamt*, *Risāla fi al-jidd wa al-hażl* and *Risāla fi al-nubl wa al-tanabbul wa dhamm al-kibr*.

The study in chapter four will go further onto examine *rasā’il* of al-Jāḥiẓ on the issues of social group. This part of an investigation goes on to look at *Risāla fi al-qiyān*, *Risāla fi al-nisā’, Risāla fi musāfkarat al-jawārī wa al-ghilmān*, *Risāla fi taḥfīl al-bāqī ‘alā al-zahr*, *Risāla fi tābaqāt al-mughannān*, *Risāla fi al-mufallimān* and *Risāla fi dhimm al-kuttāb*.

In Chapter five, the study will then continue to analysis of the Islamic tendency in al-Jāḥiẓ’s semi-theological works. The focus will be on *rasā’il* concerning an account of
Mu'tazilite doctrine such as *Risāla fi ḥujaj al-nubuwya*, *Risāla fi al-radd ʿalā al-mushabbīha* and *Risāla fi al-shārib wa al-mashrūb*.

Then, the discussion of chapter six will be extended into rasāʾil concerning the semi-political works particularly the rasāʾil which contains the meaning of the defense of the Abbasids against their opponents such as *Risāla fi al-radd ʿalā al-Naṣārā* and *Risāla fī manākib al-Turk*.

In final chapter, the study will examine risāla on quasi-scientific works. There are two risāla of this type, which will be analysed, i.e. *Risāla al-tarbī ʿ wa al-tadwīr* and *Risāla fī fakhr al-sūdān ʿalā al-bīqān*.

This present study will then end with concluding remarks.

1.8. Conclusion:

We hope that the present study might give the reader an appreciation on the significant of al-Jāḥiz' s literary prose work for Arabic literature and Islamic thought at that time and in the present time because some of his work still remains to be translated into the English language and into other prominent western and eastern languages, and we hope that it will be done some day thoroughly and well. In addition, we hope the work of this present study is attempted to realise one part of al-Jāḥiz' s studies that scholars of al-Jāḥiz has sketched and also can revise the common image of this great scholar.
PART ONE

AL-JĀḤIZ AND HIS WORKS
CHAPTER ONE

THE SIGNIFICANCE OF AL-JĀḤĪZ

1.1 Al-Jāḥīz's Life:

Biographical sources are agreed upon his *ism* (name): 'Amr b. Baḥr b. Maḥbūb al-Fuqaymī al-Kinānī al-Laythī al-Baṣrī. They also agree on his *laqab* (nickname): al-Jāḥīz (the google eyes)46 which must have been given to him in childhood.47 His *kunya* (surname) is Abū ʿUthmān.48 However, Yāqūt al-Ḥamawī records in his bibliographical dictionary that al-Jāḥīz forgot his *kunya* for several days.49

---


According to the other tradition, al-Jähiz is also known by the nickname al-Hadaqi\(^{50}\) as he sometimes introduces himself to other people in his hometown as al-Hadaqi.\(^{51}\) As a matter of fact, al-Jähiz is not happy with all these nicknames, he urges the people in his hometown to call him "Amr, his real name which he quite happy with.\(^{52}\) In addition, al-Ibšihî in his *al-Mustatraf* records some verses of Abbasid poetry which describes al-Jähiz’s face as being uglier than a pig.\(^{53}\) However, this is not surprising, as al-Jähiz himself informs us that the Caliph Mutawakkil intended to appoint him as tutor to his sons, but was deterred by his ugliness, and dismissed him with a present of ten thousand dirhams.\(^{54}\) On this basis, the view may be put forward with some confidence that al-Jähiz’s face was indeed very ugly.

Al-Jähiz was born in Basra; however, the date of his birth cannot be determined precisely. Dates from 159 A. H.\(^{55}\), 160 A.H.\(^{56}\) and 168 A.H.\(^{57}\) have been suggested. The most we can do is to place his date of birth somewhere in the middle of the second century of *hijra*, particularly during the regency of al-Manṣūr, the second Caliph of the

---

\(^{50}\)This *laqab* comes from the root (قح)، which for according to Ibn Manṣūr (d. 711/1311) has the same meaning with (قح)، see, Ibn Manṣūr, *Lisan al-ʿArab*, Dār al-Maʿārif, Cairo, undated, Vol. I, p. 550 & Vol II, p. 806.


Abbasid dynasty who was in power from 136 A.H. to 158 A.H.\textsuperscript{58} Yaqūt says that al-Jāhiz was a mawla (client) of the Banū Kīnāna, and his grandfather, Fazara was black.\textsuperscript{59}

Not much is known about al-Jāhiz’s childhood. From the few references to his childhood, it is reported that his family was very poor. He lived with his mother in a small house in Basra. Al-Jāhiz was seen selling bread and fish on the Sayhān,\textsuperscript{60} a canal in Basra, dug by Yaḥyā bin Khālid al-Barmakī (d.c. 182/805).\textsuperscript{61} Sometimes al-Jāhiz received some occasional gifts from unexpected patrons instead of selling fish and bread.\textsuperscript{62} Here, one can catch brief glimpses of the independently-minded boy of his future service to Islam.

We find in the references of his biography that the turning point in al-Jāhiz’s life came when he moved to Baghdad, where he had close ties with court official and influential Abbasid figures. According to Hārūn, al-Jāhiz was at that time fifty years old.\textsuperscript{63} This means that al-Jāhiz spent half the period of his life in his birthplace, Basra, before he decides to move to Baghdad in the reign of the Caliph al-Ma’mūn. During his reign, the Caliph recognised the potential of al-Jāhiz to be a scholar.


\textsuperscript{60} See Yaqūt, Muṣjam al-udābā‘, Vol. XVI, p. 74.

\textsuperscript{61} About the location of the canal, see Yaqūt, Muṣjam al-udābā‘, Dār Ṣādir, Beirut, undated, Vol. III, p. 293.


\textsuperscript{63} Hārūn, Tahdhib al-khayrāt wa al-Jāhiz, Maktabat al-Khanjī, Cairo, 1983, p. 4.
Al-Ma'mūn himself is known for his awareness of his contribution to the intellectual life of his age. It is reported that al-Ma'mūn asked al-Jāḥiẓ to write a book about al-Imāma.⁶⁴ From this moment, al-Jāḥiẓ's brilliant career got its start particularly when the Caliph al-Ma'mūn was pleased with the quality of his works. Al-Jāḥiẓ also had a close ties with Muhammad b. ⁶⁵ Abd al-Malik b. al-Zayyāt (Ibn Zayyāt) the vizier of al-Mu'taṣīm. As well as being a vizier, Ibn Zayyāt was also a famous adīb. He died in 233 A.H. during the reign of Caliph al-Mu'tawakkil.⁶⁶ It is reported that al-Jāḥiẓ received a gift of four hundred acres of land from him.⁶⁶ During his vizierate, al-Jāḥiẓ had a chance to visit some other cities, such as Cairo in Egypt and Damascus in Syria and within this time he had frequent return trips to Basra.⁶⁷ However, according to Pellat, there is no evidence that al-Jāḥiẓ went on even a single trip to Mecca to perform a ḥaǰj.⁶⁸ As a result of his travel, he came into personal contact with various races, atmospheres and geographical enviroments. Perhaps, his Kitāb al-buldān, which, has not survived, is the result of this travel.⁶⁹

Al-Fatḥ b. Khāqān (d. 247/861), who is a powerful statesman and a famous littérature, is another important figures that al-Jāḥiẓ had close ties with.⁷⁰ During his vizierate, he helps al-Jāḥiẓ develop close ties with the caliph al-Muṭawakkil and he also

---

⁶⁶ Pellat, The life and works of Jāḥiẓ, p. 6.
⁶⁷ Al-Fākhūrī, al-Jāḥiẓ, p. 18.
⁶⁸ Pellat, The life and works of Jāḥiẓ, p. 8.
⁶⁹ Yaqūt al-Ḥamawi has mentioned this book in his list of al-Jāḥiẓ's works. See, Yaqūt, Muṣ'jam al-maktaba', Vol. XVI, p. 108.
asks al-Jāḥīz to accompany him on trip to Sham and then to Egypt. Nevertheless, although, in this age of patronage, al-Jāḥīz presents himself to his readers as an independent author who has received no commission because when asked if he had a plantation in Basra, al-Jāḥīz replied that his establishment in Basra consisted of himself “and a woman to serve her, a man servant and a donkey”.

Ibrāhīm b. Sayyār b. Ḥānī, who is better known as al-Nazzām and born in Basra, is also an important figure that had a great influence on the personality and life of al-Jāḥīz. He was a great scholar of Mu’tazila and his followers were known as al-Nazzāmiyya. Al-Nazzām was al-Jāḥīz’s first teacher in Mu’tazilite doctrine. Al-Mas’ūdī (d. 345/956) informs us that al-Jāḥīz was the ghulām (page/boy) of al-Nazzām. Al-Jāḥīz was proud of his teacher and it is reported that he claimed that al-Nazzām was a Mujaddid (reformer) in the second/eight century.

A careful reading of the references, we do at least know that al-Jāḥīz also had close ties with other important figures during his time, such as Ibrāhīm b. ʿAbbās al-Ṣūlī (d. 234/857), Thumāma b. al-Ashras (d. 213/828), Abū Muhammad al-Yazīdī (d. 202/817), Ahmad b. Abī Duʿād (d. 240/854), and his son Muhammad. Thumāma and Ahmad b. Abī Duʿād are al-Maʿmūn’s advisers and both of them are said to have played a significant role in encouraging the Abbasid caliphs to hold and enforce their dogma of Iʿtīzal as the state belief. Abū Muhammad al-Yazīdī, a grammarian and poet who served

---

72 Sandūbī, Adab al-Jāḥīz, p. 32.
75 Al-Balkhī, Fāḍl al-Sīzāl, Dār al-Tunisiyya, Tunis, 1974, p. 256.
the Abbasids court, is said to have introduced al-Jähiz’s work to al-Ma’mún. Nevertheless, according to Hutchins, patronage of these people sometimes put somebody in dangers, as well as riches. For example, al-Jähiz was nearly to be tortured in Tunnūr by Ahmad b. Abī Du’ād. However, al-Jähiz reportedly fled at that time.

The first official profession al-Jähiz is known to practise was that of Kātib (Secretary). This was during al-Ma’mūn reign, however, it is reported that al-Jähiz held this government post in Dīwān al-rasā’il, and he resigned after three days. Concerning the duty of secretary at Dīwān al-rasā’il, Qudāma b. Ja’far (d. 326/938) describes that is being similar to the duty of a minister. It was the ultimate goal for many Baghdadi or Iraqi families since it not only led to rich and the possibility of placing family and friends in similar posts but also was the route to the vizierate. As a result, Sahl b. Hārūn, one of al-Jähiz’s best friends is even quoted as having said: “While al-Jähiz holds this post, there will be no future for the rest of the secretaries”. On this basis, most probably, these people were feeling envy towards al-Jähiz.

---

76 El-Atţār, The political thought of al-Jāhiz, p.45.
78 This tool (a spike-studded drum) originally has been created by Muhammad b. ‘Abd al-Malik al-Zayyāt (Ibn Zayyāt) and it is used for torture and punishes his enemies. See Ibn al-Athīr, al-Kāmil, Vol. VII, p. 37.
79 Yāqūt, Mufr jam al-udabā’, Vol. XVI, p.77.
80 The word of Dīwān (pl. Dawān) originally has many meaning. The Dīwān al-Mutanabbi for instance is a collection of his poems. Later, the word was used of an office or bureau of government. By the end of the Umayyad period, the government bureaucracy, organized as a group of dāwān or government departments. Under Abbasids, the existing dāwān increased in size and complexity. For more detailed views on the development of Dīwān, see, al-Qalqashandi, Subh al-cfshā, Vol. I, p. 89; The Encyclopaedia of Islam, art. Dīwān, Vol. II, p. 323-336; Glassé, The Concise The Encyclopaedia of Islam, art. Dīwān, p. 101.
81 Yāqūt, Mufr jam al-udabā’, Vol. XVI, p. 79.
84 Yāqūt, Mufr jam al-udabā’, Vol. XVI, p. 79.
85 Al-Bāṣīr, Ftal-udab al-‘Abbāsī, Matba’at al-Nu’mān, Baghdad, 1970, p. 44.
died in 426/1035, comments on this event by saying that al-Jāḥîẓ’s ugliness prevented him from achieving the degree of success at that Dīwān.\textsuperscript{86} However, we can say that al-Jāḥîẓ probably did not like to be tied up by such official duties; he wanted to be free to continue with his own work.

On the other hand, some classical Arab scholars, such as al-Nuwayrī (d. 732/1331) and al-Qalqashandī (d. 821/1418), claimed that whoever was chosen to be a secretary in Dīwān al-rasā’il should have to fulfil several criteria, for instance: an open mind, good personality and to be knowledgeable in every fields of sciences, etc.\textsuperscript{87} Whilst Gibb refers to the position al-Jāḥîẓ held in his time as follows: “Although as a Muʿtazilite, his views were so tempered by his breadth of mind that, we are told, ‘he was held in high esteem among both Muʿtazilites and non-Muʿtazilites, by all the learned who knew men and could judge affairs’”\textsuperscript{88}

Before the end of his life, al-Jāḥîẓ left the capital city Baghdad, returning to his hometown in Basra. This was probably before the assassination of al-Mutawakkil and al-Faṭḥ b. Khāqān in 247/861.\textsuperscript{89} When al-Jāḥîẓ came back to his hometown, he was partially paralysed and complained that while one side was totally insensitive, the other ached with pain if a fly passed. The cause of al-Jāḥîẓ’s illness has been stated by Ibn Abī Uṣaybi’a (d. 668/1270) in his ‘Uyun al-anbā’ as follows: “one-day al-Jāḥîẓ has been invited to a dinner at house of vizier, Ismā’īl b. Bulbul (d. 278/892), and he was

\begin{itemize}
\item \textsuperscript{88} Gibb, Arabic Literature, p. 75.
\item \textsuperscript{89} Ibid., p. 9.
\end{itemize}
accompanied by Yūḥannā b. Māsawayh (d. 243/857). Fish and milk were among the
dishes that had been served. Al-Jāḥiẓ ate both of these dishes. As a result, al-Jāḥiẓ
suffered from hemiplegia (fālij) and gout (nigris)". According to report mentioned in
Surh al-ṣuyūn by Ibn Nubata (d. 768/1366), Ibn Bukhāshī (d. 256/870), a doctor, was
among those who were present at the time. He has already warned al-Jāḥiẓ from eating
fish and milk together. Nevertheless, al-Jāḥiẓ did not heed this warning and proceeded to
eat. Al-Jāḥiẓ is reported also that was not only suffered from hemiplegia and gout, but
also that he suffered from calculus stone in his urine which meant that he did not feel
well.

In the final year of his reign, the caliph al-Mutawakkil sent a delegation to Basra
inviting al-Jāḥiẓ to meet him; however al-Jāḥiẓ declined the invitation for reasons of ill
health and age. During his illness he often said to his friends: “Sicknesses of opposite
against my body. If I eat anything cold, it strikes my feet, and if I touch anything hot, it
goes to my head”.

Al-Jāḥiẓ died in Basra, his birthplace, in the month of Muḥarram 255 A.H. (either
the first or last month of 868 A.D.) during the reign of the Caliph al-Mu'tazz. This
means that al-Jāḥiẓ lived up to age of ninety-six. However, according to another
( Perhaps less reliable) source, al-Jāḥiẓ died in Baghdad, and his coffin was said to be

96 Golziher, A Short history of classical Arabic literature, p. 81.
buried in Khaizurān Cemetery in Baghdad. By referring to the date of his death, it seems al-Jāḥīz had lived and accompanied twelve great Abbasid caliphs from al-Manṣūr (r. 126-158 A.H.) to al-Muʿtaṣīz (r. 252-255 A.H.).

One further point should be stressed regarding the cause of death of al-Jāḥīz. There is a different version of his death from a later tradition in which Ibn al-ʿImād (d. 1089/1679) quotes in his Shadharīʿ al-dhahab that al-Jāḥīz was crushed to death under a pile of books in his private library in his home. It is possible that such a thing could happen because according to some scholars, al-Jāḥīz’s house was crowded with bookshelves. It is obvious to us that the most likely cause of death was old age, because al-Khaṭīb al-Baghdādī (d. 463/1071) in his Tārīkh Baghhdādī informs us that when al-Jāḥīz died, his age was more than ninety years old.

It can be seen from the long life of al-Jāḥīz, that he was no doubt the product of the Golden age of Abbasid rule which, as Nicholson says, was marked by a great intellectual development. In his brief description of the atmosphere in which al-Jāḥīz’s mind was born, Nicholson says, “All sorts of new ideas were in the air. It was an age of discovery and awakening. In a marvellously brief space the diverse studies of theology,

100 Al-Khaṭīb al-Baghdādī, Tārīkh Baghhdādī, Vol. XII, p. 218.
law, medicine, philosophy, mathematic, astronomy, and natural science attained their maturity, if not their highest development.”

It is notable that the Abbasid dynasty was established about one generation before the birth of al-Jāḥīz and this period of the time was a great period in Islamic history. Al-Jāḥīz in his works had described some of the Abbasid caliphs as great persons in Islamic history namely, al-Saffāḥ, al-Manṣūr, al-Ma’mūn and al-Mu’tasim. In the Abbasid period the capital city had been transferred from Damascus to Baghdad. As a new capital city, Baghdad became a new environment for different nations including Arabs, Persians and later Turks, to start a new life. At the beginning of the Abbasid dynasty, the Persian influence began to prevail over every aspect of society’s life and thinking. This had a great influence on al-Jāḥīz’s personality and his intellectual life.

1.2 Al-Jāḥīz’s Intellectual Development:

It was reported that al-Jāḥīz attended a traditional school al-Kuttab in the Banū Kināna residential area to study under scholars who were teaching the Qur’ān, Ḥadīth and Arabic grammar (Naḥw and Ṣarf). There are no records telling us at what age al-Jāḥīz

---

4. Al-Kuttab (pl. al-Katūtib) or al-Maktab was an elementary school in the second and third century. The curriculum included Qur’ānic studies and other subjects, such as Ḥadīth, Sūra, Arabic grammar and arithmetic instead of instruction and guidance in worship and good behaviour. For more information about al-Kuttab, see Ghirbāl, al-Mawsī‘a al-ʿarabiyya al-muyassara, Dār al-Shaʿrāb, Cairo, 1965, p. 1441.
was admitted into this *kuttāb* nor do we know when he left it. We do know, however, that al-Jāhiz attended this *kuttāb* when he informs us that Abū al-Wazīr and Abū ʿAdnān were among his teachers at *kuttāb*. At this stage, Pellat says that al-Jāhiz started his first formal education in Basra - which he has described as a birthplace of Arabic prose - under some of the finest and the most distinguished scholars of his day.

Yaḥyā has listed the names of scholars that al-Jāhiz studied under when doing his advanced studies in Basra, namely al-Nazzām, al-ʿĀṣmaʾī (d. 213/828), Abū ʿUbayda al-Muthannā (d. 209/825), Abū Zayd al-Anṣārī (d. 215/831) and al-Akhfash al-Awsat (d. 221/835). Al-Jāhiz learnt Arabic education from al-ʿĀṣmaʾī, Abū ʿUbayda al-Muthannā and Abū Zayd al-Anṣārī. All three were famous philologists and scholars who made a fundamental contribution to the development of Arabic culture. Al-Akhfash al-Awsat was his teachers in Arabic grammar.

Al-Jāhiz is said to have studied Ḥadīth with Abū Yūsuf Yaʿqūb b. ʿIbrāhīm al-Qāḍī, Yazīd b. Ḥārūn, al-Sarī b. ʿAbdawayh and al-Hajjāj b. Muhammad b. Ḥammād b. Salama. Lastly, al-Jāhiz studied *ʿilm al-kalām* (theology), especially Muʿtazilite thought, with al-Nazzām, Thumāma b. al-Aṣhras, Bishr b. al-Muʿtamir and Ahmad b. Abī Duʿād. These scholars contributed and played a big role in the intellectual formation of

---

109 Al-Jāhiz himself mentioned these names of scholars in his *al-Bayān wa al-tabyīn* in which he called them as *al-Rawwālīn*. For instance, he writes “I got to know the *rawwālīn* who were among the regular attenders at the great mosque and the Mirbad”. See al-Jāhiz, *al-Bayān wa al-tabyīn*, Vol. IV, p. 23.
al-Jāḥiz. For this reason, al-Jāḥiz attributes one of his *rasāʾil* entitled *Risāla fī al-muʿallimīn* to praising this group of scholars and defends their profession.\(^{112}\)

In addition, al-Jāḥiz also informs us that he sometimes went to mosques and joins the groups called *al-Masjidīyyūn*\(^{113}\) of which he mentions several times in his *Bayān wa al-tabyīn* and *Bukhālā*.\(^{114}\) These people gathered at the mosque in Basra to discuss a wide range of knowledge such as al-Qurʾān, Ḥadīth, Qurʾānic exegesis and Arabic grammar because it was usual at that time for education to take place in the mosque, where the teacher sat surrounded by a *halqa* (circle) of young people.\(^{115}\) Every scholar was knowledgeable in all branches; the philologist was also a Qurʾānic interpreter, a theologian, a philosopher, and historian, etc. Al-Jāḥiz informs us that the Muhammad b. Rughbān mosque and Banū Māzin mosque were famous mosques where these groups had their gathering.\(^{116}\) In addition, he tells us that he studied Qurʾānic exegesis under supervision of Abū ʿAlī al-Iswārī without mentioning the name of the mosque where the *halqa* was held.\(^{117}\) When he moved to Baghdad, he continued this habit by joining *Masjidīyyūn* who held their gathering at the Baghdad mosques where he

---


\(^{113}\) *Masjidī* (pl. *Masjidīyyūn*), an adjective formed from *masjid*. *Masjidī originally was a group of adults and young people who were accustomed to meet together in that building. Pellat suggests that these *masjidīyyūn* were members of the bourgeois, or idlers who exchanged ideas and held conversations on varied subjects. The group was diverse, including, among others, poets and transmitters of poetry. Al-Jāḥiz was the first writer tells us about this group particularly in his *Bukhālā*. He always refers to these people as follows: “Our companions from among the Masjidītes said”. See al-Jāḥiz, *al-Īkāwān*, Vol. III, p. 360; *al-Bukhālā*, p. 29; for more information on the term, see *The Encyclopaedia of Islam*, art. Masjidī, Vol. VI, p. 709.


found the same atmosphere with Masjidīyyūn group at Basra. This shows us that besides serving as institution for teaching the Islamic sciences, the mosque was used for the teaching of adab studies.

In addition, al-Jāhiz also attends, as a spectator; the philological enquires conducted by scholars who he called Mirbadīyyūn who were based at Mirbad, which was probably located not very far from his house. Mirbad attracted many visitors including celebrities, such as grammarians, orators, and poets etc. According to Abū al-Faraj al-Asfahānī, Bashshār b. Burd (d. c.167/784), a great Abbasids poet, was among the celebrities who always attended this place. Al-Jāhiz had many opportunities to meet these people and increase his learning. When describing the knowledge that al-Jāhiz received in Mirbad, Malti-Douglas called it “extra academic”.

What is remarkable to mention concerning al-Jāhiz’s learning is that al-Jāhiz use to hire the shops of the manuscript copyists (i.e. bookstore) and would spent the entire night there studying the books in order to increase his knowledge. However, regarding this matter, Malti Douglas said that Pellat poses the very interesting question as to where and how, aside from the way described above; al-Jāhiz could have had access to books in

---

118 Pellat, The life and works of Jāhiz, p. 8.
119 Mirbad or Sūq Mirbad was a famous market place outside Basra town. Unfortunately, this place was destroyed by the al-Zanj when they fought against the Abbasid government between 255-270 A.H. For the location of this place, Yaqūt, Muḥjam al-buldān, Vol. V, pp. 97-98; al-Iṣṭakhrī, al-Masālik wa al-mamālik, E.J. Brill, Leiden, 1927, p. 80; The Encyclopaedia of Islam, art. al-Mirbad, Vol. VII, pp. 113-115.
122 Malti-Douglas, Structure of Avarice, p. 33.
his native Basra. Firstly, because there were no public libraries in the city, and even more importantly, the cost of books was such that our author could not have had it within his means to buy many of them. One is tempted to draw the same conclusion as Pellat, that it was certainly the friends and teachers of al-Jāhiz who gave him access to their private libraries.\textsuperscript{124}

Apart from the learning described in the above venues, al-Jāhiz might also go to personal lectures. Some of the scholars at that time might address a gathering of people within their own home. For example, it has been said that Khalaf al-Aḥmar (d. c.180/796), who succeeded al-Kisāʾ (d. c. 189/804) as tutor to the children of Hārūn al-Rashīd (r. 170/786-193/809), delivered his lectures in his own splendid residence.\textsuperscript{125}

It is not certain whether al-Jāhiz was able to speak and read Persian and Turkish or not, but it is quite certain that he had some awareness of Persian vocabulary.\textsuperscript{126} Therefore, Pellat claims that there seems no reason to doubt that al-Jāhiz had knowledge of Arabic, Persian and Turkish language and culture. If he received only a traditional education, involving no more than regular attendance at classes by reputable teachers, he would not have achieved the distinction that he did.\textsuperscript{127}

\textsuperscript{124} Malti-Douglas, \textit{Structure of Avarice}, p. 31.
\textsuperscript{127} Pellat, \textit{The life and works of Jāhiz}, p. 4.
It is remarkable to note that the reputation of al-Jāḥīz remained unrivalled, as described by Rosenthal, although there were later authors who could stand comparison with him.128 For this reason, there are a number of different biographical writers mentioned a variety of exemplary scholars in which each proved a list of different names but what stands out is that all these writers mention al-Jāḥīz within their list. For instance, Yāqūt records that Thābit b. Qurra al-Ṣābī (d. 288/901) was reported as saying that there were ‘three men’ within the entire Arab nation that he envied; the Caliph ʿUmar b. al-Khaṭṭāb for his political genius, al-Ḥasan al-Baṣrī for his religious knowledge and personal piety, and al-Jāḥīz, the orator of the Muslim and the chief of the dialecticians.129 Here we find that Thābit b. Qurra al-Ṣābī, a non-Arabs scholar expressed an opinion concerning these three greatest men among Arabs, each in virtue of his own special qualities, a sufficiently high complement.

On the other hand, some scholars expressed their tribute to al-Jāḥīz’s scholarly life. For example, the lexicographer and poet Abū Hīffān Abdullah b. Ahmad al-Mīkhzāmī (d. 255/869) said that he had never seen or heard anyone who loved reading the books except for three persons. The first of these being al-Jāḥīz, who whenever a book fell into his hand would read it exhaustively; the second person is al-Fāṭīh b. Khāqān (d. 247/861); and the third, the judge Ismāʿīl b. Ishaq al-Azḍī (d. 282/895).130 Al-Mubarrad (d. c. 286/899) said that he have never met scholars who excelled in Arabic

129 Yāqūt, Muḥjam al-udabā‘, Vol. XVI, p. 95.
130 Khafajī, Abā‘ Uḥmān al-Jāḥīz, p. 75.
eloquence as much as Abū Hudhayl al-‘Allāf and al-Jāhiẓ. Ibn Nubāta said that someone told him that among the characteristics that Allah gives to the Umma (people) of Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) is the great personality of ‘Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb in political thinking, the cleverness of al-Ijāsān al-Ḥāfīz in learning, and the brilliant skill of al-Jāhiẓ in Arabic eloquence.

Some other scholars such as Abū Ḥayyān al-Tawḥīdī (d. 419/1023) has devoted a special book entitled Kitāb al-taqrīz in praise of al-Jāhiẓ, however, this book has not come down to us; we only have the title of this book as preserved in Yāqūt’s biographical work. In addition, some of the Abbasid poets have also paid their tribute to al-Jāhiẓ such as Abū Shirāq al-Qaysī, one of the famous Abbasid’s poets.

The popularity of the nickname “al-Jāhiẓ” remained high throughout the period from the end of the second century of hijra until today. People have conferred this nickname to others to indicate their intellectual qualities. For example, Abū Mūsā Muhammad b. Ahmad al-Kūfī, a well-known prose writer from Baghdad who died in the forth century of hijra was known as al-Jāhiẓ. Abū Zayd al-Balkhī (d. 322/934) was known as al-Jāhiẓ of Khurasān; Ibn al-Amīd (d. 360/970) was dubbed as “the second al-

---

131 Ibn al-Murtadā, al-Munya wa al-Amal, p. 150.
133 Yāqūt, Mu‘jam al-udabā‘, Vol. XVI, p. 78.
134 Abū Shirāq al-Qaysī said:

في العلم للعلماء أن يتقهمو واعظ
والذ أنسيت فِئ جمعت علَى لِسان الحافظ
ولقد رأيت الطرف دهرا ما حواء لائظ
حتى أقام طريقه عمره بن بحر الجاهظ

Jāḥiz", 136 and Maḥmūd b. ʿAbd al-Azīz al-Āridī as "the third al-Jāḥiz". 137 In the modern times, Tāhā Ḥusayn (d. 1975), the famous man of letter in this period, was also known as a modern al-Jāḥiz. 138

Badīʿ al-Zamān (d. 398/1007), also the great prose writer, devotes part of his Ṣaḥīḥ al-Jāḥiz entitled Ṣaḥīḥ al-Jāḥiziyā (The Maqāma of al-Jāḥiz) 139 in which he quotes a story from his narrator, ʿĪsā b. Ḥishām as saying: "...O people, every work hath its men, every situation its saying, every house its occupants and every age its al-Jāḥiz...". 140

There is no doubt that for much of the time al-Jāḥiz received much praise, but sometimes some scholars, either his contemporaries or later, also blamed him and criticised him. He does not seem to have been trusted by some scholars, especially by those who were authorities in the science of Ḥadīth. For instance, al-Thaʿālibī (d. 427/1035) says that al-Jāḥiz was not to be trusted in Ḥadīth. Al-Dhahabī (d. 748/1348) claims also that al-Jāḥiz is an innovator, therefore not to be trusted in this area. 141 Al-Baghdādī (d. 429/1037), by his prejudice against Muṭtazila and the spirit of attacking al-Jāḥiz, he asserts that al-Jāḥiz has stolen the meaning of Aristotle book on animals. 142

---

136 Pellat admits that this honouree title has been given wrongly to Ibn al-ʿArabiyya. See Pellat, Ṣaḥīḥ al-lughah wa al-ṣūb al-ʿArabiyya, Dār al-Gharb al-Islāmī, Beirut, 1997, p. 206.
137 Sandūbī, Adab al-Jāḥiz, p. 18.
142 Al-Baghdādī, al-fīrāq bayn al-fīrāq, Maṭbaʿat al-Madanī, Cairo, undated, p. 175.
In conjunction to the issue of criticism towards al-Jāḥīz, it is interesting to note here that Yāqūt relates the story that when al-Jāḥīz was arrested and brought in shackles to the chief justice Ibn Abī Du‘ād, he was said to have won his freedom by reminding the judge that it was better to suffer evil than to inflict it. Ibn Abī Du‘ād commented on that event that he was “confident of al-Jāḥīz’s wit but not of his religion”.  

On the other hand, Ibn al-Jawzī (d. 597/1200) openly disapproves of some of the works of al-Jāḥīz, which he regards as poor quality. Al-Masā‘ūdī criticises al-Jāḥīz for writing a book on the Imamate of the children of al-ʻAbbās, which was according to him, nothing but an expression of the argument of al-Rāwandīyya, the partisans of the Abbasid. We find that al-Bāqillānī (d. c. 403/1013) in his Ḑīz al-Qurʾān is also criticised al-Jāḥīz. Ibn Qutayba also aimed his criticism towards al-Jāḥīz’s life as well as his works. For example, he points out that al-Jāḥīz “is the most forceful of writers in using subtle means to make a small thing look great”. Elsewhere, he describes al-Jāḥīz as being capable of “doing a thing and its opposite”. For instance, attacking and defending ʻAlī, or arguing the superiority of black people over white people. Ibn Qutayba goes so far as to call al-Jāḥīz “among the greatest liars in the community of believers (umma), its greatest inventor (i.e. falsifier) of ḥadīths and its greatest supporter of falsehood. It seems from this statement that al-Jāḥīz has no friend of the Ahl al-Ḥadīth. Therefore, describing the attack of Ibn Qutayba on al-Jāḥīz, Pellat said that he

---

143 Yāqūt, Muḥjam al-wadābī, Vol. XVI, p. 80.
148 Ibn Qutayba, Ta‘wil mukhṭilaf al-Ḥadīth, p. 72.
consequently misunderstood al-Jāḥiz because he was radically different from al-Jāḥiz’s view. Nevertheless, al-Jāḥiz occasionally expressed his awareness of such criticism. For example, in Risāla fī ṭabaqāt al-mughannīn, he says: "... and we may know that many of them will exaggerate in criticism and insolence and hold an opinion different from ours, but what an easy thing that is for the due rights of al-Futūḥī." While describing this situation, Najm asserts that the reason of this attitude of al-Jāḥiz is thought to have been because many of al-Jāḥiz’s works were commissioned by the authorities and that al-Jāḥiz was actually living on his writing. In addition, we can assume that the cause of all criticism lies on al-Jāḥiz’s character which many people did not like and for which they took against him.

1.3 Al-Jāḥiz and Muṭazila:

Much has been written on the origin of the name of Muṭazila, the history and the doctrine of this intellectual movement in the far and the recent past; however, we shall, by way of introduction, make some general remarks. If we take the the Muṭazilite school to have been founded by the Basrans Wāṣil b. ʿAṭā’ (d. 131/748) and ʿAmr b. Ubayd (d. 144/761), then its origin go back to the early second/eighth century and later on became

---

149 Pellat, "al-Jāḥiz", in: Abbasid Belles Lettres, p. 94.
the most important theological school of Islam. In his *al-Milal wa al-nihal*, al-Shahrastānī (d. 548/1153) gives his opinion on the origin of Mu'tazilite by saying that Wāsil b. ʿAţā, founder of the Mu'tazilite school, disagreed with his teacher al-Ḥasan al-Baṣrī (d. 110/728) and then he left the al-Ḥasan al-Baṣrī circle, and his followers then formed, a new group.

Anawati regards the Mu'tazila as philosopher and the first who tried to give a systematic presentation of religious belief. In this way, one of their leaders, Abū Hudhayl al-ʿAllāf, adopted the following plan for the presentation of Muslim doctrine: firstly, predestination and divine attributes; secondly, divine unity and attributes; thirdly, eschatology (promises and threats); fourthly, legal terms and statutes; and fifthly, ordering the good and forbidding the evil, the role of prophecy and the Caliphate.

Briefly, the Mu'tazila are known for the five principles: 1) *Tawhīd* (God's unity), 2) *Adl* (God's justice), 3) *al-Waḍʿ wa al-waʿḍ* (the promise and the threat), 4) *al-Manzila bāyin al-manzilatayn* (the intermediate position of the grave sinner), 5) *al-Amr bī al-maʿrūf wa al-nahy ʿan al-munkar* (commanding the right and forbidding the wrong).

All Mu'tazilites accepted these principles, which was a requirement for membership of their school. Of these five principles, the first two are concerned with divinity; the third has an eschatological aspect, and the fourth and fifth deals with moral theology. Watt

---


points out that the last two or indeed three principles had political implications, but most of the theological discussions were about the first two.157

As well as these five principles, the Mu'tazila also believed in the doctrine of the creation of the Qur'an158 and free will.159 Based on the first principle, i.e. Tawḥīd, which is fundamental to the dogma of Islam, the Mu'tazilite also liked to call themselves as "Ahl al-tawḥīd" (The People of Tawḥīd) or "Ahl al-'adl wa al-tawḥīd" (The People of Justice and Divine Unity).160

Encouraged by the Abbasid Caliphs particularly from al-Ma'mūn and al-Mu'tasim had made this school of thought very popular. For instance, al-Ma'mūn made Mu'tazila doctrines as a state belief. In 212/827, he officially declared that the doctrine of the creation of the Qur'an is the only true one. But it was not until the year of his death 218/833, he tried to force that doctrine upon the ulamā', and via them onto all Muslims. However there was popular opposition to this doctrine lead by Ahmad b. Hanbal (d. 241/855). In that year, the miḥna (an inquisition)161 was instituted. Ahmad b. Hanbal

157Ibid., p. 138.
158Ja'd b. Dirham is said that the first person who holds the idea of the creation of the Qur'an, but little is known about this man. As we know, almost all the early scholars insisted that the Qur'an is truly Kalām Allah (The Speech of God) and denied that it was created. Ahmad b. Hanbal in his discussion during the time of the miḥna, affirmed that the Qur'an is part of knowledge of God and as such uncreated. A full discussion of this issue as reported in al-Jābīz' works may be found in Madelung, 'The Origin of the Controversy Concerning the Creation of the Qur'an', in: J.M. Barral (ed.) Orientalia Hispanica sive studia F. M. Pareja ocyogenario dicata, Vol. I/1, E.J. Brill, Leiden, 1974, pp. 504-525, reprinted as Part V in Wilferd Madelung, Religious Schools and Sects in Medieval Islam, Variorum Reprints, London, 1985, pp. 504-525.
161The word 'Miḥna' is derived from the verb maḥana, which means to test, to smooth, to purify, to scourge or to force one to confess to something which one did not do or did not believe in. This word then applied to the religious policy initiated by al-Ma'mūn in 833 A.D and ended by al-Mutawakkil in 849 A.D. The question around which the miḥna centred was the doctrine of the creation of the Qur'an. There are
suffered flogging and imprisonment for his faith. What is remarkable to note here that al-Jāhiz is the first writer who record this most important event in the history of Islamic thought in his work. 162

After the death of Caliph al-Ma’mūn, the Mu’tazilite policy continued during the reign of al-Mu’tasim (r. 218-27/833-42) and that of al-Wāthiq (r. 227-32/842-47). 163 The miṣna reached its climax during the reign of al-Mu’tasim. However, according to El-‘Aṭṭār, this does not mean that the Mu’tazilites were influential from the beginning of the Abbasid period, 164 but their rise to power under al-Ma’mūn and its continuation under al-Mu’tasim and al-Wāthiq was political.

Al-Jāhiz, our adīb, is among influential scholar in this school of thought. Al-Nazzām, one of the leading scholars in this school of thought, has played a big role in teaching al-Jāhiz the basic principals of Mu’tazila particularly when al-Jāhiz was still living in Basra. 165 For this reason, he is very proud with the personality of his teacher. It is reported that al-Jāhiz describes the portrait of al-Nazzām as follows: “Ibrāhīm (al-Nazzām) was a man of his word, and guilty of little wrong or unfairness in the realms of frankness and truthfulness. When I say that he was guilty of little wrong or unfairness, I do not mean that he was guilty of it, albeit only a little. If he stated anything in the form of apodictic evidence, the hearer could be sure that he was reporting something he had

---

164 El-‘Aṭṭār, The Political thought of al-Jāhīz, p. 34.
himself positively and directly heard or personally and vividly witnessed". Then al-Jāḥīz receives further lesson with other prominent Muʿtazila figures such as Thumāma b. al-Ashras, Bishr b. al-Muʿtamir and Ahmad b. Abī Duʿād.

It was reported that among the Muʿtazila figures, al-Jāḥīz is in the seventh ṣabaqa (generation), which is led by Thumāma b. al-Ashras, and then Abū Mūsā al-Murdār, Ahmad b. Abī Duʿād, Yūsuf b. ʿAbdullāh al-Sāḥib and others. Al-Jāḥīz is among the Muʿtazila of the Basra’s school.

Though al-Jāḥīz’s contribution to Muʿtazila forms a minor of his literary output, as Watt asserted, nevertheless, we find a number of his works deal with questions in theology from a Muʿtazila standpoint. Al-Khayyāt (d. c. 300/913) gives a most valuable list of al-Jāḥīz’s works in this category including Faḍilat al-Muʿtazila, al-ʾItizāl wa faḍīh ʿalī al-ṣafīṭa, al-ʾIstidāla wa khalq al-ʿafṣāl and Khalq al-Qurʾān. On the other hand, Pellat claims that there are nine works of al-Jāḥīz which reflect of Muʿtazilite doctrine. Al-Ghālī is another scholars of al-Jāḥīz claims that al-Jāḥīz has written about twenty-four

---

169 Watt, Formative Period of Islamic thought, p. 218.
170 Ibid., p. 220.
171 Al-Khayyāt, al-Inṯīār wa al-radd, pp. 70 & 99.
books on Mu'tazila thought, but unfortunately some of these books have not survived.\textsuperscript{173} However, one should not be worried about this matter; because as Pellat already asserts that all the Mu'tazila material can be found in al-Jāḥiz's works, from \textit{al-Ḥayawān} through various minor works to \textit{al-Bayān wa al-tabyīn}. Nevertheless, he claims that no text entirely devoted to the exposition of his views has survived.\textsuperscript{174} As far as we are aware that no writing about any of five basic principle of Mu'tazila doctrine has survived.\textsuperscript{175} What is important to say here is that almost all of al-Jāḥiz's works contains some reflection of Mu'tazila and, of course, he has made clear his theological position.

Although the Mu'tazila were noted for upholding the five principles that we have already mentioned above, this does not mean there were no differences between them. For instance, although al-Jāḥiz had received instructions from the leading Mu'tazila's scholars, he never followed any one of them exclusively, nor did he join one of the Mu'tazilite circles. However, he has his own idea regarding the Mu'tazilite thought. Ibn al-Mu'tadā has quoted two of al-Jāḥiz's idea, which differs from other Mu'tazila scholars. Firstly, is about "necessary knowledge" or "immediate knowledge"\textsuperscript{176} and secondly, "the reputation to al-Rāfiḍa".\textsuperscript{177} Moreover, al-Baghdādi and Abū al-Ḥasan al-


\textsuperscript{174} Pellat, \textit{The life and works of Jāḥiz}, p. 15.

\textsuperscript{175} Perhaps, the only work that corresponds a little to one of them, as described by Pellat, is \textit{Risāla fi al-wā'd wa al-wad'ī}. \textit{Ibid.} p. 16.

\textsuperscript{176} The idea of knowledge is discussed at length by later Mu'tazilite scholars such as al-Maqdisī (d. c. 380/990) in his \textit{al-Bad' wa al-ta'rīkh}, for more detail analysis on this book, see Khalidi, "Mu'tazilite Historiography: Maqdisī's Kitāb al-bad' wa al-ta'rīkh", \textit{Journal of Near Eastern Studies}, Vol. 35/1 (January 1976), pp. 1-11.

\textsuperscript{177} Ibn al-Mu'tadā, \textit{al-Munṣī wa al-amal}, p. 162. Al-Rāfiḍa is the names given to the Shi'a. Rāfiḍī originally is founded as a pejorative term; the Imāmis soon turned it into an honorific. Rafidism, which first emerged in Kufa, had spread to Kumm in Iran, by the end of the 2nd/8th century. According to the later
Ash'arī (d. 324/936) also has quoted various Mu'tazilite ideas of al-Jāhiz which differs from others. For instance, according to al-Baghdādī, al-Jāhiz believed that God does not put anyone into Hell, but it is the nature of the Fire to pull people to it and so forth.

De Boer in his book summarises some of al-Jāhiz’s idea as follows: “Man’s reason is capable of knowing the creator, and in like manner of comprehending the need of a prophetic revelation. Secondly, man’s only merit is in his will, for on the one hand his actions are interwoven with the events of nature, and on the other his entire knowledge is necessarily determined from above. And yet no great significance appears to accrue to the Will, which is derived from ‘knowing’. At least Will in the Divine Being is quite negatively conceived of, that is, God never operates unconsciously, or with dislike to his work”. Having dealt with the idea of al-Jāhiz’s, al-Shahrastānī records that al-Jāhiz has his own of followers known as al-Jāhiziyya. This is not the place, however, to discuss more detail the idea in which Ibn al-Rawandī who died in the middle or in the end of 4th/10th century is reported to attribute to al-Jāhiziyya, some of which al-Khayyāt has already refuted in his *al-Intiṣār wa al-radd*.

---

Saba'iyya, the followers of Abdullah b. Sabā' was the first Rafidite. See for further information on this matter in: *The Encyclopaedia of Islam*, art. Al-Rāfidī, Vol. VIII, pp. 386-388; see also *Shorter Encyclopaedia of Islam*, art. Rafidite, p. 466.


179 See al-Baghdādī, *al-Farq bayn al-firaq*, p. 176. In addition, Ibn Ḥajar Al-Ṣaqqālī (d. 852/1449) relates also that al-Jāhiz has said that al-Ḥajar al-aswād (Black Stone) originally was white in colour, but this colour has changed due to the sins of Mushriki (unbelievers), so it has become Muslims’ duty to wipe it white again. See Ibn Ḥajar al-Ṣaqqālī, *Lisān al-māni*., Vol. IV, p. 356.


182 See al-Khayyāt, *al-Intiṣār wa al-radd*, pp. 70, 99, 126, etc.
1.4 Conclusion:

Although information about al-Jāḥīz's private and public life is not readily forthcoming from either his biographers or himself, as claimed by Pellat\(^\text{183}\), however, it appears from what we have discussed in this brief account of al-Jāḥīz's life and the course of his scholarly life that some of that information can be seen from the beginning of his till his death, and how he build up himself as scholars of the top level. He was a great scholar who built his scholarship on the Muʿtazilite doctrine which was based on the important of the rational faculties for seeking and verifying truth. In addition, we can see also from the examples that had been given through out the chapter, how al-Jāḥīz was in continuous relationship with the men who were directing the policy of the state. He lived in the first Abbasid century where the government in full power, and he also lived part of his life in the second Abbasid century that witnessed a sharp decline in the power of the Abbasid dynasty, and also the appearance of both semi-independent and completely independent states within the area of what had been the Islamic empire. In short, one can say that the greatest adīb with Muʿtazilite thought or the new Muslim intellectual of the second half of third century was without any doubt was al-Jāḥīz.

CHAPTER TWO

THE SIGNIFICANCE OF AL-JĀḤIẒ’S WORKS

2.1 Prose Literature Works Before al-Jāḥiẓ:

The aim of this chapter is briefly survey of the historical trends in the development of Arabic prose literature particularly during the late Umayyad and early Abbasid period. The importance of studying the historical context lies in the essential role played by al-Jāḥiẓ in the development of this genre subsequently.

It was general knowledge that the Arabic language and Arab speech are divided into two types; one is rhymed poetry and the other is prose. As a result, Arabic literature contains a rich body of poetry (šihr) and prose (nathr). As with all literature in the world, it is agreed that poetry appeared before prose in Arabic literature. In defining the prose, we find that Encyclopaedia Britannica defines it as “the plain speech of mankind, when it written or composed without reference to the rules of verse or all forms of careful literary expression which are not metrically versified and is used for stating precisely that which is true in reason or fact”.184 And almost all student of Arabic literature in modern

times agrees that the Arabic word *nathr* is equivalent to the English word ‘prose’, while the Arabic word *Adab* (pl. *Adāb*) is equivalent to the English word ‘literature’. However, the original meaning of the verbal root (اَدَابَ) “*adab*” is to invite someone to a banquet. From that meaning, it is developed to the meaning of good manners, good breeding, decency, and by extension, also humanism, and belles-letters.

The above Arabic root indicates the possession of refinement or good habits bequeathed down the ages. Therefore, Malti-Douglas admits that the development of the usage of *adab*, has comes up from two particular usage. The first usage would be the gleaning from every area of knowledge of elegant titbits, as well as the gathering of morsels of poetry and stories. The second usage would refer to the literary works written with elegance and distinction and not merely to their isolated parts. These works encompass prose as well as poetry”. Hence, *al-Nathr al-adabī* or prose literature cannot be separated from the literary concept of *adab*, since many of its works are permeated by the didactic intention of guidance to learning and refinement.

---


Serjeant states that the earliest known form of prose is the *khufba* (oratory).\(^{188}\) This type of prose literature is spoken art, and later on, it was compiled in books which can be found, for instance, in classical works, such as in *al-Amālī* by al-Qālí, *al-Aghānī* by Abū al-Faraj, *al-ʾIqd al-farāḍ* by Ibn ʿAbd Rabbih, *al-Kāmil* by al-Mubarrad and also in the writing of al-Jāḥiẓ, Ibn Qutayba and others. However, Arabic prose literature as written rather than spoken really started with the genre of writing *risāla*. This marks the foundation of a distinct branch of prose literature.\(^{189}\) It was the first literary art of Arabic written prose and was invented by the *Kuttāb* (the secretaries).\(^{190}\)

It may be useful to give examples of some of the types of evidence available for the earlier period of Arabic prose literature. Though letters in Islam begin with Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.), his Companions and Successors, but as an art form began with ʿAbd al-Ḥamīd al-Kātib, who introduced this kind of writing to the public. He is, as claimed by Ibn ʿAbd Rabbih, the first to ‘burst open the buds of eloquence and smoothed its ways’.\(^{191}\) He is also the one whom the Modern Egyptian writer Ṭaha Ḥusayn, himself a celebrated master of style, said that there had probably never been any writer to equal ʿAbd al-Ḥamīd in purity and euphony of language, clarity of concept and aptness of style.\(^{192}\) His full name is according to Ibn Khallikān, ʿAbd al-Ḥamīd b. Ṭahā al-Kātib b. Saʿad.\(^{193}\) He is of Persian origin from Anbār and has known as the last *Kātib* of the *Diwān*

---


al-rasā'il in the Umayyad period.\textsuperscript{194} He has been killed with Marwān II, last Umayyad caliph in the battle at Būṣir in 132/750.\textsuperscript{195}

\textsuperscript{6}Abd al-Ḥamīd played an influential role in Arabic prose literature, particularly in the writing of risāla. He is considered the founder of this genre, the first to extend the length of risāla, and to introduce eloquence into the art of letter-writing. His works aims to attract the ear of the listener rather than capturing the thought of reader. \textsuperscript{196} For this reason, al-Thaʿālibī (d. 429/1038) claimed that the art of writing risāla begins with ʿAbd al-Ḥamīd.\textsuperscript{197} His most famous work is Risāla ilā al-kuttāb which is addressed to the chancery secretaries. This risāla is a code of conduct dealing with the qualities and duties required of a man of position and honour. The text of the risāla can be found in al-Qalqashandī’s encyclopaedia “Subḥ al-ʿaʃa”\textsuperscript{198} and it is thanks to Ḥsān ʿAbbās, that we now have ʿAbd al-Ḥamīd’s rasā’il in an academic edition.\textsuperscript{199} When describing ʿAbd al-Ḥamīd’s works, Wadād al-Qāḍī states: “they are of varying length between two lines and forty pages, deal with topic which are mainly public in nature (letters on conquests, obedience, civil discord, and so forth), in addition to a few letters which are personal and, whereas most of them are complete, other are fragments of longer letters”.\textsuperscript{200}

\textsuperscript{194} Al-Istakhīr, Masālik al-mamālik, E.J. Brill, Leiden, 1927, p. 145.
\textsuperscript{198} For the Arabic text, see al-Qalqashandī, Subḥ al-ʿaʃa, Vol. I, pp. 85-89.
the style of his writing, Roger Allan claims that the rasā'il of ʿAbd al-Ḥamīd and his style reflect a complete familiarity with the Qurʾān in words group and structure.²⁰¹

Moving to the early Abbasid period where our study will take place, it can be found that almost all scholars agree that prose literature work begins with ʿAbd al-Ḥamīd’s disciple, Ibn al-Muqaffā. He is born in Firuzabad in Fars and known as Ruz Bih.²⁰² His precise date of birth is not known or given, but probably in the early years of the second/eight century.²⁰³ In Arabic prose literature, it is said that Ibn al-Muqaffā opened the door to the golden age of this kind of prose writing. He also introduces a wide humanistic concept of letters to the Arab world.²⁰⁴ Although he died very early at the age of thirty-six, he left behind a considerable quantity of works.²⁰⁵ Among his significant prose product is the translation and the adaptation of non-Arabic works such as Kalīla wa Dimna from which al-Jāḥīz has quoted sayings on two occasions in his al-Ḥayawān.²⁰⁶ The works of Ibn al-Muqaffā remain among the most fascinating innovations in Arabic prose literature, especially in the classical period, alongside the rasā'il of ʿAbd al-Ḥamīd, Sahl b. Hārūn²⁰⁷ and other earlier kuttāb.

In general, during the Abbasid period, there are two groups of prose writers who contributed to the growth of Abbasid prose literature. The first group is the kuttāb, of whom the most important representatives were Sahl b. Hārūn and Ibn al-Muqaffā. The second group of writers is the scholars of the third/ninth century, to whom Arabic prose style are deeply indebted. They was represented by al-Jāḥīẓ, Ibn Qutayba, Badi' al-Zamān, and Abū Ḥayyān al-Tawḥīdī.

Their style of writing can be divided into three main categories: the mullaq or mursal, that is the free unadorned style of the second/eight century represented by Sahl b. Hārūn and Ibn al-Muqaffā; the muzdawaj or mutawāzin, the assonantal style of the third/ninth century represented by al-Jāḥīẓ; and the musajjīd, the rhyming style of the fourth/tenth century represented by Badi' al-Zamān. It can be said that the writings of men such as ʿAbd al-Ḥamīd al-Kāṭib, Sahl b. Hārūn, Ibn al-Muqaffā and others paved the way for al-Jāḥīẓ with their contributions in the development of prose writing.

2.2 The Significance of al-Jāḥīẓ's Prose Works:

The prose literature work continued during the first Abbasid century and it was the beginning of the great creative period of Arabic prose literature. The first really great representative of Arabic prose writers at this time was al-Jāḥīẓ. It is not known when al-Jāḥīẓ began writing but, according to Pellat, his first works certainly date from before the

---

end of the second/eight century. More specifically, he suggests to be dated from roughly 200/815-816. Perhaps by this time, al-Jähiz had already written some works which his first work is about al-Imāma.

Quotation from al-Jähiz himself in his al-Bayān wa al-tabyīn will be interesting to show this point: “After (Caliph al-Ma’mūn) having ordered al-Yazīdī to look through the books which I had written on the imamate and to convey to him his opinion about their contents, and after having read them himself ...(al-Ma’mūn) sent for me and said to me, “Someone whose intelligence we respect and whose information can be trusted informed me that these books were well composed and of great usefulness. I said to him, “Maybe the description will prove superior to firsthand contact”. But when I looked them over I found that on inspection they were better than the description of them. So I examined the books more closely and found that my pleasure with them had been a greatly increase by a second reading as it had been the first... This is a book, which does not require the presence of its author or other supporters to defend its contention. It combines depth of meaning with fullness of treatment. It has excellent diction and smoothness of style. It is a book for the marketplace or the palace, for the common man or the specialist”. This statement can be accepted and helps to understand the circumstances in which al-Jähiz started his writing. Through this work, al-Jähiz won the compliments of the Caliph al-Ma’mūn.

---

Strictly speaking, one knows that, as Goldziher said, that it was al-Jāḥīẓ who initiated the kind of Arabic literature styled adab (meaning culture, good manners, and humanities).\(^{213}\) One may assume that al-Jāḥīẓ is also one who brought Arabic prose literature to bear on all aspects of contemporary life in a series of works.\(^{214}\) In the following words, Gibb describes how al-Jāḥīẓ began his career: “the man [al-Jāḥīẓ] who more than any other, found the reply to literary challenge of the secretaries, and established the new Islamic literature firmly upon the foundations of the Arabic humanities. He began his career as a writer by imitating the secretarial works, and whether of set purpose or not had learned the secret of their literary art and success”.\(^{215}\)

During his long life, like many Arabic writers, al-Jāḥīẓ had a very great output in Arabic prose literature. Pellat claims that this achievement is something unique and remarkable in Arabic literature particularly in an age when writing materials were very expensive and paper only just coming into use.\(^{216}\) The list of the works of al-Jāḥīẓ can be found in several premier sources. For instance, Yāqūt in his Muḥjam al-udabā' has listed one hundred and twenty-eight titles of al-Jāḥīẓ’s works,\(^{217}\) Ibn al-Nadīm in his Al-Fihrist has listed around one hundred and twenty one titles,\(^{218}\) and Ḥājjī Khalīfa in his Kashf al-zunūn has another account with approximately around seventy titles.\(^{219}\) In the first volume of al-Ḥawāyān, al-Jāḥīẓ himself only mentions thirty-six titles of his works.\(^{220}\)

\(^{213}\) Goldziher, A Short history of Classical Arabic Literature, p. 8.
\(^{217}\) See index of al-Jāḥīz’s works as appeared in Muḥjam al-udabā’ by Yāqūt al-Ḥamawī at the end of this thesis.
\(^{218}\) Ḫān, Al-Fihrist, pp. 207-209.
modern times, IJasan Sandûbî was the first scholar of al-Jâhiç who has made a list of al-Jâhiç’s work in his *Adab al-Jâhiç*. He has collected nearly one hundred and fifty-nine titles of al-Jâhiç’s works.\textsuperscript{221} However, according to Sandûbî and followed by Ghurayyib, some of this great output of al-Jâhiç is wrongly attributed to him. For example, both of them assumed that *al-Ibil, al-Tâj fi'akhlâq al-mulûk, Tanbih al-mulûk wa al-makhâ'id, al-Ḥanîn ilâ al-awtân, al-Dalâ'il wa al-tibîr ʻalâ al-khalq wa al-āthâr,\textsuperscript{222} Salwa al-kharîf bî munâzara al-rahî,\textsuperscript{223} wa al-kharîf, al-Maḥâsin wa al-adlâd and al-Hadâyâ\textsuperscript{224} was not included in al-Jâhiç’s work.\textsuperscript{225} In addition, some of the works of al-Jâhiç survived only a part, although they still appear under the title of the whole original works and some other works were lost altogether and only quotations from them in other references could be found.\textsuperscript{226}

Subsequently, Brockelmann, who is the first western authority of Arabic literature, has set out his list of the works of al-Jâhiç in his great book *Târîkh al-adab al-ČArabi*\textsuperscript{227}. After that, Pellat, the French Arabist, has also set out a provisional list of al-Jâhiç’s work in *Arabica* 1956/2\textsuperscript{228} based on the Brockelmann’s book. However,

---

\textsuperscript{221} Sandûbî, *Adab al-Jâhiç*, pp. 117-144.
\textsuperscript{222} According to Rieu, the manuscript of this book can be found in the British Museum, see Rieu, *Supplement to the Catalogue of the Arabic Manuscript in the British Library*, Gilbert and Rivington Ltd., London, 1894, pp. 709-711.
\textsuperscript{224} Najm, *Studies on the writing of al-Jâhiç*, p. 35.
\textsuperscript{225} He collected nearly one hundred and seventy-six titles; see Brockelmann, *Târîkh al-adab al-ČArabi*, Vol. III, pp. 110-128.
according to Pellat, the most recent published catalogue of al-Jāḥīz lists two hundred and thirty-one authentic works, and only two-dozen have survived intact. 227

The most important, however, of the voluminous work of al-Jāḥīz consists of his cultivation and extension of the category of adab. This has been described as a literary genre comprising works which combine entertainment and instruction. Some scholars described that almost all al-Jāḥīz works dealing with too many things, animals lore, Arabic rhetoric and poetry, supposed racial and national characteristics, ethical qualities, human sexual behavior, the various professions and ways of making a living, or any of countless other matters. 228

Based on this wide contribution, Hutchins claims that al-Jāḥīz is one of the first of the major authors to use the new secular Arabic art prose in specifically Arab and Muslim ways. 229 Whilst Gibb describes al-Jāḥīz as independent thinker, because he resigned an official post three days after his appointment and even in Islamic law he formed a school of his own. 230 Hirschfield also stresses the same view, he says “al-Jāḥīz is a keen observer, an original thinker, and reveals deep thought even in apparently tribal subjects, and his field is wide”. 231 Marmura describes al-Jāḥīz as litératuer par excellence, as versatile and witty, while his style of writing was characterized by assonances, balance phrasing and tendency to digress. 232

228 Ibid., p. 81.
229 Hutchins, Nine Essay of al-Jāḥīz, p. 3.
230 Gibb, A Short History of the Classical Arabic Literature, p. 75.
In any case, McDonald says “if we are to judge from the title of so many of his works, both extant and lost, al-Jāḥīz must have thought of himself as primarily a Mu'tazilite theologian and political controversialist, and after this an essayist and an adīb.233 G. E. von Grunebaum in one of his brilliant essays also suggests that Arabic prose literature has reached a first perfection in al-Jāḥīz who he says, was eminently successful in ‘Arabizing’ Arabic prose by providing a great deal of new matter, not derived from Iranian sources.234

The forementioned are the most important views of the significance of al-Jāḥīz’s work and his contribution to the development of Arabic prose literature which scholars have expressed. Although these views differ in detail, they agree in general that the nature of al-Jāḥīz’s work focused on adab and social issues including religious and political elements.

As far as classical Arabic literature resources states, al-Jāḥīz dedicates some of his works to Abbasids court officials for which he received large sums of money. For example, Yāqūt cited that al-Ḥayawān was dedicated to Muhammad b. ʿAbd al-Malik al-Zayyāt (Ibn Zayyat), and he had given al-Jāḥīz five thousand dinars for this book.235 Risāla fi al-zarf wa al-nakhl which is not extant dedicated to Ibrāhīm b. ʿAbbās al-Ṣūlī and he had given him five thousand dinars, and Ahmad b. Abū Duʿād, the chief qāḍī (qāḍī al-quḍāḥi) had given al-Jāḥīz five thousand dinars for al-Bayān wa al-tabyīn. Al-

233 McDonald, al-Jāḥīz’s method of composition, BRISMES, St. Andrew, 1992, p.5.
Jāḥīz also dedicates some of his works to Ahmad b. Abū Du‘ād, his son and deputy, Muhammad, especially Risāla fi al-ma‘āsh wa al-ma‘ād. While Risāla fi manāqib al-Turk and al-Tāj fi akhlāq al-mulūk was dedicated to al-Fath b. Khāqān, an Abbasid commander of Turkish descent. 236

Brockelmann in his discussion of al-Jāḥīz’s work has classified it according to whether it has been printed or edited under the following heading: theological and politico-theological writings, history, anthropology, general ethics, professions, animals, languages, geography, anthologies and polemics. He added that the lost works covering the further categories of, games, plants, and other substance, literary history, work of entertainment. 237

It seems that this selection of his books and rasā‘il represent the author’s wide range of interest and views. However, Pellat suggests that al-Jāḥīz had only two main fields of activity; firstly, theology and politics, and secondly, adab. 238 In other words, as Gibb describes, al-Jāḥīz’s work “widened the range of Arabic literature to cover all aspects of contemporary life and remain to this day the master pieces of Arabic prose. No doubt he chose his subject for his own pleasure, but at the same time almost all his writing were directed to specific, though often well-concealed, ends”. 239

236 Ibid., p. 106.
238 Pellat, The life and works of Jāḥīz, p. 82.
The above quotation from Gibb draws the logical consequences of what we have discussed in the previous pages in chapter one and part of this chapter. We have attempted to show that al-Jāhīz lived in the intellectual, political, social, religious tendencies of his age.

2.3 A brief introduction to al-Jāhīz’s main works:

Some of the books and rasā’il from the list of al-Jāhīz’s work have been edited by many leading scholars of al-Jāhīz. Nowadays, a number of al-Jāhīz’s works such as al-Ḥayawān, al-Bayān wa al-tabyīn, al-Bukhārā, al-Maḥāsin wa al-aʤād,⁴⁰⁰ al-Burṣān wa wa al-‘urjān,⁴¹⁰ al-Tāj fi akhlāq al-mulūk,⁴¹² al-Bighāl⁴³ and other collection of his rasā’il have become widely available in scholarly editions of varying quality. Thanks for eastern and western scholars, viz. ʿAbd al-Salām Muhammad Hārūn, Ṭahā al-Ḥājirī, G. van Vloten, Charles Pellat and many others with their efforts in editing and reviewing all

⁴⁰⁰ According to Gelder, this work is by unknown author; however, it used to be attributing to al-Jāhīz. See Gelder, ‘The Paradox in Classical Arabic Literature’, in Journal of Semitic Studies, Vol. XLVIII, 2003, p. 344. It has been edited by ʿAlī Faṭūr and others, reprinted by Dār al-Ḥādī, Beirut, 1991.

⁴¹⁰ The title of this book is mentioned only in the al-Bayān wa al-tabyīn with other three titles i.e. Kitāb abnāʾ al-sarārī wa al-maḥārūl (lost), Kitāb al-asmāʾ wa al-kunūn wa al-armāʿ wa al-anāb (lost) and Kitāb al-insān (lost). See, al-Jāhīz, al-Bayān wa al-tabyīn, Vol. I, pp. 34 & 186 & 255; Vol. III, p. 74. Pellat suggests that these four books were written between 233 A.H. and 237 A.H. see Pellat, The life and works of Jāhīz, p. 10. The content of the book is about the handicapped which the author set forward his thesis that these people in fact are capable of outstanding achievements. He also set his arguments by citing examples from his contemporaries.

⁴² This book has survived and it has been edited by Ahmad Makki Bāshā, al-Maṭbaʿa al-Aʾmīriyya, Cairo, 1914, and translated into French by Pellat, 1954. In this book, the author describes the etiquette in force at the Sasanian court and under the caliphs, and gives advice to the rulers of the government. See, Pellat, The life and works of Jāhīz, p. 23.

⁴³ This book has been edited for the first time by Pellat, Maktabat al-Ḥalabī, Cairo, 1955 and the latest edition we have is Abū Milhmī’s edition, printed by Dār wa Maktabat al-Ḥilāl, Beirut, 1997. The book also can be found in the collection of “Rasāʾil al-Jāhīz” by Hārūn and “Uyyūn al-Sūd. Hārūn in his preface to the book said that it is also known as Kitāb al-qawīf al-bighāl, while Dāwūd al-Ḥalabī, on the other hand, said that he found on manuscript from Allepo which caring the title Kitāb al-bighāl wa manṣūbahu. This book was written after al-Ḥayawān. The main focus on this book is about a hybrid animal. See, Hārūn, Rasāʾil al-Jāhīz, Vol. II, pp. 215-378; see also in “Uyyūn al-Sūd, Rasāʾil al-Jāhīz, Vol. II, pp. 159-280.
of al-Jāḥiz's work. Among these works, the three principal ones are *al-Ḥayawān*, *al-Bayān wa al-tabyīn* and *al-Bukhalā'.

In this present section, before we turn our attention to the intensive study of the rasā'il, it would be useful in this thesis to offer a brief study of each of these extant books particularly *al-Ḥayawān*, *al-Bayān wa al-tabyīn* and *al-Bukhalā'.

2.3.1 *Al-Ḥayawān*:

This book has been edited by ʿAbd al-Salām Muhammad Ḥārūn in seven volumes and printed several times in Cairo and Beirut. The first edition has been printed at Maktabat al-Khanjī, Cairo, 1938. The latest edition of *al-Ḥayawān* that we have has been edited by Yahyā al-Shāmī and printed at Dār wa Maktabat al-Hilāl, Beirut, 1997. Describing this work, Pellat said as follows “this is a monumental and chief work of al-Jāḥiz, which is not so much a bestiary as a genuine anthology based on animals, leading off sometimes rather unexpectedly into theology, metaphysics, sociology etc.; one can even find embryonic theories, without it being possible to say how far they are original, of the evolution of species, the influence of climate and animal psychology, which were not developed till the nineteenth century”.

There are three notable points from Pellat's statement; the first is that *al-Ḥayawān* is a genuine anthology of material on animals. The second point is al-Jāḥiz's tendency to present his varied subject matter with little regard for specialization or organization. The

---

third point is the embryonic theories that the book contains.\textsuperscript{245} In another place Pellat states “The \textit{al-Ḥayawān}, which is a work of adab of religious character and not of natural science, is characterized by the greatest disorder. This book is also unfinished, though it is continued in \textit{al-Bighāl}.\textsuperscript{246}

The exact date of composition of \textit{al-Ḥayawān} is controversial. Pellat for instance, says that it must have been written before 233/847.\textsuperscript{247} This means that this book has been written before the death of Ibn al-Zayyāt, one of Abbasids court official and he had given him five thousand dinars for this book, who is seen here as the addressee of the book based on a report cited by Yāqūt.\textsuperscript{248} However, al-Ḥājirī, who is another authority on al-Jāḥiz, does not value this citation and assumes that \textit{al-Ḥayawān} was written much later than 232/846, depending on al-Jāḥiz own reference to the reign of al-Mutawakkil.\textsuperscript{249} Furthermore, al-Baṣīr, suggests that the composition of \textit{al-Ḥayawān} should have stretched over a considerable period of al-Jāḥiz’s life (he suggests that he wrote it when he was in his eighties), however, he offers no evidences for this.\textsuperscript{250} From this point of view, we can safely conclude here that al-Jāḥiz wrote \textit{al-Ḥayawān} in the latter part of his life, or in the time of al-Mutawakkil or later.

Among Arabs scholars, Jabrī, in his work on al-Jāḥiz, gives a special treatment of \textit{al-Ḥayawān}. He sees the significance of this work in its representation of al-Jāḥiz’s

\begin{itemize}
\item \textsuperscript{245} Mansūr, \textit{The World View of al-Jāḥiz}, p. 33.
\item \textsuperscript{246} Pellat, \textit{The life and works of Jāḥiz}, p. 22.
\item \textsuperscript{247} Ibid., p. 22.
\item \textsuperscript{248} Yāqūt, \textit{Mu‘jam al-udabš’,} Vol. XVI, p. 106.
\item \textsuperscript{249} Al-Ḥājirī, \textit{al-Jāḥiz wa ṣrayüh wa ṣāhāruh}, pp. 397-399.
\item \textsuperscript{250} Al-Baṣīr, \textit{Fī al-adab al-Abbāsī}, Maṭba‘at al-Nu‘mān, Cairo, 1970, p. 58.
\end{itemize}
scientific attitude in addition to artistic value. Al-Ḥājir also discusses the significance of al-Ḥayawān when he observes that its significance lies in al-Jāḥiz’s exposition of a vivid and rich picture of time, the trends of thought of the age and the different tendencies of Muslim society side by side with the treatment of animals. Therefore, al-Ḥuṣrī (d. 413/1022), the author of Ḥanf al-jawāhir, admits that this book remains as one of al-Jāḥiz’s peculiarities, particularly the way how could he had attempted this work when he was old and paralysed. This is the most important point of the significance of al-Ḥayawān, which scholars have expressed in different views.

Speaking about the structure of his al-Ḥayawān, al-Jāḥiz asserts: “And thus the chapters—Allah preserve them—were created which require profuseness and length. The words for varied content, few words are for little meaning. Simple content, obvious in its form and aim, requires fewer words than a complicated one whose aim is less clear. Even if all eloquent people tried to express the latter by means of concise words, without any additional explanation, they would not succeed. If the content requires a lot of words, the hearers are ready to listen to them”.

The original sources of the material on which al-Jāḥiz depended throughout al-Ḥayawān are the Qurʾān, Ḥadīth, Arabic poetry, proverbs, and reports handed down by oral tradition. However, the greater part of his sources of al-Ḥayawān consists of pre-Islamic and early Islamic poetry, which he quoted extensively, and historical accounts.

---

251 Jabri, al-Jāḥiz muʿallim al-ʿaql wa al-adab, p. 111.
252 Al-Ḥājir, al-Jāḥiz ḥayānah wa sīhāruh, pp. 422-423.
253 Al-Ḥuṣrī, Ḥanf al-jawāhir, Dar Iḥya’ al-Kutub al-ʿArabiyya, Cairo, 1953, p. 204.
from Jāhiliyya, early Islam and the Umayyad and early Abbasid period because al-Jāḥīz
found Arabic poetry contained a lot of knowledge concerning animals. It is interesting to
note here that Islamic scholarship was at its height when al-Jāḥīz wrote this book.

For this reason, al-Jāḥīz also depends upon verses of the al-Qur‘ān not only in his
discussion of theological and religious problems but also in the treatment of subtle
philosophical questions. As for animals, there are six Sūra (chapter) in the Qur‘ān having
the title of the name of animals namely al-Baqara (the heifer), al-Anfās (the cattle), al-
Nahl (the bees), al-Naml (the ants), al-ṣAnkabūt (the spider), al-Fīl (the elephant). It is
remarkable to note that al-Jāḥīz studied some of three hundred and fifty animals which he
then described and classified.

Like the Qur‘ānic verse, the Ḥadīth of the Prophet also constitutes one of al-
Jāḥīz’s sources. Al-Jāḥīz, however, finds in the prophetic tradition convincing evidences
to support his idea. Besides the Qur‘ān and the Prophetic tradition, there are more than
three hundred proverbs cited in al-Ḫayāwān because al-Jāḥīz could find a suitable
proverb to support his argument in any context.255

The well-known tradition or report handed down orally by transmitters is another
original source for al-Jāḥīz in al-Ḫayāwān because he had strong confidence in the
knowledge of the Arabs or Bedouin. Besides the previous mentioned literary sources, al-
Jāḥīz’s own personal experience played a serious role in his work. He often said that
nothing less than eyewitness or actual seeing would satisfy him which Maṇṣūr described

255 See Hārūn’s index of proverbs cited in al-Ḫayāwān.
that it was the custom of al-Jāḥīz to listen to everyone, to observe, and to use his careful ‘goggle-eyes’ to see every single and subtle thing.256

Beside these materials, al-Jāḥīz quotes also from time to time information from *al-Ḥayawān* by Aristotle.257 McDonald reported that F. Sezgin in his *Geschichte des arabischen Schrifttums* identifies thirty-four passages where al-Jāḥīz quotes directly from Ibn al-Bīṭrīq’s (d. 328/940) translation.258 It is interesting to note that, while he speaks of Aristotle with the greatest respect, he does not hesitate to express polite doubt when he believes him to be wrong as can be seen in *al-Ḥayawān*.

Later, this book became one of the main references for other scholars after al-Jāḥīz. Al-Dāmirī (d. 808/1405) for instance, followed al-Jāḥīz’s approach when he writes his *Ḥayāt al-ḥayawān al-kubrā*.259 According to Ḥājjī Khalīfa, ʿAbd al-Latīf al-Baghdādī (d. 626/1231) also had also tried to summarise *al-Ḥayawān* by al-Jāḥīz, however his summary has not survived.260 Ibn Sanā’ al-Mulk (d. 608/1211), an Egyptian prose writer, also attempts to summarise *al-Ḥayawān* by al-Jāḥīz in his book entitled *Rāḥ al-ḥayawān*, but this book is also lost.261 *Tadhīb ḥayāt al-Jāḥīz* by Ibn Manṣūr (d. 711/1311) is

---

259 The special value of this book is that the surveying of the animal kingdom in an alphabetical order. It is reported that there are one hundred and seven quotations from *al-Ḥayawān* of al-Jāḥīz see, al-Dāmirī, Ḥayāt al-ḥayawān, Maṭba’at al-Hijāzī, Cairo, undated.
the only summary of *al-Ḥayawān* that has survived in which Ibn Manzūr has also cited some of the anecdotes from *Rūḥ al-Ḥayawān* by Ibn Sanā’ al-Mulk.\(^{262}\)

Al-Jāḥiz normally in all his work exhibits a strong desire to record as much oral material as possible, whether it is relevant to his main purpose or not. As a result the main point of the book is hidden among irrelevancies and has to be ferreted out. Hārūn, the editor of the scientific edition of *al-Ḥayawān*, has constructed a valuable index in several parts occupying most of the seven volumes. Finally, we would like to quote McDonald’s view regarding al-Jāḥiz’s approach in this book. He claims that “al-Jāḥiz was not a specialist in the study of animals, nor did he have any practical expertise in the handling of animals, or in falconry or farriery”.\(^{263}\) He further argues “one of the results of this is that it is often difficult or impossible to identify the animals of which al-Jāḥiz is speaking, and no doubt it is difficult to explain what any animals look like in the absence of a picture”.\(^{264}\) However, almost can be said here is that *al-Ḥayawān*, is a foundation for further study in that field which reflect the Islamic tendency in al-Jāḥiz’s writing.

### 2.3.2 *Al-Bayān wa al-tabyīn*:

This book was among the most important of al-Jāḥiz’s works. Ibn Khaldūn, a notable scholar of the ninth/fourteenth century, remarked in his great work *al-Muqaddima*, on the importance of *al-Bayān al-tabyīn* by al-Jāḥiz particularly in Arabic

---


\(^{263}\) McDonald, *Animals-Books as a Genre in Arabic Literature*, p. 4.

\(^{264}\) Ibid., p. 5.
prose literature as follows: “We heard our *shaykh* (teacher) say in class that the basic principles and pillars of this discipline are four works, the *Adab al-kātib* by Ibn Qutayba, *al-Kāmil* by al-Mubarrad, *al-Bayān wa al-tabyīn* by al-Jāḥiz and the *al-Nawādir* by Abū ‘Alī al-Qāli’. All other books depend on these four and are derived from them.265

The first edition of this book has been edited by ʿAbd al-Salām Muhammad Hārūn in 1948-50 into four volumes (and also in other editions e.g. Ṣubībuddīn al-Khaṭīb, undated and Sandūbī, in 1345 H.). Hārūn also constructed a valuable index in several parts occupying most of the forth volume. According to Yāqūt, this book was written in two copies, and the second copy was much better.266 We do not know which copy that we are using today. In addition, there have been some controversies over the correct reading of the title of this work either *al-Bayān wa al-tabayyun* or *al-Bayān wa al-tabyīn*.267 However, this book is better known among scholars of Arabic literature as *al-Bayān wa al-tabyīn*.

This book dealt with literary topics; as can clearly be seen from the title itself. The word “*al-Bayān*” means elegance of expression, and “*al-tabyīn*” means clarity of exposition. Hence, *al-Bayān wa al-tabyīn* is an anthology of poetry and oratorical prose.268 There are many oral materials that have been recorded by al-Jāḥiz. The author depended, throughout this book, on the original sources of his material such as the

---

Qur'ān, Ḥadīth, Arabic poetry, proverbs, and reports handed down by oral tradition.²⁶⁹

One can notice that al-Jāḥīz used al-Iṣtiṭrāl (digression), his famous method to compose this book. A sense of humour can be seen in this book, for example, in the volumes two and four, al-Jāḥīz offers us more than forty pages of anecdotes entitled “Bāḥ al-nawkā wa al-majānīn wa al-aghbiyā”.²⁷⁰

This book contains several important topics concerning the study of Arabic language and literature, which had been summarised by Hārūn, the editor of the book, in the first volume.²⁷¹ Ṭahā Ḫusayn seems to have agreed with Hārūn’s edition whenever he also suggests that the important subject that had been discussed by al-Jāḥīz in this book can be divided into these four groups: 1) a discussion on Arabic phonetic; 2) a discussion on Arabic grammar and its relation with phonetic; 3) a discussion on some of the rhetoric rules; and 4) a discussion on the rules of oratory and speeches.²⁷² However, according to al-Bahīṭī, the content of the al-Bayān wa al-tabyīn was not come down to us in its original structure, as had been listed by Hārūn, because it may been added to and changed unreservedly by the copyist.²⁷³

There is no definite sign to show exactly when al-Jāḥīz wrote his al-Bayān wa al-tabyīn. We only know without any doubt that he wrote al-Ḥayawān in the later part of his

life, in the time of al-Mutawakkil or later, and was perhaps followed by al-Bayān wa al-
tabyīn. This sequence is reliable since al-Jāḥīz in al-Bayān wa al-tabyīn mentions al-
Hayawān as a previous work.274 There are two aims in the composition of this book, one
is that al-Jāḥīz tries to demonstrate Arab superiority to all other nations in the literary
field particularly in "Ilm al-Balāgha (rhetoric),275 and the other one, as was explained by
al-Jāḥīz himself, is to add to the arguments directed against members of other cultures
especially the Shu'ūbiyya276 group who claimed that the Arabs were barbarian.277 Because
of this reason, some scholars of al-Jāḥīz have said that al-Jāḥīz has played a role as
defender and solicitor for the Arabs in the Abbasid period against their enemy viz. the
Shu'ūbiyya.278

Many scholars pointed out that this book is a great achievement of al-Jāḥīz's
writing in the literary field. Abū Hilāl al-Askarī, Ibn Rashīq al-Qayrawānī and al-
Masūdī for instance, said that al-Bayān wa al-tabyīn was the first Arabic book which
focused on the discussion of "Ilm al-Balāgha or al-Bayān (Rhetoric).279 Al-Jāḥīz
elaborates his theory of explication of al-Bayān in this four volumes work which includes
the definition, forms and meaning of al-Bayān, etc.280 Al-Jāḥīz also exploits religious

275 In Arabic, the term bayān and bayīn had each the meaning of both rhetoric and eloquence. When it
prefix with 'ilm (science), they meant rhetoric, i.e. the science of eloquence. See
276 This term refers to a movement of Persian nationalism whose aim was the glorification of the Persian
origin. For detail analysis of this movement, see The Encyclopedia of Islam, art. Al-Shu'ūbiyya, Vol. IX,
pp. 513-516. For excellent analysis on the influence of this movement on Arabic literature, see Hijāb,
278 See for instance Abū Zayd, al-Manṣūr al-ṣīzikī fī al-bayān wa l-ṣā'ir al-Qur'ānī, Maktabat al-Maṣārif,
1, p. 257; al-Masūdī, Murūj al-dhahāb, Vol. VIII, p. 34.
280 For the detail analysis on this aspect, see Krystyna, 'Some Aspects of al-Jāḥīz's rhetorical theory', in:
texts (i.e. the Qur'ānic verses and Ḥadīth) in his attempt to highlight his theory. It has been reported that the people from the town of Basra, where al-Jāḥīz was born and died, were very proud of four books which were written by their scholars, i.e. al-Bayān wa al-tabyīn and al-Hayawān written by al-Jāḥīz, al-Kitāb written by Sībawayh (d. c. 180/796) and al-Ṣayn written by al-Khalīl b. Ahmad al-Farāhīdī (d. c. 175/791). This is clear evidence of the importance of this book in the literary field.

In modern times, Gibb for example, says that in al-Bayān wa al-tabyīn, al-Jāḥīz displayed the rich resources of the Arabic humanities, and taught the classical philologists that their studies served a wider purpose than the mere classifying of linguistic niches. Ahsan describes al-Bayān wa al-tabyīn as a most important book since it offers valuable data on the mode of costume of the people in classical period particularly in the Abbasid era. In conclusion, it can be said that al-Bayān wa al-tabyīn represents al-Jāḥīz’s contribution to the study of literary, philological, linguistic, and sociology studies.

2.3.3 Al-Bukhārī:

Al-Bukhārī was written towards the end of al-Jāḥīz’s life. The first edition of al-Bukhārī has been edited in 1900 by a Dutch Arabist, G. Van Vloten. This European edition, as was described by Serjeant, based on what appears to be the unique MS. the

281 For excellent study on this subject matter, see, El-ṣAtār, ‘al-Jāḥīz’s view of Arabic in relation to the Qur’ān’, BRISMES, (St. Andrew, 1992), pp. 20-33.
In 1938, it was edited again by ‘Alī al-Jārim and Ahmad al-ʿAwāmirī. Later on, al-Bukhaṭ‘a’ was once again edited for the third time by Ṭahā al-Ḥāḍirī. According to al-Ḥāḍirī, only two manuscripts of the al-Bukhaṭ‘a’ of al-Ḥāḍirī have been discovered, a complete one in Köprülū dated 1890, and an incomplete one in Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale, Arabe 6011, which consists of a segment stopping in the middle of the work. Therefore, Serjeant suggests that al-Ḥāḍirī’s text is on the whole a very good edition indeed.

According to Multi-Douglas, there are three books which are known with Bukhaṭ‘a’ in the title, namely al-Bukhaṭ‘a’ by al-Ḥāḍirī, al-Bukhaṭ‘a’ by al-Khatīb al-Baghdādī (d. 463/1071) and the Wuqā‘ al-balḥal wa al-bukhaṭ‘a’ by Ibn al-Mibrād (d. 909/1503). However, only the first two of these works have been edited, whereas the third is extant in manuscript only.

As can be seen from the text, al-Bukhaṭ‘a’ consists largely of prose anecdotes. Malti-Douglas has listed thirty-two topics of this book starting with the introduction by

---

288 This book has been edited by Ahmad Matlūb, Khaḍīja al-Ḥadīthī and Ahmad al-Qaysī (Baghdad, 1964).
289 On his biography and his works, see The encyclopedia of Islam, art. al-Khatīb al-Baghdādī, Vol. IV, pp. 1111-12.
Al-Jāḥīz\textsuperscript{291} and ending with various anecdotes.\textsuperscript{292} Al-Jāḥīz opens his discussion in the introduction with a lengthy discussion of the topics which he was asked to treat in his book concerning the mentality of the bukhālā\textsuperscript{2} and the reason for their behavior and their choice of this particular way of life. The \textit{risāla} of Sahl b. Hārūn on avarice forms the beginning of al-Jāḥīz's Bukhalā\textsuperscript{1}. Furthermore, we can see that each section within the book can be perceived as a self-contained literary unit.

Malti-Douglas also suggests that the collection of anecdotes in \textit{al-Bukhalā\textsuperscript{1}} can be divided into three subgroups: 1) groups of anecdotes concerned with different individuals with no unifying element; 2) groups of anecdotes or a series of anecdotes concerned with single individuals; and 3) groups of anecdotes concerned with different individuals but with some unifying elements.\textsuperscript{293} Pellat asks whether the last part of this book entitled "
\textit{Alḥāf min ġilm al-`}Arab fī al-`adām}\textsuperscript{2}\" (The Utmost Parts from the Knowledge of the Arabs Concerning Food), could be the \textit{Kitāb afimat al-`}Arab} that was listed by Brokelmann.\textsuperscript{295} This controversial issue appears because this chapter in \textit{al-Bukhalā\textsuperscript{1}} present in only one manuscript.\textsuperscript{296} Nevertheless, we entirely agree with Brokelmann, when he admits that \textit{Kitāb afimat al-`}Arab} was among al-Jāḥīz's work.\textsuperscript{297}

\textsuperscript{291} Al-Jāḥīz, \textit{al-Bukhalā\textsuperscript{1}}, pp. 1-8.
\textsuperscript{292} \textit{Ibid.}, pp. 195-212.
\textsuperscript{293} We assumed that the reason why this \textit{risāla} comes first is that al-Jāḥīz wants to attack the personality of Sahl b. Hārūn because he is said to have been a fanatical supporter of the Shu`ubīyya. See Gibb, 'The Social Significance of the Shu`ubīyya', in: Gibb, \textit{Studies on the Civilization of Islam}, pp. 62-73; Norris, 'Shu`ubīyya in Arabic literature', in: Ashtiany et. al., \textit{Abbasid Belles-Lettres}, pp. 31-45.
\textsuperscript{294} Malti Douglas, \textit{Structure of Avarice}, p. 47.
\textsuperscript{295} Pellat, \textit{The life and works of al-Jāḥīz}, p. 23.
\textsuperscript{296} For further discussion on this matter see, Malti-Douglas, \textit{Structure of Avarice}, pp. 43-45.
Regarding the motive of the composition of this book, al-Jāhiz states in his introduction that the reader will find three things in his book: the first being the explanation of a novel argument (tabayyun lujja ṣarf), the second being the revelation of a witty stratagem (ta'Laruf ḥilā al-lajīf), and the third being the benefit of a wondrous anecdotes (istiṣadā nādira ʿajiba). In addition, al-Jāhiz also wants to highlight the Arabs superiority against the Shībīyya group. This book also represents the sense of al-Jāhiz's obedience to the Abbasid government against the Umayyads.

Describing the methodology of al-Jāhiz's writing of his Bukhālā', Pellat says as follows: "he wrote the al-Bukhālā' in which he used laughter as an element in moralizing deseg". This book of al-Jāhiz also is a treasure-trove of information on the food and dietary habits of various groups of people living in early Abbasid society. In praise of the composition of al-Bukhālā', Jackson said that we are fortunate in al-Bukhālā' of al-Jāhiz that the composition of the book as a series of anecdotes enables us to enjoy and appreciate an individual story or stories, without necessarily having read the entire book. In addition, al-Jāhiz also exploits religious texts (i.e. the Qur'anic verses and Ḥadīth) in his way to highlight how Bukhālā's person attempts to defend their vice.

In short, we can say that this book would fall within the group of works dealing with a specific category of people. One can cite other books in this category composed by

---

298 Al-Jāhiz, al-Bukhālā', p. 5; see also, Malti Douglas, Structure of Avarice, p. 49.
301 Pellat, The life and works of Jāhiz, p. 4.
303 See for example, al-Jāhiz, al-Bukhālā', pp. 9-16, 185-86,192-94.
al-Jāḥīz. He himself for instance, mentions Risāla fi ḥiyal al-luṣūṣ, however as has been mentioned above, this work is unfortunately not extant. Further titles in this category, would include al-Burṣān wa al-Cūrjān, Risāla fi al-qiyān and etc.

2.4 Rasā'il of al-Jāḥīz:

It seems from the list of his work that al-Jāḥīz has a large number of books and rasā'il. We have already offered a brief explanation about some of his main extant works. Therefore, this part of the study will now focus on the discussion of the second part of al-Jāḥīz’s works i.e. the rasā'il.

2.4.1 The definition of Risāla:

*Risāla* (pl. Rasā'il) is Arabic term used in classical Arabic literature to describe the literary letter/epistle which addressed to a name (or without naming) person as a literary device. The composition being in fact designed for public consumption and commonly much lengthier than any genuine private letter would be. At the start, this device was mainly used for works of moral and political advice, but soon came to be employed also for scientific, and philosophical, etc. which we would be call treatises, essays or epistles. This kind of writing has not always denoted a short work; a risāla can extend over several volumes.304 Whilst *Fann al-rasā'il* also known as “epistolary art”

---

which derived from three Arabic words, viz. (رسول), ( الثلاثاء), and (كتب). The words Türkçe, tarsıl, kitabā, inšā', designated the art of letter-writing. 

2.4.2 The collection of the rasā’il of al-Jāḥīz:

The rasā’il of al-Jāḥīz originally is preserved in fragments in classical works particularly in the margin of al-Kāmil written by al-Mubarrad (d. c. 285/898). Then it has been collected from these fragments by ʿUbaydullah b. Hassān. In modern times, almost all these rasā’il has received considerable scholarly attention, mainly because of its value. As far as I am aware that the first collection of the rasā’il of al-Jāḥīz has been edited by Van Vloten but this edition contains only three rasā’il. Unfortunately, he died before completing the work; it was then continued and sent to the press by de Goeje. Later, Muhammad Sāsī al-Maghribī edited a new edition of risāla which contained eleven risāla; three rasā’il from Vloten’s collection and the other rasā’il from his new collection. Then, J. Finkel collected and edited three more risāla in his

303 We find that some of these rasā’il are sometimes called kitāb, but most often risāla. See Lane, An Arabic-English Lexicon, Vol I, p. 1084, Vol. II, pp. 2592, 2791.
306 Thanks to ʿUbaydullah b. Hassān, that we now have al-Jāḥīz’s rasā’il in an academic edition. According to ʿUyūn al-Sūd, ʿUbaydullah b. Hassān was unknown Adīb, who lived in the fourth century of hijra. See ʿUyūn al-Sūd, Rasā’il al-Jāḥīz, Vol. III, p. 3.
collection. In 1933, Sandūhī edited a bigger portion of the rasā'il of al-Jāhiz in his collection which contained seventeen rasā'il. In 1943, Taha al-Ḥajirī and Paul Kraus published four rasā'il in their edition which has been published by Lujnat al-Ta'liff wa al-Turjuma, Cairo.

The first complete collection of the rasā'il of al-Jāhiz has been edited by ʻAbd al-Salām Muhammad Ḥārūn in two volumes. He based his edition on the previous collections and on some classical works such as Sharḥ nahj al-balāgha by Ibn Abī al-Ḥāḍid (d. c. 656/1258), T̄irāz al-majālis by al-Shihāb al-Khafājī (d. 979/1571) and Jam' al-jawāhir by al-Ḥusnī (d. 413/1022) etc. Later on, in 1974, ʻAbd al-Salām Muhammad Ḥārūn published another two volumes which consists of ten rasā'il.

The edition that we are going to use in this study was reprinted in four volumes by Dār al-Jīl, Beirut, 1991. This edition has clearly been prepared with immense care. The usefulness of Ḥārūn’s edition is considerably enhanced by his introduction and indices of the Qur’ānic verse, Ḥadīth, proverbs, poetry, persons, tribes and groups, and countries and other places. For this reason, all modern studies on Rasā’īl al-Jāhiz are, of course, indebted to Ḥārūn’s edition.

310 The three rasā’il are as follows: 1) al-Mukhtār min kitāb al-radd ʿalā al-Naṣārī, 2) Risāla fi dhamm akhlāq al-kuttāb, and 3) Risāla fi al-qiyān. See: Thalāth rasā’il fi al-Jāhiz, Edit. by: Finkel, Matba’at al-Salafiyya, Cairo, 1928.


312 The four rasā’il are: 1) Risāla fi al-maḍār fi al-giyāf, 2) Risāla fi ḥizb al-aṣl wa ʿifz al-lisān 3) Risāla fi al-jādīd wa al-hādī, 4) Risāla fi ṣulḥ al-bayn al-adhāwa wa al-ḥaṣad.

313 Ibid. p. 4.
The first volume of Hārūn’s edition contains ten *rasā’il*, namely:

1. Risāla fī manāqib al-Turk.
2. Risāla fī al-maqāsh wa al-ma‘ād.
5. Risāla fī al-jidd wa al-hazl.
7. Risāla fī al-futūmah.

And the second volume contains seven *rasā’il*, namely:

1. Risāla fī al-nāhiba.
2. Risāla fī al-ḥijāb
3. Risāla fī mufakharat al-jawārī wa al-ghilmān
4. Kitāb (Risāla) fī al-qiyān
5. Risāla fī dhāmm akhlāq al-kuttāb
6. Kitāb al-bighāl

The third volume consists of *rasā’il* as follows:
1. Risāla fi al-hāsid wa al-maḥsūd
2. Risāla fi al-mu'allimin
3. Risāla al-tarbī' wa al-tadwīr
4. Risāla fi madh al-nabīl wa ṣifat aṣḥābīh
5. Risāla fi tābaqāt al-mughaniyyīn
6. Risāla fi al-nisā'ī
7. Risāla fi manākib al-Turk
9. Risāla fi khalq al-Qur'ān

The fourth volume contains this rasāʾil:
1) Risāla fi al-radd ʿalā al-mushabbiha
2) Risāla fi al-ʿUthmāniyya
3) Risāla fi al-masāʾil wa al-jawābī fi al-maʿrifā.
4) Risāla fi al-maṣāḥ wa al-maṣādīl
5) Risāla fi al-jidd wa al-hazl
6) Risāla fi al-wukalāʾī
7) Risāla fi al-awtān wa al-buldān
8) Risāla fi al-balāgha wa al-jāzī
9) Risāla fi tafṣīl al-baṭn ʿalā al-zuhr
10) Risāla fi al-nubl wa al-tanabbul
11) Risāla fi al-mawadda wa al-khilfa
Subsequently, in 1995, 'Alī Abī Milḥīm comes with his special collection and edition of the rasā'il of al-Jāḥīz which he divided into two groups; the first group is called al-Rasā'il al-Kalāmiyya and the second group is al-Rasā'il al-Adabiyya. In addition, he also provides a lengthy introduction into each risāla.

The third and the latest collection of rasā'il of al-Jāḥīz that we are going to use for this study is the collection of Muhammad Bāsīl 'Uyūn al-Sūd. This is a further step toward a better understanding of the rasā'il of al-Jāḥīz. The editor has added occasional notes, both philological and historical, to the text. This collection consists of four

---

volumes in which the whole *rasā’il* appeared as the same order as Harūn’s editions which are as follows:

1) First volume contains ten *rasā’il*.
2) Second volume contains seven *rasā’il*.
3) Third volume consists of ten *rasā’il*.
4) Forth volume contains eighteen *rasā’il*.

On the other hand, there are some other *risāla* which not have been mentioned in these three collections. For instance, it has been said that *Risāla fi al-zar’ wa al-nakhl wa al-zaytūn* was supposed to be the work of al-Jāḥiẓ. The work was very possibly quite large if the report quoted in the *Fihrīst* of Ibn Naḍīm is correct, because five thousands dinars at that time was a large amount. However, as far as we know, this work has not survived.

It is remarkable to note here that some manuscripts of this *rasā’il* still exist in the British Museum. For instance, in his “*Supplement to the Catalogue of Arabic MSS in the British Museum*”, Charles Rieu mentioned some of title of *Rasā’il al-Jāḥiẓ* which can be seen in the British museum.

---

316 Al-Jāḥiẓ adapted the title of this work from the Qur’ānic verse (16:11). He dedicated this work to Ibrāhīm b. ‘Abbās al-Ṣūfī, who has given him 5,000 dinars. However, Abū Milbim suggests that the complete title of this work is *al-Zar’ wa al-nakhl wa al-zaytūn wa al-dīnāb*. See: Abū Milbim, *Kashshāf al-ḥayāt ar-al-Jāḥiẓ*, p. 376.
317 McDonald, *Animals-Books as a Genre in Arabic Literature*, pp. 3-10.
Refering to Pellat’s book on *The life and works of Jāhiz*, we find that Pellat divided all of the rasā'il of al-Jāhiz's into three categories; the first category is on semi-political or semi-theological, the second category is on al-Jāhiz's own particular type of *adab*, and the final category is on traditional *adab*, merging into the portrayal of people and society. There are eighteen rasā'il in the first category, which Pellat divided into two sub-titles; an account of Mu'tazilite doctrine and a defence of the Abbasids against their opponents.

In category two, Pellat divided the rasā'il of al-Jāhiz into two sub-titles i.e. risāla on literary and quasi-scientific. There are seven risāla on literary and two risāla on quasi-scientific issues. And in the final category which is on traditional *adab* merging into the portrayal of people and society, Pellat divided this into four sub-titles i.e. manners, character traits, emotion and social groups. It is important to take a note here that our study will be in agreement with Pellat on this subject matter.

---


2.5 The Significance of al-Jaḥīz’s Methodology of Writing and Composition:

Ibn Khaldūn states in his *Muqaddima* that most of the scholars in early Islamic period have been non-Arab and mostly Persian.\(^{322}\) This fact can be found in Arabic prose literature because this type of literature was mainly started by non-Arab writers especially by these two famous names namely ʿAbd al-Ḥamīd al-Kātib and Ibn al-Muqaffā. They introduced Persian cultural influence to the Islamic world by producing translations and adaptations from Pahlawi literature. However, al-Jaḥīz changed this type of prose literature into a new type, which was based on the foundation of early Arab culture; although Pellat has said: “it must be conceded that al-Jaḥīz’s style is hard to characterize”.\(^{323}\) Nevertheless, in other occasion he has described some of the significance of al-Jaḥīz’s writing, for instance he claimed: “his sentences, which almost always dispenses with internal rhyme, are often complex and extremely long, so long indeed as to mislead some editors who fail to grasp their flow into breaking them up at the wrong point. They are balanced by the juxtaposition of units of similar quantity and by the repetition of the same idea in two different forms, so that the reader may be sure to grasp its sense. His vocabulary is rich and as precise as the state of language at that period allowed; foreign terms and neologian are used with discrimination, and many passages seem quite modern”.\(^{324}\) It is clear from this quotation that Pellat already knew some of al-Jaḥīz’s type of writing. Now, this thesis will offer some explanation of al-Jaḥīz’s writing.


1) *Istifrād* or digression[^325] is one of the main features of al-Jāhiẓ’s style of writing. Baldick defines digression as a temporary departure from one subject to another more or less distantly related topic, before discussion of the first subject is resumed[^326]. According to Hutchins, digression was already a recognized stylistic device in Greek and Roman literature[^327]. In more modern times, Laurence Sterne in *Tristam Shandy*, for instance, as quoted by Hutchins, said that “digressions are the very sunshine of reading, its life and soul. To remove them from his book would leave winter reign in its pages”[^328]. We can find that a similar suggestion had been made by al-Jāhiẓ long time ago when he recommended that an author should “nurse the readers enthusiasm” by taking them from one thing to another and from topic to topic[^329]. The reason behind this method, as explained by Bā Qāzī, has two aspects; one is that al-Jāhiẓ has a lot of information to relay to the reader and the other is al-Jāhiẓ wants his reader to continue their reading until the end of the book[^330]. The same idea was highlighted by Zakī Mubārak in his great work *al-Nathr al-fannī fī al-qarn al-rābī‘*[^331]. In short, we can say that al-Jāhiẓ does this in an effort to keep the reader interested.

Though such digressions will mislead the student, they may, however, entertain the reader. When explaining this method of al-Jāhiẓ’s writing, Mansūr said that al-Jāhiẓ makes us understand, for example, that he did not want to ignore the differing

[^328]: Ibid., p. 2.
inclinations of his readers at whatever level they may be. He did not forget or scorn even those who were uninterested in reading books. In an effort to cater to the widest possible audience and readers, he included much that obscures the main thrust of his explanation and that might have been omitted. Nevertheless, al-Jāḥiz was criticised and attacked on this point by later writers such as Ibn Qutayba, Abū Hilāl al-Askarī and others.

2) Another peculiarity of al-Jāḥiz’s writing, which he himself admits is the fact that he writes some of his works and attributes them to some early prose writers, in order that people would read them without prejudice against him. For instance, he said "...I may write a perfect and excellent book on religion, jurisprudence or literature ... and attribute it to myself, a group of scholars then agree on calumniating it for the envy which it created in them, although they know its creativeness and cleverness ... But I may write a book which is not as good as that, in meaning and words, and publish it under another name, attributing it to a writer earlier than me, like Ibn al-Muqaffa or al-Khalīl or Salm of Bayt al-Ḥikma, Yaḥyā b. Khālid and al-Attabī... then the same people come to me .... To copy the book and study it under my supervision".

We do not know how far al-Jāḥiz went this way, but it is interesting to notice that he tend to hide his identity in some of his works and delude the reader about the authorship of the works. We can find this particularly at the beginning of his involvement in writing. The reason for this method as explained by al-Ḫajirī, has two aspects; one is that it was one of the typical artistic methods of al-Jāḥiz to write pieces and attribute them

to other writer of the time. The second reason, is that al-Jāḥīz himself stated that he had attributed many of works to other writers whom the public respected. 334

3) Another characteristic of al-Jāḥīz’s writing, which makes the study of his thought a difficult task, is the fact that he, very often, does not express a personal opinion on the subject he deals with, but tends to discuss the contradictory views of various people and parties. We can see in al-Jāḥīz’s works several words that refer to other opinion such as “Qāl” (It has been said), “Qālū” (They said), “Qāl” (He said), Qāla al- Ārab (The Arabs said), and Qāla al-Ākhar (Another said), etc. 335 In reference to this method of al-Jāḥīz’s writing, al-Bāqillānī describes it as follows: “Whenever he mentions one line of his own words, he would follow it by pages of other people’s speech, and whenever he writes one page, he would construct a whole book of other people’s saying...”. 336 Through the usage of this method, we assumed that in this way, al-Jāḥīz was able to rid himself from a great responsibility of what he has done in his works. However, al-Jāḥīz has his justification for this method, (i.e. quoting various references), that he intended to leave the judgments to the readers, therefore, as he described “… the dispute would be only between him and the evidence...” 337

4) Another element in al-Jāḥīz’s writing sets him apart from other prose writers is the used of humour and satire. Humour in Arabic is “al-Fuṣūṣ”. 338 In English literature,

humour is forms of the genre of ‘satire’. However, there is no exact equivalent in Arabic for ‘satire’. Hijā’ or hajw is often translated as ‘satire’.339 This term is thought to come from the Latin word satura, originally meaning the vessel used for carrying harvest produce.340 By extension, the word also came to mean a mixture, and then a mixed sort of entertainment, of the kind people might have at harvest time, with songs and jokes and other kind of humour.341 So, satire is related to comedy which focuses on people’s behaviour.

In Arabic literature as well, we can find this kind of humour, particularly in prose writing, and the main focus of Arabic humour is more likely to be on human behaviour. Therefore, this type of writing is a main feature of Arabic literature from medieval times to the present day. The most important value in humorous writing as described by Ogborn, is wit, sharpness of observation and cleverness with language – this can give the work a cutting edge, which can amuse and entertain while it criticises.342

Several of al-Jāḥīz’s works have humorous and satirical elements.343 The Bukhālā’ and Risāla al-tarbīa wa al-tadbīr are the greatest of al-Jāḥīz’s work in this style of writing. However, it is remarkable to note here that he tried to justify his method of writing by saying that had he encumbered his readers with the burden of truth and seriousness, none but the devotees of science would have had the patience to read so long

341 Ibid., p.13; see also Baldick, p. 198.
342 Ibid., p.13.
a work. According to Mansûr, the sense of humour that has been shown in al-Jâhiz’s writing may do him credit; but the exaggeration to which it led him, is a definite weakness.

Instead of using humour and satire, we also find that al-Jâhiz tries to mix seriousness and joking in his writing. Seriousness in Arabic is al-Jîdd and joking is al-Hazl. Al-Jâhiz remarks on jîdd and hazl are scattered throughout a number of his works. It is remarkably to note here that al-Jâhiz wrote one risâla entitled Risâla fi al-jîdd wa al-hazl, which will be taken for extensive discussion in chapter three. This risâla, as was described by Gelder, is far from being a risâla “on earnest and jest”, it ought to be rendered as “in earnest and jest” because the pair of jîdd and hazl is not even found in the text. Pellat says that the seriousness and joking was a common combination of antithetical terms which have a certain resonance in Muslim ethics and the Arabic literary genre known as adab. Referring to his Risâla fi al-shârîb wa al-mashrûb, al-Jâhiz clearly mentions this methodology of writing when he writes: “I have leavened seriousness with humour and spiced reasoning with jest to lighten the reader’s labour and spur the listener’s interest. I have alternated sobriety and mirth in order to amuse and

346 See Madina, Arabic – English Dictionary, Pocket Book, New York, 1973, pp. 108 & 711. In the Qur’an, the word jîdd is absent; hazl is found only in Sûra al-Târiq (86: 13-14) when the Qur’an said: “Immânaha la gawilun faâl, wa mî huwa bi al-hazl” which means: (Behold this is the word that distinguishes (good from evil), it is not a thing for amusement). See, Abdullah Yusuf Ali, The Holy Qur’an, Text, Translation and Comentary, p. 1633. In addition, there are a few Hadiths that employs the word “hazl” and “jîdd” such as the Prophet saying: “O God, forgive me, my hazl and my jîdd”, which clearly means (Forgive me all my sins, whether they were committed in earnest or jestingly). For excellent study of the concept al-jîdd wa al-hazl in Arabic literature, see Gelder, ‘Mixture of Jest and Earnest in Classical Arabic Literature’, in Journal of Arabic Literature, Vol. XXIII, 1992, Part One, pp. 83-107 & Part Two, pp. 169-190.
347Gelder, Mixture of Jest and Earnest in Classical Arabic Literature, p. 95.
mixed wit with argument to divert and entertain”. 349 We find that on several occasions al-Jāḥiz justifies and explains this habit of mixture of jidd and hazl such in his al-Bayān wa al-tabyīn, al-Ḥayawān and al-Bukḥālā. 350 For that reason, Gelder admits that the most interesting early author on jest and earnest is unquestionably al-Jāḥiz. 351 In short, al-Jāḥiz succeeds in harmoniously, as described by Pellat, in blending together the serious and the joke in several of his writing. 352

5) Techniques of argumentation or debate played a significant part in the development of Arabic prose. 353 Munāẓara, which may be in prose, saj or verse, is the most common term for both the scholarly and the literary debate. 354 According to Gelder, the debate or argument in literary field is a genre with a long history. It appears in Arabic and other numerous languages such as Sumerian, Akkadian, Egyptian, Aramaic, Syrian, Middle and New Persian, either in prose text, often rhymed, or in poetry. 355 In the Arabic literary debate, the words such as munāẓara, muḥāwara, munāṣara, muḥākara, mukhāyala, munāqāḍa, muḥāaba, and munāqala, etc are used to prescribe the debate and we can find some these phrases in al-Jāḥiz’s writing as well. However, it is in the form of an individual argument, which we can be assumed also as a form of debate.

351 Gelder, Mixture Of Jest and Earnest in Classical Arabic Literature, p. 95.
352 Charles Pellat has studied the concept of jest and earnest or seriousness and humour in Arabic literature, concentrating on religious and literary attitude towards humour, joking and laughter, and, to a lesser extent, on the combination of those with earnestness. See Pellat, ‘Seriousness and humour in early Islam’, in Journal of Islamic Studies, 2:3 (1963), pp. 353-362; and see his article ‘Al-Djidd wa al-Hazl’, in The Encyclopaedia of Islam, Vol. II, p. 537.
353 Leder, Classical Arabic prose literature, p. 8.
His arguments, however, are sometimes presented in a systematic way in spite of the generally disordered nature of the work. This form of debate reflects the dialectical aspect in al-Jahiz’s methodology and at the same time gives us an idea about the kind of controversies current in the circle of the Mutakklimûn. It is most difficult to see which side al-Jahiz favours in this kind of debate, however, generally speaking he takes both sides as we can be seen in later discussion. In al-Jahiz’s prose writing, one can notice that words like muqâkhara, farq, ikhtisâm, faqîh and muwâzana occur frequently in the title of his work. However, according to 'Asî, al-Jahiz did not given any specific definition to these debate terms.

From this point of view, Gelder suggests that the style of literary debate may have been introduced into Arabic literature by al-Jahiz. We can find, for instance, the contest between spring and autumn, and the debate of musk and civet (Muqâkhara al-misk wa al-zabad) in al-Jahiz’s prose works. Moreover, in the introduction to his debate between a lover boy and lover of girls in Risâla fî muqâkhara al-jawârî wa al-ghilmân, al-Jahiz refers to another debate of his, also lost, called Ikhtisâm al-shitâ‘ wa al-ṣayf wa iḥtiyâj al-adâhimâ‘alâ šâhibih.

---

358 The title of this risâla is Salwa al-kharîf bi muqâzara al-rabi‘ wa al-kharîf. However, according to Brockelmann, this risâla was wrongly attributed to al-Jahiz, because later on, it appears to be written by a Persian writer. See Brockelmann, Tarsikh al-adab al-‘Arabi, Vol. III, p. 127.
359 Sandûbî claims that the original title of this risâla is Risâla fî muqâkhara al-misk wa al-ramâdî, Sandûbî, Adab al-Jahiz, p. 141.
Furthermore, we can see that al-Jāḥīz also wrote *risāla* in which one thing is declared superior to another such as *Risāla fi tafṣīl al-baṣṭ al-ṣawr* (The Superiority of Belly to Back), *Risāla fi tafṣīl al-sūdān al-bāṭ al-ḥāri* (The Superiority of Blacks to Whites). From this point of view, when examining the work of al-Jāḥīz, Ibn Qutayba describes our author as being capable of “doing a thing and its opposite”. In modern times, Najm came up with the same idea when she says: “al-Jāḥīz enjoyed a remarkable quality of producing one idea and its reverse and being, at the same time, able to defend both side with equal interest and ability. His books on praising and condemning various groups of people stand as an example of his double-side mind”. Gelder agreed with Najm in this matter, therefore he claimed that al-Jāḥīz may be considered the true founder of *taḥṣīn* (beautifying) and *taqbiḥ* (uglifying) as a genre, and of the related practice of praising and blaming the same thing. *Risāla fi fakhr al-sūdān al-bāṭ al-ḥāri* and al-*Burṣān wa al-ṣarjān*, for instance, are clear example of beautifying what was commonly deemed ugly. Therefore, al-Jāḥīz is able to express his ideas through this method whereby he would present opponents view; or he would fabricate a debate between two groups to present both sides of an argument in which there is no clear winner.

6) Al-Jāḥīz also used his linguistic skills to delight and win over his readers. The most famous linguistic skill of al-Jāḥīz is the beauty of his *ṣaf*, a certain rhythm and congruity of sound, which makes the reading go smoothly and awakens the admiration of the reader. The advantages of this style, as was described by al-Jāḥīz, are two fold; it is

---

pleasing to the ear and easy to remember. However, he himself is not slave of rhetorical devices; rather we can say that his style is very natural, where it is natural to drift toward saj, he will use it. This type of writing skill is also known as “Uslūb al-mutawāzin” which reflects the style of the Qur’ān. The use of Qur’ānic style enhances the beauty of the prose. Because of this, it has been said that al-Jāḥiẓ may be the earliest prose writer whose work has been preserved who makes use of the Qur’ānic style.

Another linguistic skill of al-Jāḥiẓ is the use of al-Jumla al-din å’iyya, which includes the optative meaning, particularly in the debate. Abū Bakr al-Ṣūfī named this type of writing as “Dīf ëi’ al-mukātaba”, which normally used by Kuttāb (secretaries) in Dīwān al-rasā’il. By using this type of writing, al-Jāḥiẓ attempts to convince his enemies by giving them good wishes before attacking them. We can find this type of phrases scattered in al-Jāḥiẓ’s works such as (May Allah preserve you), (May Allah honor you), (May Allah give you right guidance), and (May Allah grant you long life), etc.

In addition, repetitive structure also can be found in al-Jāḥiẓ’s works. This kind of style of writing is normal phenomenon with classical Arabic literature either in pre-Islamic poetry, in the Qur’ān, Ḥadith literature, and in the literature following the foundation of Islam, poetry as well as prose, and particularly so in what is known under

366 See the list of Dīf ëi’ al-mukātaba in al-Sūfī, Adab al-kuttāb, pp. 173-175.
the heading of *adab*. According to Bürgel, repetition is a structural element of general importance in various kind of art, all over the world. He claims that repetition in Arabic literature, Arabic prose in particular, if the phenomenon is ubiquitous in various arts; it was certainly more than usually favored by authors of the Arabic *adab* literature.

7) The most important elements of al-Jāḥiz’s writing in this study is the use of the Qurʾān, Ḥadīth and historical narrative such as *khabar*, *qiṣṣa*, proverbs and poetry, etc. As we know, the Qurʾān is book of guidance which set up for Muslims new principle of religious, moral and social conduct. The Qurʾān is also a literary work of the highest quality. It is the final authority regarding the Arabic language and grammar and the standard by which a literary work might be judged. While the Ḥadīth, or the Sunna, of the Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) is used as supporting evidence. From this point of view, al-Jāḥiz used all these elements in his writing in making his case and to support his argument. Because of this, for al-Jāḥiz, there is no question that the Qurʾān and the Ḥadīth are the most important source for use as evidence in the construction of his argument. This is followed by historical narrative. Describing the use of the Qurʾān and Ḥadīth in al-Jāḥiz’s writing, Zubaidi said: “From the third/ninth century onwards the influence of the Ḥadīth went hand in hand with that of al-Qurʾān. In al-Jāḥiz’s essay quotations from the Qurʾān and Ḥadīth are used in abundance. He usually resorts to them in support of his argument”.

---

368 For further explanation on the repetitive structure in Arabic prose, see Bürgel, ‘Repetitive Structure in Early Arabic prose’, in: *Critical Pilgrimage: Studies in the Arabic Literature Tradition*, Edit. by: Fedwa Malti-Douglas, the University of Texas, Austin, 1989, pp. 49-64.
369 Bürgel, *Repetitive Structure in Early Arabic prose*, p. 49.
2.6 Conclusion:

From the extant works of al-Jāḥiz's, we would like to note here that some early writers, as were noted by Pellat, recognised the importance al-Jāḥiz and dubbed him as *muḥallim al-ṣaql wa al-adab*, which means "the teacher of reason and polite learning", or in other words they said that the works of al-Jāḥiz teach us to reason first, and instruct us in literature next. An interesting point should be mentioned here concerning his works, besides their literary merit, his writings are of considerable historical interest which provides valuable material for the detailed study of social and intellectual developments in the third century A.H. or ninth century A.D. century in Baghdad. Therefore, we may assume that all his works becomes the major sourcework on this important genre within the Arabic literary heritage. Concerning the method of his writing, there were writers who tried to follow this method, but were criticised of being unsuccessful. Ibn al-ʿAmīd, for instance, is said to have been one of the great admires of al-Jāḥiz and wanted to be like him, but was disillusioned about his ability. However, "he fell far away from al-Jāḥiz, near to his own self". Thus, this is clear evidence for the significance of al-Jāḥiz and his works.

---

PART TWO

A STUDY OF SELECTED TEXTS FROM

THE RASĀ'IL AL-JĀḤIZ COLLECTION
3.1. Introduction:

The study of morals, manners and character traits is an important subject in Islamic thought. Generally, it has been known that Islamic manners and characters traits are derived from the two main sources in Islam, namely the Qur'an and the Sunna of the Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.). Therefore, the main aim of this chapter is to elucidate the significance of the rasā'īl of al-Jāḥiz concerning the Ādāb which carried the meaning of morals, manners and characters traits. In addition, an attempt is made here to appraise al-Jāḥiz’s point of view concerning the subject matter. From the list of the works of al-Jāḥiz as was recorded by Yāqūt, we find that al-Jāḥiz also contributed several rasā'īl in this area of study.

---

372 For more detail about Ādāb al-Islām (Islamic manners) see al-Kaysi, Morals and Manners in Islam, The Islamic Foundation, Melksham, 1996.

373 There have been many definitions and descriptions of Ādāb (pl. Ādāb). It is an Arabic term meaning custom; it denotes a habit, etiquette, a manner of conduct derived from people considered as models. During the first two centuries following the emergence of Islam, the term “ādāb” carried the meaning of ethical and social implications. For our purpose in this chapter, we shall adopt the above simplified definition. For more detail, see Encyclopedia of Islam, art. Adab, Vol. I, pp.175-6; see also in Chapter two of this thesis. In the same case, Pellat also asserts that there are two types of Ādāb; the first was concerned with general ethic, the second with worldly wisdom and polite behaviour. See Pellat, The life and works of Jāḥiz, p. 23.

Although, there are several works of varying length by al-Jähiz in this category\textsuperscript{375} this thesis will however, only deal with certain works such as Risāla fi al-ma‘ād al wa al-ma‘āsh, Risāla fi faṣl mā bāyn al-ṣadāwa wa al-ḥasad, Risāla fi al-ḥāṣid wa al-maḥṣūd, Risāla fi kitmān al-sihr wa ḥīf al-lisān, Risāla fi taṣāfī al-ṣaṣī al-ṣamī, Risāla fi jidd wa al-hazl and Risāla fi al-nubl wa tanabbul wa dhāmm al-kibr. This work can be assumed as moralistic literature which was known to have influenced other writers such as Ibn Qutayba (d. 276/889), Ibn al-Muťazz (d. 296/908), and others.\textsuperscript{376}

With some of the rasā‘il in this category, only a few pages seem to have survived, for instance, Risāla fi al-wukalā‘ wa al-muwakkalīn\textsuperscript{377} and Risāla fi istinjā‘ al-waf‘\textsuperscript{378} In same cases, only a few quotations of a text have survived, whilst in some cases the whole risāla has been lost such as Risāla fi ḭiyal al-luṣūs\textsuperscript{379} and Risāla fi ḭiyal al-mukaddām. For example, we know about Risāla fi ḭiyal al-luṣūs only by al-Jähiz’s quotation in his al-


\textsuperscript{377} Yāqūt mentions it under the list of al-Jähiz’s works. See Yāqūt, \textit{Mu‘jam al-udā‘ā}, Vol. XVI, p. 107; The risāla, like many other works of al-Jähiz, seems to have been a refutation of another work which was written against the wakāl (agent). In publishing this work, Sād al-Maghribī, for example, selected less than three pages of it. See Sādī al-Maghribī, \textit{Majmū‘ rasā‘īl}, pp. 170-172. However, this work, in Hārūn’s edition, contains more chapters than those published by Sādī al-Maghribī.

\textsuperscript{378} A fragment text of the risāla can be seen in Hārūn’s, \textit{Uyūn al-Sūd}’s and Ābū Milḥīm’s collection. It seems from Ābū Milḥīm’s collection that he collected the risāla within the group of \textit{Rasā‘īl al-Adabiyya}. See Ābū Milḥīm, \textit{Rasā‘īl al-Jāhiz}, pp. 421-425. The author commands the keeping of promises; however, Pellat claims that the extract of the risāla is virtually untranslatable. See Pellat, \textit{The life and works of Jāhiz}, p. 25.

Bukhalā' when he says: “You remarked, Allah preserved you, that you have read my book on the classification of the ruse of thieves who rob by day and the detailed expose of the tricks of thieves who rob by night. (You also remarked) that thereby you have stopped up each crack and fortified each breach, surpassing (others) through what it told you of subtle deceits and strange devices against which it cautioned you — that perchance not stratagem will succeed in countring or cunning manage (to foil). You remarked (furthermore) that it has been of graet benefit (to you) and that it is essential to (devote oneself to) to study of it”. 380

Whilst we know about Risāla fi ḥiyal al-mukaddān from al-Baghdādi’s (d. 429 A.H.) statement when he criticised al-Jāḥiz as follows: “… And among his work …..is [his book] on the trick of al-Mukaddān (beggars), the content of which is appropriate to him [i.e. al-Jāḥiz], his profession and his family”. 381 Based on the above two statements, we believe that some quotations on al-Mukaddān, which have been recorded by later writers such as al-Ibshīhī, without mentioning where they were taken from, are quotations from al-Jāḥiz’s work on the subject of al-Mukaddān. 382

381 Al-Baghdādi, al-Farq bayn al-firaq, p. 162.
In contrast, *Kitāb al-ḥījāb*, a text consisting entirely of prose quotations and verses of poetry, although described by Pellat as the first text containing practical rules of conduct is however, doubtfully attributable to al-Jāḥiz. In the list of al-Jāḥiz’s work cited by Yāqūt, there is no mention of a work under this title. Najm also maintains that there is no confirmation as to whether this *risāla* belonged to al-Jāḥiz or not. It was published, with other *Rasā'il* of al-Jāḥiz, for the first time, by al-Sandubi. The text of *Kitāb al-ḥījāb* can be seen now in Hārūn’s and ʿUyūn al-Sūd’s collection.

On examining the text of the above *risāla* however, we find that the pattern of al-Jāḥiz’s writing is very obvious. The author proceeds to list *ḥadīth* unfavourable to the employment of doorkeepers; then, still drawing on Islamic tradition, he quotes historical examples of the advice given by famous men to their doorkeepers. Next, he considers the reasons for the employment of these servants, and the qualities needed in them. The author discusses the class of *al-Ḥujjāb* (chamberlains) and the post of *al-Ḥijāba* which became a necessity to the rulers and governors, particularly in later time. The author also says that the Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) did not approve of it and he advised his governors not to hide themselves from their people. However, the system of *al-Ḥijāba* was practised. We find that the author attributes a saying to Persian *Dihqān* (local

---

383 There are more than one hundred *abyāt* (verses) of poetry from different poems which has been quoted by the author.
chief), who advises a governor at the time of al-Ḥājjāj b. Yūsuf al-Thaqqafī (d. 95/714), on how to deal with the common people in the question of al-Ḥijāba.  

Now, our first analysis on the *Rasā'il* of al-Jāḥiẓ in this category goes to *Risāla fī al-maḍāl wa al-maḍāsh* which according to Pellat the only text of al-Jāḥiẓ that can be placed in the subject of manners.  

3.2 *Risāla fī al-maḍāl wa al-maḍāsh* (Risāla on this world and the Hereafter)  

3.2.1 Title and text of the *Risāla*:  

Yaḥqūt and Ibn ʿAbd Rabbih named it as *Kitāb al-maḍāsh wa al-maḍāl*. Hārūn, in his editorial remark to the text of the *risāla*, claimed that it was originally in two copies of manuscripts with different titles. The first copy is entitled “*Risāla Abī Uthmān ʿAmr b. Bahr al-Jāḥiẓ ilā Muḥammad b. ʿAbd al-Malik fī ṭakhlīq al-maḥmūla wa al-madhūna*” and the second copy entitled “*Risāla fī al-maḍāl wa al-maḍāsh fī al-adāb wa ṭadābbur al-nās wa muḥāmalatihim kataba bihi fī Abī al-Walīḍ Muḥammad b. Ahmad b. Abī Duʿāʾī*” However, Hārūn himself, in his collection of *Rasā'il al-Jāḥiẓ*, used *al-Maḍāl wa al-maḍāsh* as a heading of the *risāla*.  

---  
On the other hand, in ʿUyun al-Sūd’s collection, the text of the *risāla* appeared under the heading *Risāla al-maḍāsh wa al-maḍāl aw al-akhlāq al-mahmūla wa al-madhmūma kataba biḥā ilā Abī al-Walīd Muhammad b. Ahmad b. Abī Duʿād*.\(^{395}\) It seems to us here that copyists of al-Jāhiz’s works have suggested different titles according to their different approach and understanding of the text or it may be al-Jāhiz made more than one copy with different title. However, other scholars of al-Jāhiz in modern times, Pellat, for instance, assumed that the correct reading of the title of this work is *Risāla fī al-maḍāl wa al-maḍāsh fī al-adab wa tadbīr al-nās wa maṭāmalatihihm* which means “Letter for this world and the next on manners, conduct and human relationship”.\(^{396}\) Al-Ḥājrī later claimed that this *risāla* is also known as *Kitāb al-adāb*.\(^{397}\)

By referring to the text of the *risāla*, one can observe that al-Jāhiz clearly informs us about the title of his works when he declares: “I thought that I would compile for you a book of manners (كتاب من الأدب), assembling much knowledge of the sustenance for life and the afterlife (من المعال والمعاد)”.\(^{398}\) Moreover, these two terms i.e. *al-Maḍāl* and *al-Maḍāsh* are related to al-Jāhiz’s definition of *Adab* itself which according to him, *Adab* is a precious tool in matters religious and everyday life.\(^{399}\) This indicates that this *risāla* contains the combination of the discussion on the issue of manner concerning the life and the afterlife.


\(^{397}\) Al-Ḥājrī, *al-Jāhiz xayārūh wa ʿāhārūh*, p. 327.


The text of the *risāla* in the printed edition consists of forty-three pages with no divisions other than paragraphs either in Hārūn’s edition or ʿUyūn al-Sūd’s edition; however, in the later edition it is only consists of twenty-four pages.⁴⁰⁰ Pellat in his collection of translated portion of al-Jāḥiz’s work also has published some five pages selected from various places of the *risāla*.⁴⁰¹ Hutchins in his *Nine Essay of al-Jāḥiz* translated the whole text of the *risāla* into English under the heading “Life and Afterlife or Praiseworthy and Blameworthy Conduct”.⁴⁰² The latest English translation of the *risāla* could be seen in Colville’s book *Sobriety and Mirth* entitled “This life and the life to come or Conduct Praiseworthy and Offensive”.⁴⁰³ Therefore, beside Arabic text from Hārūn’s and ʿUyūn al-Sūd’s collection, the study of the *risāla* in this chapter would rely on the Hutchins’s and Colville’s translations.

3.2.2 Addressee of the *Risāla*:

Hārūn, the editor of the *risāla* claimed that the addressee was Abī al-Walīd Muhammad b. Ahmad b. Abī Duʿād, son of the leading Muʿtazila scholars, Ahmad b. Abī Duʿād. This is base on al-Jāḥiz’s statement in his introduction to the *risāla* when he says: “I knew you – may God honour you – in the day of youth when pleasure’s authority which wears out reputations had sway over your peers”.⁴⁰⁴ In another occasion, Hārūn

---

⁴⁰⁰ The text of the *risāla* can be found in two places in Hārūn’s and ʿUyūn al-Sūd’s edition. We find that the former is more detail than the latter. See for example in Hārūn’s edition, Vol. I, pp. 91-134 & Vol. IV, pp. 69-79; and in ʿUyūn al-Sūd’s edition, Vol. I, pp. 69-93 & Vol. IV, pp. 49-58.
again claims that he found other statement in the second copy of the *risāla* which stated that it was written to Muhammad b. ʿAbd al-Malik al-Zayyāt or known as Ibn Zayyāt.\(^{405}\) However, we assume that Ibn Zayyāt could not be accepted as an addressee of the *risāla*. This is because al-Jāḥīṣ starts his relationship with Ibn al-Zayyāt when he was in power. For example, there is a clear evidence of this relationship when al-Jāḥīṣ states in other *risāla*: "You are a poet and I but a rāwī (narrator); you are tall and I am short, you are bald on top and I at the temples; you ride your horseback and I ride donkeys; you are phlegmatic and I quick tempered; you manage you own affairs and at the same time provide for the needs of others, your action affect every citizen of the empire and your organization makes itself felt to the further corner of the nation, ....you are prince and I a yokel".\(^{406}\)

The above statement indicates that it was addressed to Ibn al-Zayyāt in which the author describes their position at the time. From this point of view, it is safely to be said that the addressee of the *Risāla fi al-maṭāsh wa al-maṭād* is Abū al-Walīd Muhammad b. Abū Duʿād not Muhammad b. ʿAbd al-Malik al-Zayyāt.

### 3.2.3 The Purpose and the date of writing:

The aim of this *risāla* is to inform someone about the discussion of ethics and it also speaks of virtue as a mean between excess and deficiency and habit in which the soul

---


should be trained. Al-Jāḥiz points out his purpose of the composition of the *risāla* as follows: "Then I recalled that I still had one way of showing my gratitude by doing you a favour which would be within my power, provide you with something indispensable, and profit you considerably both in this world and the next, if God wills. I am still – may Allah grant you long life – harness to the same task, namely collecting, studying and pondering over the book". He then states clearly on the first page of the *risāla* the thesis of this work: "So I decided to write you a book of *adab*, bringing together various theories about the life hereafter and life here on earth, and setting out for you the causes of things, their outward appearance and their generally accepted significance".

Our author keeps this aspect of his subject clearly in mind throughout the *risāla*. After stating his purpose, al-Jāḥiz immediately informs us that the earlier writer has not dealt satisfactory with the subject of *adab*. For instance, he states: "I think that many writers before me have entrusted to those remaining after them in literature legacies in which they approximated the truth. In them, they gave excellent guidance. I think, however, that they primarily depicted derived conclusion without making clear the causes, pleasing attributes for which they did not indicate".

From the above statement, we know that al-Jāḥiz presumably denotes by "the earlier writers" was Ibn al-Muqaffa particularly with his two works on the subject of

---

Adab entitled al-Adab al-kabir and al-Adab al-saghir.411 From this point of view, al-Hajiri claims that al-Jahiz and Ibn al-Muqaffa4 stress his approach when he declares that his al-Adab al-saghir is a collection of the speeches of the earlier generation regarding the Adab in which he hope to be a guidance for later generation.413 On the other hand, al-Jahiz stresses also the same view when he says that he has collected, studied and then examined a book concerning the Adab. For this reason, he says “I have composed this book of mine for you, describing for you in it the natural characteristic with which mankind has been endowed and with which all creatures were brought into existence”.414 Later he remarks “I will clarify for you how their states are distinguished and how their levels differ, what the causes are which necessitate each other, what thing is a cause for something else so that the existence of the first implies that of the second, what the cause is of which the second comes only by the first”.415 This is clear evidence that there is a great similarity between the style of this work and that of Ibn al-Muqaffa4 in his ethical work.

The precise date of the composition of the risala is unknown; however, al-Hajiri suggests that it could be between the periods of the death of Ibn al-Zayyat (d. 233/847) till to the year 236 A.H. when Ubaydullah b. Yahya b. Khaghân has been appointed as

---


413 Ibid., p. 329.


At that time, Muhammad b. Ahmad b. Abī Du‘ād, the addressee of the *risāla*, had already replaced his father as Qādī particularly when his father partially paralyzed. Therefore, this *risāla* is the first work of al-Jāḥīz attribute to the new Qādī.417

3.2.4 Organization of the text:

According to Pellat, the *risāla* is a guide to etiquette; but it is plentifully and come together with digression and psychological comments.418 The organization of this *risāla* can be divided into these separate parts:

1. Introduction
2. A token of gratitude to the addressee.
3. The aim of the composition of the *risāla*.
4. The differences between this *risāla* and the *risāla* of earlier prose writers.
5. The subject and method of composition of the *risāla*.
6. The skill of rules for this world and the hereafter.
7. Relations with one’s associates.
8. Attitude to be adopted towards friend and enemy.
10. The friend.
11. Notes on the most reprehensible faults; untruthfulness, anger, envy and pride.
12. How to behave to one’s friend.
13. The *risāla* ends with some general advice.

416 Al-Ḥajīrī, al-Jāḥīz ʿayyānah wa ṣaḥāḥah, p. 327.
3.2.5 Analysis of the main issue in the *Risāla*:

The main issue of this *risāla* is al-Jāḥiz’s instructions to his addressee and perhaps to all of his reader. For example, in his introduction, al-Jāḥiz starts his word by sending to his addressee a special prayer by saying “May Allah grant you a long life and allow you to delight others”.\(^{419}\) Then he proceeds: “Many wise people have said that it is necessary for wise person to explore the place of desire thoroughly. He must take the causes of thing clear and help prepare for the consequences. For scholars are praised for carefully ascertaining the first principles of affairs and for discerning with their intellects what consequences will allow”.\(^{420}\)

In his introduction, al-Jāḥiz claims that he knew his addressee in the days of youth when pleasure’s authority which wears out reputation had sway out. Because of that he sent him his token gratitude to his addressee “I was under an obligation to show you my gratitude, indeed felt guilty that I could not begin to repay the debt I owed you, but had to confess myself unequal to the task”.\(^{421}\) The result of this gratitude was giving “my total thank to my God, the Master of each blessing and initiator of every benefaction, thank for you and an attempt to recompense you however possible with word and deed”.\(^{422}\)

It seems here that al-Jāḥiz explained the necessity of gratitude and thanks in the fact that it is logical and rational. The reason is that, according to him, he who does not...
thank people will not be able to thank God, for God gives easily, but it is not the same
with people, they give with difficulty, therefore, he who gives generously must be
thanked and praised.

3.2.5.1 Al-Jaḥīz’s instructions to his addressee:

Approximately two-third of the *risāla* is devoted to al-Jaḥīz’s instructions to his
addressee. For instance, proceeding from his introduction, we meet with the first
instruction in which al-Jaḥīz reminds his addressee to fear Allah because that is the
common ground for all good, the cause of all salvation, and the origin of all right
guidance. And then he starts by giving his advices to his addressee, here are the list of
some passages of al-Jaḥīz’s instructions with Islamic flavour as can been seen in this
*risāla*:

- فاول ما وصيتك به ونفسي تقوى الله، فإنها جماع كل خير، وسبب كل نجاة، ولقاح كل
  رشد.

(My first counsel for you, and myself, is to fear Allah. That is the common ground
for all good, the cause of all salvation, and the origin of all right guidance).

- وأحذرك ونفسي الله والغطرس به، والإهدان في أمره، والاستهانة بعذابه، والأمن لمكره.

(I caution you and myself about Allah. Do not take Him for granted. Do not try
bypass His Command, treat His duties lightly, and assume you can beguile Him).

- وأعلم أن إجراءك الأمور مجازيها، واستعمالها الأشياء على وجهها، يجمع لك ألفة القلوب،
  فيعمالك كل من عاملك بمودة.
(Know that your treating affairs equitably and your taking matters at their actual worth bring you the heart’s friendship. Everyone will deal with you with affection).

- وأعلم أن أثرتك على غير النصيحة والشفقة, والحزمة والكافية, يوجب لك المباعدة وقلة

- وأعلم أن أكثر الأمور إنما هو العادة وما تضرى عليه النفس.

(Know that when your preference is not based on sound advice, compassion, revenge, or sufficient reason, it will occasion for you estrangement and lack of confidence on the part of the one you favoured or discriminated against).

(Know that the most traits are habits in which the souls are trained).

(Know that increasing wealth is an instrument for generous act, an aid to religion, and a way to alliance with brothers).

(Know that the silence in its place may be more useful than the delivery of speech in its place and on the attainment of its opportunity, if you are silent before one who knows you do not remain silent with him out of weakness of fear).

(Know that having secrets spread is evil in every respect, whether by enemy of friend).

(Know that you will associate with people in group of differing conditions and disparate ranks, each of whom you need).
(Know that in dealing with people there arise for you circumstances in which you will need to be sociable with different types and classes of people).

As was observed above, the bulk of the text of the *risāla* is comprised of the author's instructions. All these instruction to his addressee manifests a commendable concern for al-Jāḥiz's relation with him.

3.2.5.2 The conclusion of the *Risāla*:

Near the end of the *risāla*, al-Jāḥiz again lists some general advice to his addressee and perhaps to all his readers by stating that: "the need to discipline yourself to do good works. Each good deed is a burden to the soul since it is a denial of its pleasure. If you neglect this then beware, for your base instincts will rise up to dominate you".423

The *risāla* ends with al-Jāḥiz's final praise to his addressee by asking God to continue His favour on him, and add to what has already been granted to him, etc. It seems that this *risāla* was entirely devoted to the advice of an authority, accompanied by various examples of good morals.

3.2.6. The use of the Qurʾān and Ḥadīth in the text:

After a careful examination, the most noticeable way in which al-Jāḥiz expressed his views is through the usage of Qurʾānic verses and Ḥadīth of the Prophet Muhammad

---

There are a number of both of the main Islamic sources which had been quoted by the author in order to strengthen his argument. Since he had learned the Qurʾān and the Ḥadīth for the religious purpose, this was the style of writing with which he was intimately familiar. Therefore, it can be strongly recommended that this risāla is Islamic in favour.

The following list is some of Qurʾānic verses that have been quoted by the author in the risāla:

1) According to al-Jāḥiz: "Judgment here is the same as judgment there (Hereafter). If it was not for that, no kingdom would arise, no dynasty is established, and no leadership be confirmed". The author quotes this verse (23:102-103):

فَمَنْ ثَقَلَتْ مَوَازِينَهُ فَأَوْلَدْكُ هِمْ المَفْلَحُونُ، وَمَنْ خَفَتْ مَوَازِينَهُ فَأَوْلَدْكُ الذُّنْيْن خَسَرُوا أَنْفُسَهُمْ

في جَهَنْم خَالِدٌ

"Then those who balance (of the good deeds) is heavy, they will attain salvation? But those whose balance is light, will be those who have lost their souls, in Hell will they abide".

Al-Jāḥiz then asserts: "Know that judgment in the next world is the same as judgment in this world; an equitable balance and just ruling".424 He then emphasises this idea by the quotation of this Qurʾānic verse (17:72):

وَمَنْ كَانَ فِي هَذِهِ أَعْمَى فَهُوَ فِي الأَخِرَةِ أَعْمَى وَأَضِلَّ سَبِيلًا

"But those who were blind in this world will be blind in the Hereafter and most astray from the path".

---

This verse was used as evidence when al-Jāḥīz talks about the principle of regulatory matter for religion and the world. This followed by quotation of Ibn ʿAbbās’s interpretation of the above verse. He claims that: “Ibn ʿAbbās’s interpretation of this verse holds that whoever lacks the intelligence to know how to manage his worldly affairs will be transported to the next life with the same level of intelligent”. 425

This comment seems to us that al-Jāḥīz agreed with Ibn ʿAbbās’s interpretation.

2) The second Qur’ānic verse has been quoted by the author is from Sūrah Fāṭir when the Qur’ān said (35:45):

> وَلَوْ يَؤَاخِذُ اللَّهُ النَّاسَ بِمَا كَسَبْوا مَا تُرْكَ عَلَى ظُهْرِهِ مُنْ ذَابَةً

“If Allah were to punish men according to what they deserve, He would not leave on the back of the earth a single living creature”?

This verse was quoted when al-Jāḥīz explains concerning the issue of repentance. For instance, he writes: “If Allah was unrelenting with His creatures, He would torture all of them, however, Allah accepts repentance, overlooks a false step, and doubles good deeds”. 426

3) Al-Jāḥīz says that Allah gave desire and fear control over boundaries and the scales of equity and adjusted them harmoniously. Related to this matter, al-Jāḥīz again quotes the following Qur’ānic verse (99:7-8):

---

“So whoever does good equal to the weight of an atom (or a small ant), shall see it. And whoever does equal to the weight of an atom (or a small ant), shall see it.

The author then comments: “Every agent was made confident of what He threatened and promised. Then the hearts of mankind were bound by desire and fear. Organization proceeded and policy was established according to the innate character of man and the promotion of matters of public welfare”.

4) The author writes: “Beware with all caution lest Satan tempt you from your determination and portray negligence to you in the form of trust in God, wrest caution from you and create in you languor through your surrender to the fates. God ordered trustful surrender only after the exhaustion of available procedures and submission to divine decree after seeking pardon”. The author quotes these two Qur’anic verses to support his idea. Firstly, when the Qur’an said (4: 71): which mean “....Take your precaution ...” and secondly, when the Qur’an said (2: 195):

“Do not throw yourselves into destruction (by not spending your wealth in the cause of Allah)”.

5) Al-Jahiz suggests his addressee to discipline himself with God’s instruction like His instruction to His Prophet (p.b.u.h.). Here, the author quotes this verse (17: 29):

427 Ibid., Vol. 1, p. 104; see also ‘Uyun al-Sud’s edition, Vol. 1, p. 76.
"And let not your hand be tied (like a miser) to you neck, nor stretch it forth to its utmost reach (like spendthrift), so that you become blameworthy and in severe poverty".

However, al-Jāḥīz does not make any explanation towards this verse.

6) Al-Jāḥīz also suggests his addressee the three ways of getting better from his enemy. According to him, the first one is to treat him in a kind and friendly manner from the outset. In conjunction with this matter, al-Jāḥīz quoted the Qurʾān saying (41:34):

إِدْعُ الَّتِي هِيَ أَحْسَنْ فَإِذَا الَّذِي بَيْنَكَ وَبِبَيْنِهِ عَدَادَةً كَأنَّهُ وَلَيَ حَمِيمٌ

"Repel (the evil) with one which is better (i.e Allah ordered the faithful believers to be patient at the time of anger and to excuse those who treat them badly), then verily! he between whom and you there was enmity, (will become) as though he was a close friend".

Regarding to this verse, al-Jāḥīz then asserts: "If your enemy is one for who that neither is nor appropriate, then guard your secrets from him. Leave him blind to the effect of your design and do not let him become informed by word or deed of any part of your conspiracy against him lest he be wary and learn your weak point. To protect secrets is to take the guiding reins. To threaten enemies much is cowardly. Conceal your dislike for your enemy as much as he conceals his for you. Recount his vices when he quarrels with you". 429

On the other hand, since the ethical and manners problems have been discussed in considerable detail in the Ḥadīth of the Prophert Muhammad (p.b.u.h), al-Jāḥīz quotes also five Ḥadīth to support and strengthen his idea.

1) The first Ḥadīth is the Prophet’s saying:430

(من لم يشكر للناس لم يشكر لله)

“He who does not thank people does not thank God”.

Related to this Ḥadīth, al-Jāḥīz offers his opinion: “By my life, the intellect knows that instinctively. Whoever is ungrateful for a favour performed by one of God’s creatures is even more ungrateful to God for His favours. When people give they feel it is an imposition and an inconvenience. It weighs heavily on their hearts. God gives effortlessly. For this reason, He connected giving thanks to Him and to the benefactors among His creatures”.431

2) Afterwards, he again quotes the second Ḥadīth in which the Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) was reported as saying:432

(وإذا كتمه فقد كفره)

“Let a man to whom kindness is done show gratitude and if he cannot, let him make the kindness known. A man shows his gratitude by making it known. To keep silent is a sign of the ingrate”.

However, the author does not offer any comment on this Ḥadīth.

3) The third Ḥadīth is the Prophet saying: \[433\]

“Heaven is surrounded by hardship; Hell is surrounded by pleasure”.

In conjunction with the meaning of this Ḥadīth, al-Jāḥīz comments: “By which he (the Prophet Muhammad) meant that the road to heaven is pitted with ordeal and the road to hell is strewn with pleasure”\[434]\.

4) The following Ḥadīth was quoted in connection with the discussion on the determination. The Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) said:\[435\]

“Think first and then place your trust in God”.

In accordance to this Ḥadīth, al-Jāḥīz explains: “Beware with all caution lest Satan tempt you from your determination and portray negligence to you in the form of trust in God, wrest caution from you and create in you languor through your surrender to the fates. God ordered trustful surrender only after the exhaustion of available procedures and submission to divine decree after seeking pardon”.\[436\]

---


5) The final Ḥadīth was quoted by al-Jāḥīz is the Ḥadīth which related to the subject of secrets spread. According to al-Jāḥīz, having secrets spread is evil in every aspect, whether by enemy or friend. Concerning this issue, he quotes the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) saying:

( 추진وا على الحوائج بسترها فإن كل ذي نعمة محسود)

"Protect against misfortune by concealing it; the fortunate are always envied".

For this reason, al-Jāḥīz suggests his addressee to confide his secrets only in someone who would be harmed as much as by their disclosure and who stand to benefit no less than him by keeping them concealed.

In the light of this attitude, we can see that the Qurʾān and Ḥadīth stands at the very root of his thought before he goes on to set all of his significance idea into motion.

3.2.7 The Language of the Risāla:

Moving to another important part of al-Jāḥīz’s style of writing is his linguistic skill. It is known that his linguistic skill is to delight his reader's interest and to win their sympathy. Therefore, it is for this reason that the following stylistic and linguistic observations are included here. In an attempt to give his advice, for instance, we find that

---

437Collected by al-Suyūṭī in: al-Ǧāmiʿ al-saghār, No. 985, Vol. I, p 150, with different wording. Ḥadīth Dafʿ f. Cf. The original wording for this Ḥadīth is: ( 추진وا على إنجاح الحوائج بالكشف فإن كل ذي نعمة محسود)
al-Jāḥīz usually begins his words by using imperative style⁴³⁸ (فعل الأمر) such as إعلٰم (Know), إحتذٍر (Beware), داومٌ (Maintain), تحفظٌ (Take heed), حفظٌ (Remember), and (Be economical), etc. to stress his addressee. The usage of this style has made almost all of al-Jāḥīz’s instructions more important than others.

For instance, he says:

1) إعلٰم أن الأداب إنما هي آلات تصلاح أن تستعمل في الدين وتستعمل في الدنيا، وإنما وضعته 
الأداب على أصول الطبائع.

   (Know that the Ādāb (ethics) are the tools which can be soundly employed in
   religion and in worldly concern ....)

2) إحتذٍر كل حذر أن يخدعك الشيطان عن الحزم

   (Beware with all caution lest Satan tempt you from your determination)

3) داومٌ حالك وبقاء النعمة عليك

   (Maintain the status quo and preserve your prosperity ....)

In addition, for the same purpose, al-Jāḥīz also used the negative imperative (فعل النهي) or “prohibition”⁴³⁹ such as the usage of (لا الناهية) in order to achieve his objectives.

A good example of this, he writes:

---


(لا تغبن حظلك من دينك) (Do not let your luck prejudice your faith).

And in another occasion, he writes again:

(ولا تخلين أحدا منهم) (Do not leave any of them).

It seems to us that the usage of this type of expression is absolutely suitable for that situation in which the author is trying to persuade his addressee to follow his instructions.

Instead of using Fil al-amr and Lam al-ndhiya, al-Jahiz used the oath style such as the usage of (العمرى).440 We find that al-Jahiz had used this special oath in three occasions of this risala. For instance, he says concerning the issue of total thank:

(ولعمري إن ذلك لا موجود في الفطرة)

(And by my life, the intellect knows that instinctively)

Elsewhere, in the occasion of the destinies, he says again:

(ولعمري ما يكاد ذلك يجي إلا أغل الامور)

(And by my life, that rarely comes about except in a few affairs)

The last oath comes when al-Jahiz speaks about patient, truthfulness and loyalty, etc. Here, he swore again:

(ولعمري ما غلبت الحكماء حين سمتها أركان الدين والدنيا)

440The meaning of this oath: By my life.
(By my life, the philosophers did not make a mistake when they termed these the pillars of religion and of the world).

The usage of rhythmic balance and measured termination style or Uslūb al-muzdawaj is very obvious in the risāla. This type of writing makes the reading go smoothly and awakes the admiration of the reader. To illustrate it, let us observe the paragraph below to see how al-Jāḥiz divided it into small parts which ended with the same letter al-Kāf (ك). For example, is a passage where he is showing the merits and status of people, in which he divided into two groups, he writes:441

أما من أثرت فإنه يعلم أنك لم تؤثره باستحقاق بل لهوي، فهو مرتقب أن ينتقل هوالك إلى غيره، فتحول أثررك حيث مال هوالك. فهو مدخول القلب في مودتك، غير آمن لتغيرك. وأما من أثرت عليه بعد الاستحقاق منه، فقد جعلت له السبيل إلى الطعن عليك، وأعطيته الحجة على نفسك. فكل من يعمل على غير ثقة عاد ما أراد به النفع ضررا، والاصلاح فيه فسداء.

This is a cognate repetition but the rhythm and similarity of form catch the attention of the reader and give him a feeling of pleasure and delight. On the other hand, from the above paragraph, it can be seen also that the usage of Arabic grammar by the author was very systematic. For example, the usage of particle “أما” had been used in two occasions. In this case, by referring to the Arabic grammar, if the subject of the nominal sentences is introduced by “أما”, then the predicate must be prefixed by (ف).442 So, it

442 Cowan, Modern Literary Arabic, p. 66.
should be two subjects and two predicate in the above paragraph. To illustrate, let us refer to the above paragraph again to find out those things.

1) The first one is (أما من أثرت فإنه يعلم أنك لم تؤثره)، and the subject for this is (أما من أثرت)، and the predicate is ( فإنه يعلم أنك لم تؤثره).

2) Whilst, the other one is (أما من أثرت عليه بعد الاستحقاق منه، فقد جعلت فقت جعلت له السبيل إلى الطعن عليك)، the subject for this sentence is (أما من أثرت)، and the predicate is (فقد جعلت له السبيل إلى الطعن عليك).

Finally, the use of poetry in this *risāla* is very limited. Only seven verses of poetry were cited by the author, namely the poet of Abū al-*ʿAtāhiya*443, Abū Duʿād al-Iyādī444, Qanāb b. ʿAmra445 and Zuhayr b. Janab b. Hubal al-Kalbī.446 However, the main bulk of the main part of the *risāla*, as can be seen in Hārūn’s and ʿUyūn al-Sūd’s collection, consists of the author’s instructions and the approaching conclusion is signalled by selection of *nawādir*.447

---

447 *Nawādir* (sing. *Nādira*) is literally means rare thing, and its denotes a pleasing anecdotes containing wit, humor, jocularity of type which has never ceased to be an integral feature of all social gatherings, whether intimate or official. See *The Encyclopedia of Islam*, art. Nawādir, Vol. VII, pp. 856-7.
3.3 *Risāla fī al-ḥāsid al-maḥṣūd* (The Envious and the Envied)

3.3.1 Background of the *Risāla*:

One of the most dangerous diseases that haunted men all over history is *al-Ḥasad* (Envy). It is regarded as the virulent disease that caused many distresses and difficulties to all human nations including the Islamic *umma*. The epidemic of *al-Ḥasad*, which forms one of the diseases of the "soul", if not being well controlled will give a great consequence on human development, be that in the aspect of psychology, moral or social.⁴⁴⁸

In this context, as far as we are aware that al-Jāḥiz has made great contributions to this subject matter. His first contribution is this *risāla* entitled *Risāla fī al-ḥāsid wa al-maḥṣūd* and the other is entitled *Risāla fī faṣl mā bayn al-ṣadāwa al-ḥasad*. According to Pellat, both *risāla* are the materials on the subject of bad qualities which contains some odd details about the risk writers run in approaching patrons.⁴⁴⁹ Whilst, Colville in his remarks to the translation of *Risāla fī al-ḥāsid wa al-maḥṣūd* said that the *risāla* displays al-Jāḥiz’s insight into human character.⁴⁵⁰ The main issue of this *risāla* is about the first

---

⁴⁴⁸ *Encyclopedia of Religion and Ethics* defines envy as an emotion that is essentially both selfish and malevolent. It is aimed at persons, and implies dislike of one who possesses what the envious man himself covets or desires, and wish to harm him. See *Encyclopedia of Religion and Ethics*, art. Envy, Vol. V, p. 322.


deadly sin or the first transgression to appear in heaven and first sin to occur on earth i.e. envy.\footnote{Al-Ghazz\=ali, the jurisconsult-theologian, in his \textit{Ihy\=a\=a\textsuperscript{t}ul\=um al-d\=in} has special treatment on this issue, see al-Ghazz\=ali, \textit{Ihy\=a\=a\textsuperscript{t}ul\=um al-d\=in}, transl. Fazlul Karim, Kitab Bhavan, New Delhi, 1982, Vol. III, p. 177-178.}

3.3.2 The text of the \textit{Ris\=a\=la}:

In H\=ar\=un's printed edition, it consists of twenty-one consecutive pages, whereas, \textit{'Uyan al-S\=ud}'s edition consists only thirteen pages. The \textit{ris\=a\=la} begins with the heading "\textit{Fa\=sl min \textit{sadr (f\=i) kit\=\=abih al-\textit{\=hasid wa al-ma\=hs\=ud}}". It was divided into five divisions in which every division begins with the initial word "\textit{Fa\=sl min}". The first division starts with \textit{\textit{Fa\=sl min \textit{sadr kit\=\=abih (f\=i) \textit{\=hasid wa al-ma\=hs\=ud}}}"; second division starts with "\textit{Fa\=sl fi \textit{\=hasad al-j\=ur\=\~{n}}}" and the rest with "\textit{Fa\=sl minhu}" or "\textit{Fa\=sl}". This study will rely the translation of the \textit{ris\=a\=la} on the Colville's translation entitle "Envy"\footnote{\textit{Ibid.}, pp. 145-150.}.

3.3.3 Structure of the \textit{Ris\=a\=la}:

Before going onto further discussion of the content of the \textit{ris\=a\=la}, this is a brief outline of the \textit{ris\=a\=la} that can be seen as follows:

a. The definition of envy.

b. The reasons of envy.

c. The consequence of envy.

d. The author established a link between hypocrisy and envy.
e. Quotation of e examples from the days of the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) and saying by famous men.

f. Some advice on how to behave towards envious people.

g. The risāla ends with al-Jāḥiz’s conclusion that envy is the product of hatred.

3.3.4 Analysis of the main issue in the Risāla:

The risāla is al-Jāḥiz’s react to his addressee who has evidently asked him for an analysis of envy. He starts with recording the questions that were asked by his addressee. “You wrote to me asking about envy. “What is it, exactly?” you wondered. “Where does it come from? What are its symptoms and sign? How can its features be recognised? How can it be detected when concealed? Why is it more common among educated men then among the ignorant and the unlettered? Why does it exist between relatives and not between total strangers? Why is it a vice of the careful but not of the immoral? Why are neighbours especially prone?” 453

3.3.4.1 Al-Jāḥiz’s view on envy:

From what can be gleaned from the risāla, al-Jāḥiz’s definition of envy is very clear. He says that envy is a grey area and difficult to understand. It is a sickness hard to treat. It enfeebles the body and will ruin a friendship forever. Once out in the open, it

cannot be cured; if suppressed, the treatment is long and laborious. Al-Jāḥīz then lists some reasons of envy. For instance, he says, a man is envied for the blessing which God has given him. And as a result, envy begets animosity and causes of falsehood and it creates divisions among families and severs kinship’s bond.

The author mentioned that envy was the first transgression (wrongdoing) to appear in heaven and first sin to occur on earth. For example, envy appeared in heaven when the Satan compared himself with another God’s creation, Prophet Ādam (p.b.u.h.), because he believed he is superior. On the other hand, the first envy occurred on the earth when a son of Prophet Ādam (p.b.u.h.) killed his brother. Al-Jāḥīz comments on that event: “It was envy that drove him to murder and enters the ranks of the damned. It caused him to commit a dreadful sin and deny his brother’s life.”

In the next paragraph, al-Jāḥīz developed his writing to describes how envy shows itself. Here, we find in the risāla that the author listed three conditions in which envy normally shows itself. Firstly, if the man whom he envies is rich, he will claim that he got it by criminal and he holds on to it unlawful, etc. Secondly, if the man whom he envies is a scholar, for instance, he will accuse him of being a heretic lacking original thought and intellectual direction and an opportunist in pursuit of material gain, etc. Finally, if the man whom he envies is a cleric, he will accuse him of being a crook who has taken up the good fight to qualify as legal executor, etc. In conjunction to this explanation, the author assigns a very good example to show how envy had spread in early Islamic society. He

writes: "Before becoming a hypocrite, Abdullah b. 'Ubay b. Salūl was a man of unique qualities and sound judgment who was motivated by highest ideals. Everyone in Medina, the Prophet's city, agreed that he was intelligent, astute and stranger to inconstancy who's his abilities made him the ideal man for leader. However, when God's work brought the Prophet to Medina and Abdullah b. Ubay b. Salūl saw the status in which he was held by the people, his nose was put out of joint, envy undermined his faith and he openly dissented. He ended up in hell-fire although he could have dwelt in paradise for ever". 456

3.3.4.2 The characteristics of envious people:

Al-Jāḥīz describes some characteristic of envious people such as they can not hide their envy towards other people. Here, the author reminds us about the story of Prophet Yūsuf (p.b.u.h) and his brothers. Al-Jāḥīz says that Prophet Yūsuf's brothers were reasonably respected and educated men, descended from the prophets. However, because envy had flaring up in their hearts, they betrayed their promises with their father to look after Yūsuf, they threw him down a well and stained his shirt with blood. 457

Therefore, al-Jāḥīz gives some advice on how to behave towards envious people especially when someone detects envy in a friend. He suggests that the best way of keeping the envious person from you is to have as little as possible to do with him. In addition, al-Jāḥīz also suggests us to confide nothing in this kind of people, because he

says we will be safe from their mischief. As a result, he says that there no sense to deal with this kind of people.

Then al-Jāḥīz tells us about God’s description of paradise in the Qur’ān and how He has adorned it. He writes: “God does not receive men into His dwelling until He has stripped malice and envy from their hearts. If not, they would forfeit the rapture of heaven and turn their backs on one another”.458 Therefore, he said that there can be no peace unless all contact with the envious is severed. Finally, he asked his addressee to follow his advice and at the end of the risāla he said that you will have a healthy appetite, restful sleep each night and live a long and happy life.

Al-Jāḥīz ends the risāla with praise to God Almighty to cleanse our hearts from envy and make us avoid unworthy conduct and bless us with concord and amity.

3.3.5 The use of the Qur’ān and Ḥadīth in the text:

In presenting his idea, al-Jāḥīz quotes numerous Qur’ānic verses which come to the aid of his writing by indicating certain evidence or proof which enable the reader to accept and reject it. Therefore, we can assume that the author has clear Islamic tendency in his writing. For example, he states that a man is envied for the blessing which God has given him.459 In the sense of this meaning, he quotes this Qur’ānic verse (4:54):

---

"Or do they envy men (Muhammad and his followers) for what Allah has given them of His Bounty? Then We had already given the family of Abraham the Book and al-
Hikma (Al-Sunna — Divine Inspiration to those Prophets, not written in the form of a book), and conferred upon them a great kingdom”.

To al-Jāḥīz, envy is leader of unbelief, the confederate of falsehood, the adversary of truth and the enemy of the Qur’ān. Concerning this matter, the author then quotes the following Qur’ānic verse in which Allah denounced the Ahl al-kitāb (particularly Jews and Christians) for envy. For them, the Qur’ān said (2:109):

“Many of the people of the Scripture (Jews and Christians) wish that if they could turn you away as disbelievers after you have believed, out of envy from their own selves”.

Al-Jāḥīz further states that envy is the first transgression to appear in heaven and first sin to occur on earth. For instance, he claims that the greatest angels (Iblīs) bore its mark and disobeyed his Lord. In the story of Iblīs disobey his Lord, al-Jāḥīz quotes the following Qur’ānic verse (7:12):

“Iblis said: You created me from fire, and You created him from clay”. On this verse, al-Jāḥīz comments: “Thus did God curse him and make him Satan. He cast him down from His right hand and rendered him dismal and foul. Then did Satan

deceive Ādam, causing him to forget God's will; thus did Ādam disobey. But when Ādam repented, God forgave him and showed him the way. Satan, however, persisted in his envy and so was lost and wretched 

It seems that this event was the first wrongdoing in heaven, and for the first sin to occur in earth, therefore, al-Jāḥīz writes:

"On earth, a son of Ādam killed his brother, sinning against God and bereaving his father. It was envy that drove him to murder and enters the ranks of the damned. It caused him to commit a dreadful sin and deny his brother's life: he struck him a terrible blow with a rock and was filled right away with regret".

Describing of some characteristic of envious people, al-Jāḥīz reminds us about the story of Prophet Yusuf (p.b.u.h) and his brothers. Related to this story, al-Jāḥīz quoted three Qur'ānic verses from Sūra Yusuf to strengthen his view concerning the subject matter. For example, the Qur'ān said (12:10): which mean:

"...throw him down to the bottom of a well".

Then, the Qur'ān said again (12:18): which mean

"they brought his shirt stained with false blood".

And finally, the Qur'ān said (12:100):

which mean: "...and they fell down before him prostrate".

---

At the end of his explanation of the story, al-Jāḥiz reminds his addressee: “Should you detect envy in a friend, have as little as possible to do with him, for that is the best way of keeping him off your back. Confide nothing in him and you will be safe from his mischief and the obstacle he will place in your way. Never seek his advice on anything and do not let his flattery or smoothing talking eloquence deceive you, for they are the snares of his duplicity”.463

The Qur’ānic quotations can be found also before the conclusion of the risāla when the author discusses God’s description of paradise in the Qur’ān. Al-Jāḥiz explains to his addressee: “You will have read God’s description of paradise in the Qur’ān and how He has adorned it. He has made it the dwelling of his good servant and prophets. Therein is what no eye has seen, no ear has heard and no heart of man has ever felt. God spoke in His Book (the Qur’ān) of the rapture men shall feel when they enter into paradise and how He has made it their eternal dwelling”.464 Then al-Jāḥiz quotes this Qur’ānic verses (15:45-48):

“Truly! The Muttaqūn (Believers) will be amidst Gardens and water-springs (Paradise). It will be said to them: Enter therein (Paradise), in peace and security. And We shall remove from their breast any sense of injury (that they may have), (So they will be like) brothers facing each other on thrones. No sense of fatigue shall touch them nor shall they (ever) be asked to leave it”.

Al-Jahiz comments on these verses: "God does not receive men into His dwelling until He has stripped malice and envy from their hearts. Thus they find delight in paradise, reclining on divans opposite friends. They delight in the faces they see before them, for peace fills their hearts and malice has been stripped from their breasts".\textsuperscript{465}

In addition, the author also records two Ḥadith to support his idea. For example, he quotes this Ḥadith in which Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) said: \textsuperscript{466}

\begin{quote}
(ذب إليكم داء الأمم من قلبكم : الحسد والبغضاء)
\end{quote}

"The disease of past nations has spread among you: envy and resentment".

The above Ḥadith has been quoted after the author identified the terminology of envy and its significance.

On the other hand, the second Ḥadith was quoted concerning the significance of neighbours. For instance, al-Jahiz informs us that a friend told him that how he had once brought some meat home and hidden it from his neighbours because he was afraid that they would envy him. In conjunction with this story, the author quotes this Ḥadith which narrated by Ibn Zubayr (d. 95 A.H) that Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) once said: \textsuperscript{467}

\begin{quote}
(ليس بمؤمن من بات شبعاً وجاره طلعاً)
\end{quote}

"The man who sleeps on a full stomach while his neighbour goes hungry is not a Muslim".

3.3.6 Language of the *Risāla*:

The usage of rhythmic balance and measured termination style of *saj* is very clear from the beginning of the *risāla*. This style of writing makes the reading go smoothly and awakens the admiration of the reader. To illustrate that, this line from the introduction of *risāla* is shown how the author separated it into shorter sentences which ended with the same letter, the author writes:

> وَهِبْنَاكُمُ الْعَزَّةَ، وَأَدَمْنَكُمُ الْكَرَامَةَ، وَرَزَقْنَكُمُ الإِسْتِقْلَالَةَ، وَرَفعْنَكُمُ النَّدَامَةَ.

(May God grant you security, bless you with integrity, maintain your generosity and part you from remorse and regret).

Moreover, it can be found some sentences in the *risāla* shows us that al-Jāhid's style of writing is bearing some similarity to the Qur'ānic style. Although, as we all know that the Qur'ān is neither poetry nor prose, it has its relation to both. To illustrate that, note these short quotations from the *risāla* which shows exactly how the author style of writing reflects the style of the Qur'ān. For example, he writes:

> وَزَعْنَ الْخَلِّ مِنْ قَلْوُبِهِ، وَلَوْ لَمْ يُزَعْ ذلِكْ مِنْ صِدِّورَهُ وَبِجْرَهُ مِنْ قَلْوُبِهِ، لَا فَتَتَّوْا لَذَاذَّةَ

(.... and the verse ... Although he does not refer to it in the passage, and the verse has no bearing on the style of the *risāla*).


\[\text{\footnotesize 469 Ibid., Vol. III, p. 3, see also 'Uyun al-Sud's edition, Vol. III, p. 7.}\]
This similarity can be identified by a comparison to these Qur'ānic verses, for example:

1) The first sentence is similar to this verse in Sūra al-A'rāf (7:43) and Sūra al-Ḥijr (15:47):

{ ونزعنا ما في صدورهم من غل }

2) The second sentence is similar to the Qur'ānic saying also in Sūra al-Ḥijr (15:48):

{ لا يمسهم فيها نصب وما هم بمخرجين }

3) The last sentence is similar to this verse in Sūra al-Zukhruf (43:32):

{ ورفعنا بعضهم فوق بعض درجات }

And in another passage, al-Jāḥiz writes:470

{ إذا فعلت ذلك فكل هنیا مريا، ونم رضيأ، وعش في السرور مليا.

The above short sentence calling in mind the Qur'ānic style in Sūra Maryam in which nearly all its verses ended with the same style.471

Another linguistic skill can be found in this risāla is the use of rhetorical elements. The use of ǧibāq (acronym or antithesis),472 for instance, can be seen scattered

471 See for example verses 2-23 and verses 41-74, etc.
472 ǧibāq is one of five elements in ʾilm al-Badīʾ as has been stated by Ibn al-Muʿtazz (d. 296/908) which include istifāra (metaphor), taḫnis (paronomasia), ṭaqqal wa ṭaqqal al-kalām al-ṣudūriḥ (internal repetition) and al-madliḥah al-kalām (the dialectical manner). According to Ibn al-Muʿtazz, ǧibāq is based on total opposition between the signified and no relation of signifiers. See K. Abu Deeb, ’Literary Criticism’, in: Abbasid Belles Lettres, p. 347.
through out the text of *risāla*. A good example for this is in the second paragraph of the *risāla*, the words with underline come with its acronym: 473

Elsewhere, he writes: 474

In other occasion, the author writes again: 475

There are many other word that can be found in the *risāla* which comes with thier acronym. 476 The usage of this kind of rhetoric style can be assumed as one of al-Jāhiz’s trademarks in the linguistic skill.

---

476 For instance, see particularly in all paragraphs in the fifth division of the *risāla*.
On the other hand, the use of poetry only appeared once in this *risāla*. The author quotes *abyāṯ* from unknown poem which related to the subject of envy. He writes: “In the course of a speech in Medina, the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) complained about him (Abdullah b. Ubay b. Salūl) to his supporters from Medina: “Do not blame him.” they said. “Before you arrival, we treated him as king.” If the poor man had only been able to rid his heart of envy, he would have surely had a place in the Islamic regime. However, he was humiliated by God on account of his envy and his hypocrisy made apparent to all”. Al-Jāḥīz added, “to this effect”,[^477] and then he quoted what the poet said.[^478]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{طال الحاسين أحزانه} & \quad \text{فاصفر من كثرة أحزانه} \\
\text{دعاء فقد أشعلت في جوفه} & \quad \text{ما هاج من حر نيرانه} \\
\text{العيب أشهى عندل} & \quad \text{لذة المال لحزانه} \\
\text{فازم على غاربه} & \quad \text{حبسه} \\
\text{تسلم من كثرة بهتانه} & \end{align*}
\]

Though, the use of poetry only appeared once, the significance of the *risāla* is still remaining in the other kind of *nawādir* which can be found scattered within the text.


[^478]: For the translation of these verses, see, Colville, *Sobriety and Mirth*, p. 55.
3.4 Risāla fī faṣal mā bayn al-zadāwa wa al-ḥasad (The differences between hostility and envy)

3.4.1 Textual background of the Risāla:

This is the second work of al-Jāḥiz concerning the subject of envy. The text of the risāla can be found in Ḥārūn’s and ʿUyūn al-Sūd’s collection in varying length. In Ḥārūn’s printed edition, the risāla consists of thirty-seven consecutive pages with no divisions other than paragraphs. However, in ʿUyūn al-Sūd’s edition, it contains only twenty-eight pages and it is interesting to note here, that the text of the risāla in ʿUyūn al-Sūd’s edition begins with this introduction.⁴⁷⁹

الحمد لله رب العالمين كما هو أهله وصلى الله على محمد خاتم النبتيين كما أمر به وعلى الله وسلم كثيراً.

Ḥārūn, however, in his editorial remarks, claimed that this introduction is not from the normal al-Jāḥiz’s style of writing.⁴⁸⁰ Therefore, we find in his edition, the text of the risāla begins with this statement⁴⁸¹:

 أصحاب الله مدنك السعادة والسلامة، وقرنها بالعافية والسرور، ووصلها بالنعمات التي لا تزول، والكرامة التي لا تحول.

⁴⁸¹ Ibid., Vol. 1, p. 237.
The English translation of the *risāla* can be seen in *Nine Essays of al-Jāḥiz* by Hutchins. So, the analysis of the *risāla* will be based on the Arabic text in Hārūn’s and ‘Uyūn al-Sūd’s edition and for English translation, it will rely on Hutchins’s translation.

### 3.4.2 The Addressee and the date of composition:

The *risāla* was addressed to Abū al-Ḥasan ʿUbaydullah b. Yaḥyā b. Khāqān, because the author himself declares the name of his addressee when he expressed as follows: “I said to him (Abū al-Ḥasan), “I will recite two bayt (verses) of my poet which answer you and the envious”:

\[
\text{إن ابن يحيى عبيد الله آمني من الحوادث بعد الخوف من زمني}
\]
\[
\text{قلست أحذر حسادي وإن كثروا ما دمت ممسك حبل من أبي الحسن}
\]

The precise date of composition of the *risāla* can not be determined precisely, however, it could be between the year 236 A.H. and the 247 A.H. Because, al-Jāḥiz, for instance, suggested that the *risāla* was among four works that has been composed by al-Jāḥiz after ʿUbaydullah b. Yaḥyā b. Khāqān was appointed to be vizier of the Caliph al-

---

483 His name is ʿUbaydullah b. Yaḥyā b. Khāqān, but famous with nickname Abū al-Ḥasan. He was a vizier to the Caliph al-Mutawakkil and then to the Caliph al-Muṭaṭṣim. He died in the year 263 A.H. See al-Ziriklī, al-ʿAṯāʾ, Vol. IV, p. 198.

The meaning of these verses is:

ʿUbaydullah b. Yaḥyā protected me, from accident after I had known fear,
I will not be wary of those who envy me, however numerous,
As long as I am still continuing to cling to Abū al-Ḥasan’s relationship.
Mutawakkil in 236 A.H. Al-Jāḥīẓ tell us also: “When I reached this point in the composition of this book, I was visited by ten Kuttāb, whom your benefaction has encompassed and whose status has been raised by your generation”. This indicates that the author takes many times to finish his work when he has to break for certain period.

3.4.3 Structure of the Risāla:

Let us now turn from the background of the risāla into it contain which can be divided into these elements:

1. The significance of the risāla.
2. Note on the dangerous of intermediaries.
3. Note on beauty.
5. Note on the envy and the literary critic.
6. Quotations of traditions and anecdotes about envious men.
7. The ten kuttāb came to see him.
8. Note from certain envious men threatening him.
9. The ten visitors, having read the note, impart their thought in prose and verse.
10. The last page contains traditions bearing on the subject of envy.

3.4.4 Analysis of the main issues in the *Risāla*:

3.4.4.1 The Significance of the *Risāla*:

Most important is al-Jāhiz’s claims that he was to be the first writer who deal with this topic i.e. the envy. He describes this work as splendid and excellent. He then adds that: “No previous author has treated this topic or that of *Faḍḍ al-waṣīl* (Merit of the Promise) which preceded this and *Akhlaq al-wuzara*’ (Manners of the Viziers) which preceded the “Merit of the Promise”. These are splendid, handsome, and excellent”.\(^{487}\)

From this statement, we know that al-Jāhiz had written two more works entitled *Faḍḍ al-waṣīl* and *Akhlaq al-wuzara*’. However, as far as we know from the list of al-Jāhiz’s works that these two works did not survive.\(^{488}\) According to al-Jāhiz, *Faḍḍ al-waṣīl* contains unusual and elegant accounts, refined and beautiful reports, and traditions which promote praiseworthy behaviour and generous deeds of lasting renown. Whilst *Akhlaq al-wuzara*’ contains the custom of the kings and caliphs, of their ministers and followers, and their stories. Al-Jāhiz mentioned that these two works also were presented to ʿUbaydullah b. Yaḥyā b. Khāqān.\(^{489}\) Therefore, al-Jāhiz asks his addressee to take a general view of them by leafing through the first few pages.

---


3.4.4.2 The nature of scholars:

Afterwards, the author also reminds us about the nature of scholars in his days. He writes: "No era from the past has lacked truthful scholars who read the works of their predecessors, studied with their followers, practised with them, and contended against their opponents. They would boast of that to rivals and compete with each other about it. In their own time envious people found fault with their scholarships and books. Plagiarist claimed to have done as much".\(^{490}\)

It is obvious from this statement that there are two types of scholars in the time of al-Jāḥiz, which he divided them into true scholars and plagiarists. As a result, he worried about his works, which he writes at the cost of so much hard work, will be presented to his addressee being a subject of plagiarism by an impostor. According to al-Jāḥiz, an impostor is someone who distinguishes himself as the author of similar works, pretends to creative ability equal to other works and prides himself on the fertility which God has in fact denied him. In conjunction with this group of scholars, al-Jāḥiz informed us that Bishr al-Marīsī told him that after he presented his work on the legitimacy of dates wine to the Caliph al-Ma’mūn, Muhammad b. Abū al-Abbās al-Ṭūsī attacked it and protested against al-Jāḥiz’s argument in it. However, according to al-Jāḥiz, the Caliph al-Ma’mūn was very upset and anger because of al-Ṭūsī’s disparaging remarks spoken when there was no one in the assembly to oppose him.\(^{491}\)


3.4.4.3 Enmity and envy:

The author informs us about the distinction between enmity and envy. According to al-Jāḥīz, "enmity has the intellect to guide it and its hostility is apparent in times of stress. Otherwise, it stays hidden to seize the moments of opportunity".\(^{492}\) On the other hand, "envy is stripped of intelligence at all times, occasions, and hours. Part of the baseness of envy is that it is concerned with increasingly petty thing".\(^{493}\) And also, "Enmity even if it disfigures what is beautiful falls short of envy. A declare enemy may become a hypocritical friend. In the same way, the hypocritical befriended person may become an open enemy".\(^{494}\)

In another occasion of the *risāla*, al-Jāḥīz again records some more distinctions between enmity and envy. For instance, he writes: "Enmity wears out and become stale. Envy is fresh and new whether unsatisfied of gratified. It does not end".\(^{495}\) According to al-Jāḥīz, every envious person is an enemy, but not every enemy is envious. In conjunction with this statement, the author gives us an example. He says that it was nothing but envy which brought the Jews to reject Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) when they knew as they knew their children that he was a truthful prophet and true messenger. Because they read of his mission in their Torah and studied together in their religious

school. Finally, envy came between their scholars and it created in them enmity to Muhammad (p.b.u.h.).

In the next paragraph, the author informs us the evidence that envy is more grievous and more painful than enmity. He writes: “envy is provoked by an act of God the Almighty while enmity is free from that. It is only related to the acts of man. No one is provoked to enmity by an act of God”. This statement shows us the consequence of the Mu'tazila thought into al-Jāḥiẓ's writing because the idea of an act of God and the act of man are the main issue in the discussion between the followers of this school of thought.

Afterwards, the author offers us other descriptions of the enmity and envy. He writes: “Envy is falsehood's brother. They run on the same track. They are indistinguishable companions and inseparable bed mates. Enmity can exist without lying. Envy is never innocent of calumny. Envy is a fire for which the spirit is the fuel. It never subsides through exhaustion of fuel. Enmity is a coal lit by anger and extinguished by satisfaction. Envy is substance, enmity something required”.

Regarding to the issue of enmity and envy, the author relates it with the quotation of Yahyā b. Khālid’s statement on the envious people. Al-Jāḥiẓ says: “I learned the truth of what Yahyā b. Khālid said from trial and suffering. I have on occasion written an expert and masterly look on religion and law, prophetic massage and biography,
sermons, taxation, ordinances, or on the other types of wisdom attributing it to myself. Then a group of people of learning attacked it in concert because they envy built into them although they knew its brilliance and clarity". 499

3.4.4.4 Types of envious people:

He expounds his views on the envy and the literary critic and he divides the envious person into two groups; firstly, the envy of the ignorant man, secondly, the envy of the wise and discerning man. He claims the first group as: "The ignorant envier hastens to attack the book the first instant it is read before he finishes reading a single sheet. Then he is not content with a mild or light attack. He launches the strongest and coarsest one before attending to its sections or definitions. His censure is not explained or itemised. He rather lumps it together saying "This is wrong from first to last, false from beginning to end". He reckons that the more he increases his excess, criticism and verbosity in the attack on the book's author, the more that is likely to be accepted from him". 500 While, for the second group, al-Jahiz describes them as follows: "When he wants to destroy the book and plot its downfall leafs through its pages and masters its definitions and sections. He looks at it repeatedly and reviews its thought". 501 However, from al-Jahiz's point of view, the envy of the ignorant is a smaller thorn and lesser trial than the envy of one learned and clever.

Al-Jāḥīz again clarifies his objective of this work. He writes: “We will not give in full all the sections of the debate in this risāla. If we did, many days and nights would be exhausted before we reached our goal of finishing the book. We have rather selected from each of its sections what would illustrate the idea intended”.502 Above all, al-Jāḥīz states “I was a man few envied until I held fast to your [Abū al-Ḥasan ʿUbaydullah b. Yaḥyā b. Khāqān] handle, grasped hold of your rope, and stood in the shade you provide. Then the envious flocked round me in a crowd and attack me with their arrows from every shore and climes”.503 Concerning the envious person, al-Jāḥīz tells us about his dialogue with the ten Kuttāb, who visited him after they read his work on envy. We find that al-Jāḥīz reveals their thought about envy with the quotations of prose and verse which can be seen in the text of the risāla.504

3.4.4.5 The conclusion of the Risāla:

The author concludes the risāla with the quotation from the Ḥadīth of the Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.). He then proclaims that the real envy is in obedience to God Almighty and His Messenger (p.b.u.h.). Finally, he asserts that “this all what has reached him of the sayings about envy”.505

3.4.5 The style of writing:

There is no quotation from the Qur'an in this *risāla*. The only quotation can be found is from the second sources of Islam i.e. the Ḥadīth of the Prophet’s Muhammad (p.b.u.h.). However, it is very limited, there is only one Ḥadīth has been quoted by the author. At the end of the *risāla*, the author states that: “We know nothing in favour of envy except the saying attributes to the Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.). He then quotes this Ḥadīth:

(لا حسد إلا في اثنين: رجل آتاه الله حفظ القرآن فهو يقوم به آناء الليل وآناء النهار، ورجل آتاه الله مالا فهو ينفقه في وجوه البر آناء الليل وآناء النهار)

“There is no envy except for two things: a man on whom God has bestowed ability to memorise the Qur'an who undertakes that night and day, and a man on whom God bestowed wealth who expands it in pious ways night and day”.

The author then asserts his final comment: “This envy is in obedience to God the Mighty and Exalted and His Messenger”. In addition, in another occasion of the *risāla*, we find the quotation of the dialogue between Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) with al-Nābigha al-Ja'fārī 507 (d. c. 63/683) in which al-Jāḥiẓ records some *abyāt* (verses) from the poetry of al-Nābigha al-Ja'fārī and the saying of the Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.)


507 His full name is Qays b. Abdullah b. ʿAdas b. Rabīʿa al-Jaḍī al-ʿĀmirī. His nick name is Abū Laylā, but famous with al-Nābigha al-Jaḍī. He is poet of Mukhadram and one of the companions of the Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.). It has been reported that he was gave up from making any poetry for thirty years, but suddenly, he starts again with good quality of poetry. See *The Encyclopaedia of Islam*, art. al-Nābigha al-Djaḍī, Vol. VII, pp. 842-3.
particularly when the Prophet prayed for al-Nābigha al-Jaḍī: (لا فض الله فاك) \(^{508}\) after he [al-Nābigha al-Jaḍī] recite some verses to him. As a result of the Prophet’s (p.b.u.h.) prayer, al-Jāḥiz claims that al-Nābigha al-Jaḍī lived to be one hundred twenty years old. Whenever he dropped a tooth, another grew in its place because of the Prophet’s prayer.\(^{509}\) Al-Jāḥiz then comments: “This was the best that was related of the hasty word by which self-restraint is protected”.\(^{510}\)

Finally, the author records some verse of his own poetry which rarely can be found in his works. After an extensive examination, we find that there are three verses of al-Jāḥiz’s poetry in the *risāla*. For instance, he says:\(^{511}\)

\[
\text{فكترت حساد و ركت خلت } \quad \text{وكنت وحسادي قليل و خلاني}
\]

In another occasion, he says again:\(^{512}\)

\[
\text{إبن يحيى عبيد الله أمني } \quad \text{من الحوادث بعد الخوف من زمني}
\]

\[
\text{قلست أحر حسادي وإن كثروا } \quad \text{ما دمت ممسك جميل من أبي الحسن}
\]

---

\(^{508}\) The meaning: “God’s blessing on your teeth”.  
\(^{511}\) *Ibid.*, Vol. I, p.368; see also *Uyūn al-Sūd’s edition*, Vol. I, p. 260. This verse is based on *Baḥr al-kwil* (One of sixteen metre’s names in Arabic prosody. It is made up, in each hemistich, two of *mafṣilun* and two of *muṣṭafīlun*). For more information about Arabic prosody see *The Encyclopaedia of Islam*, art ‘Arūḍ, Vol. I, pp. 667-677. The meaning of this verse is: “You have multiplied my friends and my enemies; few used to envy me or be my friend”.  
This indicates that al-Jāḥīẓ not only involved in prose literature, but also has written some good quality verses of poetry.513

3.5 Risāla fī kitmān al-sīrr wa ḥifẓ al-lisān (The art of keeping secret and keeping the tongue)

3.5.1 The title and the text of the Risāla:

We find in Yāqūt’s list of al-Jāḥīẓ’s works that the risāla was known as Risāla fī kitmān al-sīrr.514 However, most of the scholars of al-Jāḥīẓ in modern days namely Pellat and Sandūbī agreed that the correct reading of the work is Risāla fī kitmān al-sīrr wa ḥifẓ al-lisān.515 The text of the risāla can be seen in Hārūn’s edition and Ṣuyūn al-Sūd’s edition with varying length. In Hārūn’s printed edition, for instance, it consists of thirty-three consecutive pages with no divisions other than paragraphs, while in Ṣuyūn al-Sūd’s edition; it only consists of twenty-three pages. Some portion of the risāla has been translated into English by Pellat.516 Whilst the full translation of the risāla can be found in Sobriety and Mirth by Colville and Nine Essay of al-Jāḥīẓ by Hutchins517.

513 Yāqūt records sixteen verses of poetry which has been attributed to al-Jāḥīẓ. There are ten verses on praising of Ibn Ābī Du‘ād, four verses on praising of Ibrāhīm b. Rabāḥ, Muhammad b. al-Jahm and Ibn Ābī Du‘ād, and two verses on attacking the poet al-Jammāz, see, Yāqūt, Muḥjam al-udabā’, Vol. XVI, pp. 80-82.
515 See for instance, Pellat, The life and works of Jāḥīẓ, p. 54. He claimed that this work entitled Risāla fī kitmān al-sīrr or Kitbah fī kitmān al-sīrr wa ḥifẓ al-lisān and also in al-Sandūbī, Adab al-Jāḥīẓ, p. 139.
516 Pellat, The life and works of Jāḥīẓ, pp. 223-229.
3.5.2 The Addressee of the *Risāla*:

Al-Jaḥīz as usual did not declare the addressee of this *risāla*. He describes his addressee as person with good personality and very polite. However, he broke out this personality with two bad habits *i.e.* give away a secrets and not holding the tongue. Abū Milḥim suggests that al-Jaḥīz addressed this *risāla* to Muhammad b. Ahmad b. Abū Duʿād, the vizier of the Caliph al-Mutawakkil.⁵¹⁸ On the other hand, al-Ḥājirī in his introduction to the *risāla* remarks that “Ubaydullah b. Yaḥyā b. Khāqān, the other vizier of the Caliph al-Mutawakkil, was the addressee of the *risāla*.⁵¹⁹ He also stress that “Ubaydullah was very young man when he was appointed to be the vizier.⁵²⁰

Al-Jaḥīz himself in some extant described the personality of his addressee in this *risāla*, who he described him as follows: “I have examined your background, considered your conduct, and reflect upon your morality. My conclusion is that you have drawn near perfection, verged to completeness and ascended the stairway of virtue. No excellent person can seek to surpass you”.⁵²¹ However, he adds: “Yet, in spite of everything, I have found you to be missing and overlooking two matters which I have against you are: talking idly and giving away secret”.⁵²² From this point of view, al-Jaḥīz wrote this *risāla* and addressed to this an important man and gives him some advices.

---

3.5.3 Outline of the *Risāla*:

Below is an outline of the main points to be discussed in our analysis of the detail content of the *risāla*, these are as follows:

1. The author praises his addressee.
2. He noted the two failings in his addressee *i.e.* talking idly and giving away a secret.
3. Note on the tongue and the *'aql* (reason).
4. Revert to the discussion on the transmission of traditions.
5. Keeping secret is very hard to some people.
6. Some examples to illustrate the difficulty of keeping secrets, notably to the case of al-A'mash.\(^{523}\)
7. He goes on to the dissemination of secrets.
8. Some examples of people who customarily give away secrets.
9. The qualities needed for it seldom found in one person.
10. The appeal of forbidden fruit.
11. Revert to the disclosure of secrets.
12. Goes on to backbiting.
13. Some thoughts on the subject of excuses.
15. Revert to the harm done by words.

---

\(^{523}\) His full name is Sulaymān b. Mahrān al-Asadī. He was born in Kufah in 60 A.H. and died at the same place in 148 A.H. He was of a Persian father and was among the famous traditionist. For further information, see Al-Ziriklī, *al-Aṣlām*, Vol. III, p. 135; *The Encyclopaedia of Islam*, art. Al-A'mash, Vol. I, p. 431.
16. The risāla ends with al-Jāḥiz’s suggestion on the keeping the tongue.

3.5.4 Analysis of the main issues in the Risāla:

The author firstly sings his praise to his addressee. He said that he had examined his addressee background, considered his conduct and reflects upon his morality. He found that his addressee have drawn near perfection and verged on completeness. However, al-Jāḥiz found his addressee has two bad habits i.e. talking idly and giving away secret. Therefore, he said that he against him. He added that nothing is harder than to confront one’s emotion and battle with natural desires because by loosening the tongue, emotion invites the disclosure of secrets and allow too much to be said.

3.5.4.1 The tongue and the reason:

In conjunction with the issue of talking idly and giving away of secret, al-Jāḥiz stresses on the function of ‘aql (reason) which can be a tool to control the one’s tongue. Because according to the author, the tongue is the heart’s interpreter and the heart is a strongbox wherein thoughts and secrets are stored away, as well as everything else, good or bad. Al-Jāḥiz says that speech is one of God’s greatest gift and blessing, and the reasonable man has a responsibility towards it and it will be called to account for how he has used it. Here, we find that al-Jāḥiz suggests his addressee to use it in praise and to serve Him, to honour his debt to Him and he should avoid whatever contrary to these, if

not this will be the limit of stupidity and great loss. Otherwise, al-Jāḥīẓ suggests that sometimes silence is better than speech.\textsuperscript{526}

However, al-Jāḥīẓ states that men naturally like telling stories and listening to news. In conjunction with that issue, we find that the author digresses his writing to speak about the importance of transmission of traditions. For example, he claims that if men did not enjoy telling and listening to stories, the prophetic traditions (\textit{Aḥādīḥ}) would have never been transmitted or acquired the importance they have.\textsuperscript{527}

3.5.4.2 The release of secret:

According to al-Jāḥīẓ, the release of secret is to be guarded against even in an elegant report, a distinguished sermon, in what is mysterious and unknown, and in the infamous and motley. For instance, he says, religious secrets should be guarded against the victory of passion over the soul and against the hatred of people for each other occasioned by difference and opposition, alliance and enmity. Royal secret about deceptions aimed at a king's enemies, concealed desires and veiled plans, as are the secrets of the high and mighty.\textsuperscript{528}

Of course, it is hard to keep a secret, hence, man find it difficult to keep secrets because of the strength of this urge and his proneness to yield to this instinct. Al-Jāḥīẓ states that it would be easier for person to move well established mountains than to fight

against his own instincts. In connection with the difficulty of keeping secret, the author then give an example to illustrate it, notably the case of Al-A'mash, who was so anxious to keep to himself the traditions of the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) he had collected that he recited them to sheep.

3.5.4.3 The backbiting:

Al-Jâhiz claims that to slander people is a tyrannical course for justice, a failing of zeal, weakness of reasoning, baseness in value, a plentiful inconvenience, envy, and jealous. However, he said that if the slander limited his abuse to one whose assault he feared, he would be more forgivable. Elsewhere, al-Jâhiz again stresses that most often a person apologise only for fear of a fall, or to restrain his power. Related to this matter, al-Jâhiz quotes what has been done by fuqahā'. He says that fuqahā' explain away whatever might attach suspicion to the sovereign and make them suspect, especially in matters relating to possible loss of life, property or honour. He adds that there is no end to this malady except in renouncing excuses.

Finally, the author concludes the risāla with a postscript about its usefulness by saying that he had treated only a brief of the theme of keeping secret, he says that it ought to be sufficient for the man of reason and understanding. And he adds that the

---

praiseworthy deeds associate with personal gain, honour and virtue, in life and after death.\textsuperscript{534}

3.5.5 Analysis of the use of the Qur'ān in the text:

The first Qur'ānic verse used by al-Jāhiz in this risāla is from Sūra al-Fajr when the Qur'ān said (89:5):

\[ \text{مَلَأُ فِي ذَلِكَ قَسْمٌ لَّذِي حَجَرُ } \]

"There is indeed in them (the above oaths) a sufficient proof for men of understanding (and that, they should avoid all kinds of sins and disbeliefs, etc.)!"

This verse was used in connection with the explanation of the meaning of \textit{aql} (reason). The author comments: "It (reason) binds the excess and shackles it from going far down the path of ignorance, error and injury".\textsuperscript{535} He then adds, "In the same way a camel is shackled and the motherless calf restrained".\textsuperscript{536}

According to al-Jāhiz, this world is the home of decay and boredom. There is not in its nature, nor for any part of it, any permanence in one state. Everlasting permanence is only for the eternal one. He added, "People do not want them merely to supply a need the way an ascetic person might. They sought, rather, to curb greed. Greed has not limit or end to it, because it is not an effort aimed at satisfying a need".\textsuperscript{537} In conjunction with this issue, al-Jāhiz quotes two Qur'ānic verses (89:20): \( \text{وَتَحْبُونَ المَالَ حِبَا جَمَا } \), which

\textsuperscript{534} \textit{Ibid.}, Vol. I, p.171; see also \textit{Uyūn al-Sūd's} edition, Vol. I, p.120.
mean “You love wealth with great love” and (100:8): which mean: “He is surely strong in love of riches”.

The author also stresses about the backbiting. He said “We do not think that God gave licence to slander the believer. Rather He coined the phrase about backbiting with what is most hateful to souls and before which death is preferred to life”. He then quoted the Qur’anic verse (49:12):

“And spy not, neither backbite one another. Would one of you like to eat the flesh of his dead brother? You would hate it so hate backbiting”.

He then asserts: “Throughout mankind backbiting is an attitude that betrays deep seated unfairness, inherent baseness, meanness and deliberate wickedness based on envy and jealously; it has taken hold of the world, governed men’s instincts, and flourished on habitual misdeeds, the victory of evil over good, and the abounding seeds of discord, depravity and envy in men’s hearts”. At the end, the author claims that no one will be free or escape from backbiting.

However, al-Jahiz states that each person is responsible for himself and not blamed for someone else, he alone rather than his family, children, or relatives. Here, we find that al-Jahiz quotes two Qur’anic verses which related to the issue such as this

538 Ibid., Vol. 1, p.159; see also ‘Uyun al-Sud’s edition, Vol. 1, p.112.
539 Ibid., Vol. 1, pp.159-60; see also ‘Uyun al-Sud’s edition, Vol. 1, p.112.
verse (52:21):  

which mean: “Every person is a pledge for that which he has earned”. And the other verse from Sūra is-Mā’ida (5:105):

which mean: “O you who believe! Take care of your own selves, (do righteous deeds, fear Allah much abstain from all kinds of sins and evil deeds which He has forbidden) and love Allah much (perform all kinds of good deeds which He has ordained). If you follow the right guidance and enjoin what is right (Islamic Monotheism and all that Islam orders one to do) and forbid that is wrong (polytheism, disbelief and all that Islam has forbidden) no hurt can come to you from those who are in error”.

According to al-Jāḥiz, most people like to speak rather than taking action. Therefore, he asserts: “Most people answer without being questioned and talk even when they have no information”.541 Here al-Jāḥiz quotes another verse from the Qur’ān which mean: “Say (O Muhammad): "No wage do I ask of you for this (the Quedn), nor am I one of the Mutakallifūn (those who pretend and fabricate things which do not exist). Related to this matter, al-Jāḥiz then informs us about the story of Hishām b. ‘Abd al-Malik (d. 125 A.H.) with the busybody group. He comments on that event by saying: “If something like the severity of Hishām were prepared at all time for busybody, those among them with a sense of shame would certainly be restrained. The excesses, imposition, and slander would decrease”.

Finally, the author asks his addressee to: “Determine in which of the two matters you have spent your life: in wisdom or in foolish talk?”\textsuperscript{543} In addition, at the same time, he also asked his addressee to: “Observe God’s description of those He praised highly among His servant”.\textsuperscript{544} Here, al-Jāḥiz quotes these two Qur’ānic verses which related to his question. The first one is from Sūra al-Muʿminūn (23:3) in which the Qur’ān said:

\begin{quote}
والذين هم عن اللغو معرضون
\end{quote}

“And when they hear al-laghw (dirty, false, evil vain talk) they withdraw from it”.

And the other is from Sūra al-Furqān (25:72):

\begin{quote}
وإذا سمعوا اللغو أعرضوا عنه
\end{quote}

“...and if they pass by some evil play or evil talk, they pass by it with dignity”.

Afterwards, the author proclaim to his addressee that: “He (God) protected the ears and tongues of the people of paradise from it”.\textsuperscript{545} This proceeds with this Qur’ānic quotation from Sūra al-Wāqi‘a (56:25-26):

\begin{quote}
لا يسمعون فيها لغو ولا تأثيم، إلا قيلا سلاما سلاما
\end{quote}

“No laghw (dirty, false, evil vain talk) will they hear therein, nor any sinful speech (like backbiting, etc.) But only the saying of: Salām! , Salām! (Greetings with peace)!”

It is clear from the foregoing that al-Jāḥiz not only uses of reason in built his case, but also in almost circumstances he depended upon Qur’ānic verses as evidence for his argument.

\textsuperscript{545}Ibid., Vol. I, p.168; see also "Uyūn al-Sūd’s edition, Vol. I, p. 117.
3.5.6 Analysis of the use of Ḥadīth in the text:

The author has used several Ḥadīth to strengthen his argument in this *risāla*. For instance, when he asked his addresses to be awake in all conditions and be suspicious to all mankind\(^{546}\), he quotes this Ḥadīth in which Prophet Muhammad said:\(^{547}\)

(الزمن سوء الظن)

"Prudence is suspicious".

This is because, from al-Jāḥiẓ’s point of view, suspicion can prevent a man from giving away a secret. According to him, people’s secrets are most often spread by these groups of people, either by their families and servant, or by their followers and apprentices, and also by those they control and command. Therefore, the author suggests: "do not tell your secret, if no one who fulfils the condition can be found, particularly if there is no one whose self-control, intelligence, trustworthiness and sincere advice are relied on, who has nothing to gain or lose from secret".\(^{548}\)

To show the important of the situation, al-Jāḥiẓ quotes the Ḥadīth in which Prophet Muhammad said:\(^{549}\)

(الناس كلهم مائة لا يوجد فيها راحلة)

"People are like hundred head of camel without a single steed among them".

---


\(^{549}\) Collected by Ibn Māja, See Sunan Ibn Māja, No. 3990, and it was reported that Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) said as follows:" (جدون الناس يهدي كلهم مائة ليس فيها راحلة)
Then al-Jāḥīz adds that merit and demerit are not encountered in fixed proportions among people. Because according to him, we might find person who outweighs a nation and a nation that does not equal a fingernail clipping of that person. 550

When speaking about the greed which has no limit or end to it, because it is not an effort aimed at satisfying a need, 551 al-Jāḥīz says that those people who are living only to fulfil their greed is similar to the meaning of this Ḥadīth in which the Prophet Muhammad was reported as saying: 552

(لو لابن آدم واديين من ذهب لا يبتغى إليهما ثالثاً ولا يملأ جوف ابن آدم إلا التراب)

"If one of the sons of Ādam (mankind) had two valleys of gold, he would surely desire a third. Man is only satisfied in the grave".

Related to the same issue, al-Jāḥīz quotes another Ḥadīth in which Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) said as follows: 553

(لا يشبع أربع من أربعة: أرض من مطر وعنين من نظر وأنثى من ذكر وعالم من علم)

"Four things are never satisfied; the land by rain, the eye by looking, a female by a male and the scholar by learning".

Al-Jāḥīz then comments on the meaning of that Ḥadīth: "Generally speaking, the eye is not sated by seeing, just as the nose is not sated by smell, although a man may look

552 Collected by al-Suyūṭī in: al-Jāmī’ al-maghīr, No. 7476, Vol. II, p. 436, with slightly different wording. Ḥadīth Ṣāḥīḥ. Cf. The original wording for this Ḥadīth as follows:
(لَوْ كَانَ لَآدمٍ وَدْيَةً مِنْ مَلَكٍ لَبِتَغَى إِلَهَهُ ثَلَاثًا وَلَوْ كَانَ لَوَادِيَانِ لِبَيْنَيْهِ لَبَيْنَ أَرْضًا وَلَا يُملِأُ جُوفُ أَبِنَ آدَمِ إِلَّا التَّرابِ)
553 Collected by al-Suyūṭī in: al-Jāmī’ al-maghīr, No. 922, Vol. I, p. 141. Ḥadīth Ṣāḥīḥ. Cf. The original wording for this Ḥadīth is:
(أَرْضَ لا يشَبِيعُ مِنْ أَرْبَعٍ: عِينٌ مِنْ نَظْرٍ، وَأَرْضٌ مِنْ مَطَرٍ، وَأَنْثَى مِنْ ذَكْرٍ، وَعَالِمٌ مِنْ عَلَمٍ)
at something to the point of satisfaction then turn aside to look at something else. And as for knowledge, it is too vast to be circumscribed. If one seeks it for honour and pride, then there is no limit and end to it. The more one seeks it, the more he desires it. 554

Al-Jāḥīz praises to a man who speaks only of what concerns him and does not impose on himself what he can do without, because according to him, the words from this man will be few, and as a result, God will compassionate him. 555 Related to this issue, he quotes this Ḥadīth: 556

(رحم الله عبدا أنفق الفضل من ماله وأمسك الفضل من قوله وشغله عيبه عن عيوب الناس)

"God is compassionate to a person who expends of his wealth and withholds the excess of his talk, whose own fault diverts him from the faults of the people".

Afterwards he states again: "How worthy is one whose words are countable and from whom no statement escaped unaccompanied by the two Angels, Raqīb and Ātīd". 557

On the other, al-Jāḥīz claims that the only cure for this disease i.e. talking idly and giving away a secret is to stamp out interference and stop wagging tongues of men tarnishing the honour of others and taking pleasure in malice and unkindness. 558 Here, we

---

556 I have tried to find this Ḥadīth in al-Muḥjam al-mufahras li al-fāż al-Ḥadīth al-Nabawī by A. J. Winshick, and also in the computer program, HARF, which contains ‘The Six Authentic’, but I could not find anything similar or close to this text.
find that al-Jāhiz quotes these three Ḥadīth. The first one is the Prophet Muhammad saying: 559

المسلم من سلم المسلمين من لسانه ويده

“A Muslim is a man from whose tongue and whose hand other Muslims is safe”.

Al-Jāhiz comments: “The man from whom others are not safe is a man who is not safe from himself” 560 The following Ḥadīth has been quoted by the author in connection with the same issue is the Prophet’s saying: 561

وهل يكب الناس على مناخرهم في النار إلا حصانة أملئته

Which mean: “What else but the harvest of their tongues drops men head-first into hell-fire”.

Finally, from al-Jāhiz’s point of view, silent is better than talking idly and giving away a secret. In this case, he quotes the final Ḥadīth concerning the superiority of silence when the Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h) said: 562

العبادة عشرة أجزاء تسعة منها في الصمت

“Worship consists ten parts. Nine of them are in silence”.

562 When I looked this Ḥadīth up I discovered that only in al-Jāmî al-gughr by al-Ṣuyūṭī contains this similar reported Ḥadīth in which Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) said: ( الصمت أرفع العبادة ). See al-Ṣuyūṭī, al-Jāmî al-gughr, Vol. II, p. 117.
3.6 Risāla fi ṭafāl al-nuṭq al-ṣamīt (Superiority of Speech to Silence)

3.6.1 The text of the Risāla:

In ʻUyūn al-Sūd's collection, the risāla begins with the heading "Faṣl min ṣadr risālatih fi ṭafāl al-nuṭq al-ṣamīt" and it does contain eight pages. ʻUyūn al-Sūd divided it into five divisions in which every division begins with "Faṣl minḥā" and only the fourth division starts with "Faṣl minḥā fi sifā man yaqdar al-ṣamīt al-ibāna". The text of this risāla can be found also in Ḥārūn's edition. This study will rely the translation of the risāla on the Colville’s translation entitle “Why speech is superiority to silence”.563

3.6.2 The Addressee of the Risāla:

Al-Jāḥīz did not declare the addressee of this risāla. He only replies to someone who has written a risāla on the virtue of silence when he says: "I have read your kitāb in which you outlined the merits of silence and summarised its more obvious appeal".564 We find that the author mentions the context of his friend's book on the superiority of silent. His friend claimed that silence more worthy than speech in many situations, even if what is said should be true. In addition, the tongue is nothing more than a channel for indecency that gets its owner into trouble, etc.

563 Colville, Sobriety and Mirth, pp. 145-150.

3.6.3 Outline of the Risāla:

Before going further discussion onto the main content of the risāla, this is the brief outline of the structure of the risāla:

1. Al-Jāḥiẓ replies to someone who has written an essay on the virtue of silence.
2. Al-Jāḥiẓ’s methodology in writing the risāla.
3. He then proclaims the virtues of speech.
4. The story of Prophet Ibrāhīm (Abraham).
5. The story of Prophet Yūsuf (Joseph) with the High Priest of Egypt’s.
6. The eloquence of Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.).
7. The virtue of ʿIlm al-kalām (theology).

3.6.4 Analysis of the main issue in the Risāla:

At the beginning of the risāla, the author tells us that someone has written an essay on the virtues of the silence. We find him also recapitulating his opponent’s arguments, for instance, he says: “You declared that you found silence more worthy than speech in most situations, even if what is said should be true. The tongue, you claimed, is nothing more than a conduit for indecency that gets its owner into trouble. You describe
the silent men as a thinker. You quoted the Emperor of Persia, Anūshirwân, in support of your arguments; you referred to the verses of poets and so on".  

Al-Jāḥîz tells us also that he read all that his addressee had written on the subject, and he also studied it with thoroughness and care. Afterwards, he mentions his position concerning the respond to that essay: “I shall make my own position clear with convincing arguments and illustration, to be the best of my ability and in a way that shall be impossible to repute. There is no power but God’s. Him I beseech for help, in Him I place my trust and to him I turn in repentance”. From this point of view, this is very clear for us that the writing of al-Jāḥîz in some extant has meaning of the Islamic value.

3.6.4.1 Evidence of the virtue of speech:

First of all he admits that he personally found the virtues of speech are obviously amazing. For instance, you can only praise God and thank to Him through speech, you can only express your wants and needs through speech, and there are many other arguments which according to al-Jāḥîz can be easily found through his reasoning and experience.


On the other hand he states that there is no evidence for the superiority of silence to speech. In conjunction with the evidences of superiority of silence to speech, we find that al-Jāḥīz used his brilliant skill of reasoning to repute his addressee. For example, he writes: “you can describe silence with speech but you cannot describe speech with silence. Were silence superior, mankind would have no recognisable primacy over the rest of creation. There would be no fundamental distinction between man and beast, despite the diversity of their essence, natures, physical characteristic and lifestyles”. 568

Al-Jāḥīz then claims that the examples of the superiority of speech to silence are too many either from the Qur’ānic verses, prophetic traditions, chronicles, narratives, and speeches of the great orators, etc. For example, al-Jāḥīz constructs more evidence from Islamic history concerning the superiority of speech to silence particularly from the story of the prophets such as the story of the prophet Ibrāhīm’s (p.b.u.h.) demolition of the idols, the story of the Prophet Yusuf (p.b.u.h.) with the word of the High Priest of Egypt, and the Prophet Muhammad’s (p.b.u.h.) eloquence. And then he writes: “the foregoing has provided the evidence to refute your argument and undermine your stance. God sent His prophets to spread the word and warn the nations. He commanded them to proclaim the message not with silence but with speech. No message ever held substance, no argument ever carried conviction and no reason was ever made clear except by means of speech”. 569 This is because, according to al-Jāḥīz, no message ever held substance, no argument ever carried conviction and no reason was ever made clear except by means of speech.

568 Ibid., Vol. IV, p. 231; see also ʿUyūn al-Sūd’s edition, Vol. IV, p. 179.
569 Ibid., Vol. IV, p. 239; see also ʿUyūn al-Sūd’s edition, Vol. IV, p. 183.
3.6.4.2 The virtue of *Ilm al-Kalām* (Theology)

As a Muʿtazila's scholar, the author concludes the *risāla* with the discussion on the virtue of *īlm al-kalām* (theology). He writes "what could possibly be more highly esteemed, more consummately good and more manifestly beneficial to mankind than something which, if it did not exist, neither God's divinity nor the testament of the prophets could be affirmed and, without which proof could not be distinguished from sophistry or the genuine distinguished from the counterfeit masquerading as authentic?".\(^{570}\)

He then records two reasons why *īlm al-kalām* is superior to other sciences. Firstly, he says that through *īlm al-kalām* do we differentiate consensus from dissent, error from innovation and the aberrant from customary practise. Secondly, it is the means of learning the facts about the religious faiths and of rationally affirming the existence of the divinity and authenticity of the revelation. It is the testing ground of justice and of tyranny, compulsion and free will.

3.6.5 Analysis of the use of the Qurʾān and Ḥadīth:

It is very clear from the content of the *risāla* that al-Jāḥiẓ used verses and stories from the Qurʾān to strengthen his idea about the virtue of speech to the silence. For instance, he says: "I have never known that silence to be praised in any situation where

speech would not be praised more. Speech is the medium of choice for its clarity, expressiveness and precision of meaning”.\textsuperscript{571} Al-Jāḥīẓ then provides us an example for that point of view particularly related to the story of the Prophet Ibrāhīm’s demolition of the idols which has been mentioned in the Qurʾān. He then quotes this verse from Sūra al-Anbiyā’ when the Qurʾān said (21:62-63):

"They said: "Are you the one who has done this to our gods, O Abraham?". (Abraham) said: "Nay, this one, the biggest of them (idols) did it. Ask them, if they can speak!"."

Afterwards, al-Jāḥīẓ comments on that verse: "Prophet Ibrāhīm save his life with these words, which were more praiseworthy than the silence of another would have been in a similar situation because, had he remained silent when questioned, it would have been a profaning of his insight and knowledge. He spoke because he knew that to speak was the best course of action. He knew too, that whoever is able to speak effectively, can also keep silent effectively, but whoever keeps silent effectively may not be able to speak so effectively”.\textsuperscript{572}

In addition, al-Jāḥīẓ states that speech is a means of affirming virtue and guide to knowledge of eminent men, because, without it, it would be impossible to distinguish the essential from the inessential in most situations. Related to this statement, the author offers the story of Prophet Yūṣuf with the High Priest of Egypt. Here, he quotes this Qurʾānic verse in which the Qurʾān praised Prophet Yūṣuf in Sūra Yūṣuf (12:54):

\textsuperscript{571} Ibid., Vol. IV, p. 232; see also Ḥuyūn al-Sūd’s edition, Vol. IV, p. 184.
\textsuperscript{572} Ibid., Vol. IV, p. 234; see also Ḥuyūn al-Sūd’s edition, Vol. IV, p. 180.
"Verily, this day, you are with us high in rank and full trusted".

Al-Jähiz then adds: “If Yūsuf had not demonstrated his superiority through language with his attractive personal qualities, the High Priest would have remained unaware of his righteousness and Yūsuf would not have earned a place as his trusted confident. His standing with the High Priest would have remained simply that one man among many others. However, Yūsuf words raised his rank and status, made known his integrity and endeared him to the High Priest”.

Speech is a means of distinguishing between man and beast and of appreciating the superiority of mankind to all other creatures. Al-Jähiz quotes this verse from Sūra al-Isrā’ (17:70):

وَلَتَدَ كَرِمًا بَنِي آدَمٍ وَحَمَّلَهُمُ الْبَرَّ وَالْبَحَرَ

“And indeed We have honoured the children Adam, and We have carried them on land and sea...”

The author states that God honoured man with speech and carried him forward with the ability to plan. Therefore, according to al-Jähiz, without speech, no one would deserve blessing or perfume the duty of giving thanks to God. Gratitude is commonly expressed through language; no other way is known. Because of that, al-Jähiz’s claimed that the Qur’an said (14:7): لَنْ نَشْكُرَكُمْ لَأَزِيدَنَّكُمْ which mean: “If you give thanks (by

---

accepting Faith and worshipping none but Allah), I will give you more (of My Blessings),...”, thus making the articulation of praise the means of deserving increase and to praise Him is a key to prosperity.574

The Arabs, as was described by al-Jāḥiz, were famous by their eloquence and elegance of expression. It was for this reason that the greatest of God’s prophet i.e. Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h) from an Arab, his language was Arabic and the Qur’ān also was in Arabic. To support his argument, al-Jāḥiz quotes this verse from Sūra al-Shu’arā’ (26:195): بلسان عربي مبين which mean: “In the plain Arabic language”. This is a clear evidence for the eloquence of Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h).

Al-Jāḥiz also states that God has only sent His prophets to mankind except whose moral superiority within their own communities was paralleled by the superiority of their eloquence. For instance, Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h) was the most eloquent, expressive and articulate of the Arabs and all Arab society was represented in his person. This is because; he was born into the tribe of Hāshim and, on his mother side, came from the Banū Zahra. In addition, he was nursed by the tribe of Sa‘d b. Bakr and grew up among Quraysh. Then, he married into the tribe of Asad b. ʿAbd al-ʿUzza and, when he immigrated to Medina, he was taken in by Banū ʿAmr (i.e. the clans of Aws and Khazraj).575

575 Al-Jāḥiz has contributed also some further information on the eloquent of the Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h). See for instance in his al-Bayḥāqi wa al-tabyḥī, Vol. II, p. 31.
After this statement, al-Jāḥīz quotes the Ḥadīth of Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) as saying:\textsuperscript{576}

(أنا أفصح العرب بيد أي من قريش، ونشأت في بني سعد بن بكر)

"I am the most eloquent of the Arabs, because I come from Quraysh and was raised among the Banū Sa’d b. Bakr".

We find that the above Ḥadīth is the only one has been quoted by the author in this risīla. From this point, al-Jāḥīz concludes: “Of all the tribes mentioned, Quraysh alone would have been enough, for they are the most eloquent, articulate, sharp-tongued and quick-witted of all and the tribes’ most powerful linguistic focus”. After a long explanation on the origin of Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.), finally, al-Jāḥīz claims that he shall draw a line here for fear of going on too long.\textsuperscript{577}

3.6.6 The language of the Risāla:

The use of language of the risīla clearly is in debate style. From the first line of the risīla, we find that al-Jāḥīz mentions the words Fādīla (The Virtue) which mean that he will explains to his addressee the virtue of something. In addition, we find in the next paragraph, the words such as (١٤٢١، ٦٠٠) , (١٤٢١، ٦٠٠) , (١٤٢١، ٦٠٠) , etc. which indicates that the author assumed his addressee is his opponent in this discussion. For example, here he quotes what his addressee has said:

\textsuperscript{576} Collected by al-Ṣūyūṭī in: al-Janīf al-zaghīr, Vol. I, p. 411, with different wording. Ḥadīth Def ḍ. See also, Ibn Mańẓūr, Lisān al-ʿArab, (١٤٢١، ٦٠٠). Cf. The original wording for this Ḥadīth is as follows:

(فَأَلَمْ يَأْتَيْنَا بِجَبَلٍ وَأَرْضٍ مَّطْنَىَّ َفَأَلَمْ يَأْتَى رَجُلٌ وَأَيْدٍ مَّطْنَىَّ َ( فَأَلَمْ يَأْتَيْنَا بِجَبَلٍ وَأَرْضٍ مَّطْنَىَّ َ)

“You declared that you found silence more worthy than speech in most situations, even if what is said should be true”.

“You claimed that the tongue is nothing more than a conduit for indecency that gets its owner into trouble”.

“You describe the silent man as a thinker”.

Later on, al-Jāḥiz says: “I have read all that you have written on the subject [the virtue of silence to the speech], everything you have summarised, itemised, explained at great length. I have subjected it to scientific scrutiny and studied it with diligence and care”. However, he claims: “And what have I found? The words of a man bewitched by his own opinions...”.

The used of use of Dīrā‘ al-mukārabat also can be seen in five occasions of the risāla such as (أفقاك الله) (حفظك الله) (أدعك الله) (عندك الله) ( позвك الله). The first one was used at the beginning of the risāla before the author goes for further explanation on the subject of speech is superior to silence. For instance, al-Jāḥiz writes:

The use of this kind of expression indicates that the author has his personal impression to his addressee.

3.7 *Risāla fī al-jidd wa al-hazz* (In Earnest and Jest):

3.7.1 Text and title of the *Risāla*:

In the printed edition, the *risāla* consists of forty-seven consecutive pages with no divisions other than paragraphs either in Hārūn’s edition or ʿUyūn al-Sūd’s edition; however in the latter, it consists of thirty-one pages only. The *risāla* is now available in English which has been translated by Hutchins and Colville. Pellat also had translated some portion of the *risāla* in his book on the life and work of al-Jāḥīz under the heading “Jest and earnest”. So, our reference for analysis of the content of this *risāla* would base on Hārūn’s collection and ʿUyūn al-Sūd’s collection particularly for Arabic text, and Hutchins’s and Colville’s book for English translation.

By referring to Yāqūt’s and Ḥājjī Khalīfa’s list of al-Jāḥīz’s works, we find that both scholars claimed that the title of the *risāla* is *al-Muzâḥ wa al-jidd*. However, most scholars of al-Jāḥīz in modern times such as al-Ḥājirī, Pellat and Abū Milhīm agreed that the correct reading is *Risāla fī al-jidd wa al-hazz*.  

---


3.7.2 The Addressee and the date of composition:

Hārūn and ʿUyūn al-Sūd in their editorial remarks states that the *risāla* was composed by al-Jāḥiẓ to his friend, Ibn al-Zayyāt. This is because al-Jāḥiẓ himself states clearly the name of his addressee i.e. Ibn al-Zayyāt, the vizier of the caliph al-Mutawakkil. On the other hand, the date of the composition of the *risāla* can not be determined precisely. Colville, for instance, suggests that it may have been composed towards the end of the author’s life.

However, by referring to the text of the *risāla*, we can suggest the nearest date of the composition. For example, from internal evidence, this *risāla* can be dated to the period of the Caliph al-Muʿtaṣim when the author mentioned the event of the death of the Caliph, which located in the month of Rabī’ al-Awwal 227 A.H. This indicates that the *risāla* was written later than this event. In addition, we find another sign which al-Jāḥiẓ mentions it in this *risāla* concerning his long period of relationship with Ibn al-Zayyāt. For instance, he says: “How is it that after you honoured me when I was young you now wish to treat me with hatred”. Furthermore, some scholars of al-Jāḥiẓ suggest that the *risāla* has been written between the year 229 A.H. and the year 231 A.H.
3.7.3 Outline of the *Risāla*:

Let us now turn from the background of the *risāla* to the work itself which according to Colville, bearing some similarity to the *Risāla al-tarbi‘ wa al-tadwīr*. Pellat states that the *risāla* describes the author’s approach rather than the subject-matter. Elsewhere, he claims again that in this *risāla*, the author reproaches Ibn al-Zayyāt with punishing him unduly severely for some unspecified misbehaviour on his part. However, before going onto further discussion; let us break down the content of the *risāla* into these constituent elements:

1. Introduction.
2. Al-Jāḥīṣ apologise to his addressee.
3. The punishment must be proportional to the offence.
4. Some observation about the bonds of friendship.
5. Revert to the cause of quarrel.
6. Warns Ibn al-Zayyāt against losing his temper.
7. Revert to the cause of quarrel.
8. Replying to an oblique criticism of himself by his patron.
9. Proceed to inquire into the best way of preserving documents.
10. Examines the disadvantages of parchment.
11. Digress on meaning and thing meant.

---

12. Revert to the comparison of Ibn al-Zayyāt and Prophet Ādam (p.b.u.h.), asking Ibn al-Zayyāt forgiveness and quoting historical examples of sustained punishment.

13. Reminding Ibn al-Zayyāt that they were once neighbours and both of them are the Muʿtazila’s followers.

14. Drawing a humorous comparison between them (al-Jāḥiẓ and Ibn al-Zayyāt).

15. Conclusion - Reverts to the subject of his punishment.

3.7.4 Analysis of the main issues in the Risāla:

In this risāla, al-Jāḥiẓ makes a plea for forgiveness to his addressee. He complains of old age and speaks of career dedicated to his patron’s service. The author also seeks earnestly to humour his patron with analysis of anger, punishment, bookbinding and the relationship of word to the meaning. Therefore, in the first instance, al-Jāḥiẓ complains about the treatment he received from his correspondent (Ibn al-Zayyāt), in return for which he proceeds to subject him to a sustained and withering attack. However, we find that the most important issue in this risāla is the subject of anger which can be seen clearly in the following paragraphs.
3.7.4.1 The relationship between the author and his addressee:

In his introduction, the author tells us about the two reasons in which Ibn al-Zayyāt against him. Firstly, because he addressed his work entitled al-Zarē wa al-nakhīl to Ībrāhīm b. āl-Abbās al-Ṣūlī which he received from him five thousand dinars. Secondly, it is reported that al-Jāḥīz refused to pay al-Ṭūwa (land tax)593 to the authority. However, al-Jāḥīz asserts that was not fair to punish him by these two small matters. For instance, he comments on this issue: “One who punishes something small as though big, a slip as though persistent, a mistake as though intentional. One who leaves behind all measures and is at variance with the balanced scale is the most deserving and fit for extreme punishment”.594 And he adds: “An indication of the intensity of your fury and of your boiling chest is the strength of your motion, the delay in you’re calming down, the remoteness of an end to your plotting”.595 As a result, al-Jāḥīz come across that Ibn al-Zayyāt was angry with him.

From this point of view, he then reverts to discuss the anger which he describes it as follows: “The reign of anger is tyrannical, the judgement of wrath unjust. The weaker the resolve is to act freely, the weaker is prudence. Fury is a characteristic of Satan”.596 Furthermore, al-Jāḥīz urges his addressee to distinguish between anger to different types of people. He says: “Do not expose yourself to the enmity of intelligent narrators, the

---

rancour of those who perpetuate the memory of shortcomings, the tongue of those known for truthfulness, directness, and lack of idle talk and bias, so long as you find an escape from that and a broad path away from it”.

In the next paragraph, we find that al-Jāḥīz records some of Ibn al-Zayyāt criticisms towards him. Firstly, Ibn al-Zayyāt complained about some works of al-Jāḥīz which were being in dispersed and disordered and he compared them with the process of compiling the Qur’ān. However, al-Jāḥīz admits that compiling all of his works is almost impossible, and sometimes most of it was lost. Secondly, Ibn al-Zayyāt complained about the type of papers which al-Jāḥīz used for his work. Finally, he criticised about al-Jāḥīz’s family life. Ibn al-Zayyāt claimed that al-Jāḥīz did not having a child to keep alive his memory and to take possession of his estate. Concerning all this criticism, al-Jāḥīz writes: “What difference would it make to you if I had a little son, especially when my position with you is not that of person with an income to be taken, assistance that would matter, benevolence worth eyeing, or an ability to provide anticipated delight”. After all, al-Jāḥīz claims that he does not know why his addressee loves to abuse him and to celebrate his estate and praise his name. Because according to him, this conduct, indeed, combines personal charm, delicacy of procedure, and a distant goal. As a result of this situation, al-Jāḥīz also informs us that there was a conspiracy in which Ibn al-Zayyāt was planning to kill him. So, in this case, al-Jāḥīz asks his addressee, “If you kill me, so with whom will you live?”

3.7.4.2 Some of Mu'tazilite doctrines:

As usual al-Jāḥiẓ digresses in his writing. It is interesting to note that the digression in this risāla is into the meaning and things meant. Concerning this matter, the author relates in his digression on the story of the creation of Prophet Ādam (p.b.u.h). He writes: “Prophet Ādam (p.b.u.h) himself stumbled and went astray, disobeyed his Lord... And yet God created him with His hand, lodged him in His paradise, made His angels to bow down before him... For it was impossible for God to have taught him a name without teaching him its meaning, or to have taught him a meaning without creating for him the thing meant by it”. This idea is in conformity with his Mu'tazilite teaching. Therefore, he maintains that: “A term is not a word unless it is provided with a meaning. A might have no word for it, but no word should be without a meaning”.

Later on we shall see that al-Jāḥiẓ departs once again to his main topic especially about his relationship with Ibn al-Zayyāt. This time, he compares Ibn al-Zayyat, his correspondent to Prophet Ādam (p.b.u.h.), who asked forgiveness from God. In this case, he also asks forgiveness from Ibn Zayyāt. He also reminds that they were once neighbours and both of them are among the Mu'tazila followers. Therefore, the author concludes it with this statement: “I have counted up all the causes for mutual hostility and summed up all the reasons for hatred, except the reason of Satan’s enmity to man”. He then continues: “Among the causes of enmity are the rivalry of neighbours and relatives

---

and the mutual envy of person of similar craft". Afterwards, he asks for a pardon and forgiveness by saying that it is amazing that Ibn al-Zayyāt are annoyed at the length of his request for pardon and forgiveness. In this case, the author compares with some animals manners which according to him have a better developed senses and a more heightened sensitivity toward their enemy.

It is remarkable to mention here that al-Jāḥiẓ described his relationship with Ibn al-Zayyāt like the relation between parts of the body and its soul. For instance, he says: “The section of the soul and members of the body in spite of the multiplicity of their numbers, the difference of their mixtures ... become one soul and one body through harmony of the thoughts”. Afterwards he again stresses on his addressee, he says: “If your friend is separated from you, part of you has been separated. When your companion falls ill, then half of you are ill. When part of them goes all goes. Then my death is the death of my friend, my life is my friend’s life. So do not remove him from your heart to the distance his body is from yours”.

3.7.4.3 Final instruction:

Finally, al-Jāḥiẓ addresses his correspondent that he has already pointed out to him people who unite the traits in which he can find continuing pleasure and the fulfilment of his passion. He then concludes the risāla with his final advice to his addressee particularly in the relation with friends and enemies. Firstly, be careful from

those people who have snatched from the treasury of the caliphate, secondly, separate them, and finally, carry out the judgment of the Book and the Sunna over them. Because according to the author, it will untie the bond of their spirits, knot by knot and your reward will be great and the most important thing is you will be remembered. In addition, you will serve the caliph and endear him to the people. Then you will have done well through administering a beating to those deserving it and will have relieved those not deserving from it. From this final conclusion, we find that it denotes that al-Jāhiz denied all criticism made by his addressee.

3.7.5 Analysis of the use of the Qur'an and Hadith:

The Qur'an was only used in two occasions in the risāla. Firstly, when the author digresses his writing to describe about the relation between the meaning and thing meant especially when he speak about the story of Prophet Ādam (p.b.u.h). Here, he quoted the Qur'ānic verse from Șūra al-Baqara (2:31):

> "And He taught Ādam all the names of everything".

Al-Jāhiz then comments on his addressee concerning this verse as follows: "By saying that God taught Ādam all the words of speech together with their meanings, we mean that He did so only to the extent which necessity required. Remember that Ādam is

---

like a tree and you are but the fruit, he is of the heaven and you are of the earth, he is the sturdy trunk and you are a flimsy branch". 607

The other verse was quoted when al-Jâhiz expresses his view concerning his relationship with his addressee. Here, he quoted the Qur'anic verse as follows (38:82):

َفَيَعْزِزَكُمُ اللَّهُ لِأَعْمَالِهِمْ أَجْمَعِينَ

"By Your Might, then I will surely mislead them all".

Al-Jâhiz then comments on the attitude of his addressee: “So take up with Satan if you are angry at God or with your peers, if you are seeking a cure". 608

On the other hand, there are only one Hadith can be found in the risâla. For instance, it is reported that Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) said: 609

(اللهم الله امرأ قال خيرا فغضن أو سكت فسلم)

“God bless the man who speaks well and profit from it, as well as the one who plays safe and holds his tongue”.

In conjunction with the meaning of the Ḥadîth, al-Jâhiz then added: “He made security alone the reward of silence but security and profit the reward of speech; a man can be secure and not profit but he cannot profit unless he is secure”. 610

---

608 Ibid., Vol. I, p. 268; see also "Uyûn al-Sûd’s edition, Vol. I, p. 188.
3.7.6 The Language of the *Risāla*:

The author begins the *risāla* with apologise to his addressee by saying (جعلت) "I would ransom you with my own life". This special word indicates that al-Jāhiz, as the author of the *risāla* has his own view towards his addressee. It is interesting to note here that such word has been used by the author more than eight times in the *risāla*. 611

In addition, the use of oath style can be found scattered in the text particularly when the author stresses on the relationship with his addressee. The author always reminds his addressee by saying such as (الله) and (لا والله). For instance, he says:

"By God, I would have hated for you an excess of pleasure for fear it would lead to an excess of passion".

In another occasion, he says again:

"No, by God, you will not find on the face of the earth room for a secret or space for a compliant, nor a spirit with whom you can feel at home or a soul with whom you are comfortable".

---

Moreover, the usage of other *Dif'ā' al-mukābāt* as usual can be found scattered in the *risālah* such as (آذك الله), (سبقان الله) and (معاذ الله), etc. Al-Jāḥiẓ used also the word such as (معاذ الله) and (سبقان الله) to express his view towards his addressee.

For example he said:

وَمَعَاذَ اللَّهِ أَنْ أَقُولُ لَكَ كَمَا قَالَ الْهَسْنَ لِذَلِكَ الْظَّالِمُ الْمَعَتِّدُ،ْ وَالمَصْمُ المَقَاسُ،ْ وَلَكِنْي أَقُولُ:

إِنَّ اللَّهَ يَضُرِّبُ مِنْ قَدْ جَعَلَ مِنْ قَتْلِهِ فِي حَلِّ

This indicates that al-Jāḥiẓ still respect his addressee and hope their relationship will continue in the future.

Finally, it is remarkable to say that the use of poetry appeared only once in this *risāla*. The author quotes only one *bayt* by al-Quṭāmī who died in 130 A.H. concerning the patient man. Al-Jāḥiẓ writes: “Mistaken the poet who said: 612

قد يدرك المتأنئ بعض حاجاته

وَقَدْ يَكُونُ مِعَ المستَعِجلِ الْزَّلْلَهُ

He then comments on that *bayt* as follows: “The patient man is likely to get what he needs and the hasty is likely to fail”.613 Al-Jāḥiẓ claims that the poet would have been closer to expressing the truth.

3.8 Risāla fī al-nubl wa al-tanabbul wa dhimm al-kibr (True and assumed nobility: An attack on pride)

3.8.1 The text of the Risāla:

This is the final risāla that has been chosen for the study in this section. However, according to Pellat, only an excerpt of it has survived. In Hārūn's printed edition, the text of risāla consists of twenty pages, whilst in ʿUyun al-Sūd’s edition; it is in fifteen pages only and it was divided into nine divisions. The first division entitled “Faṣl min ṣadr kitābīh fī al-nubl wa al-tanabbul wa dhimm al-kibr” and followed by the other eight divisions with the heading “Faṣl minhīh”.

Pellat in his collection of translated portion of al-Jāḥiẓ's work also has published some five pages selected from various places of the risāla under the heading “True and assumed nobility; an attack on pride”. The study of this risāla will be base on Pellat's translation of selected portion of the risāla.

3.8.2 The Addressee of the Risāla:

Al-Jāḥiẓ did not declare the addressee of this risāla. We know that he only replies to someone who has written a risāla on the subject of pride and nobility as he mentioned in the introduction of the risāla.

---

614 Pellat, The life and works of Jāḥiẓ, p. 25 & 231.
615 Ibid., pp. 231-5.
3.8.3 Outline of the *Risāla*:

The body of the *risāla* can be divided into these elements:

1. The author tells his correspondent that he has already dealt with the main topic.
2. Then he tackles the subject of pride and nobility.
3. Define nobility and quotes the example.
4. Note on Divine pride.
5. Note on pardonable pride.
6. Note on pride and snobbishness.
7. The pride of Iblīs.
8. Define pride.
9. Digress to praise the Banū Hāshim.
10. Reverts to the subject of *hilm* (generosity).\(^{616}\)
11. Then he goes on to the qualities of leadership.

3.8.4 Analysis of the main issue in the *Risāla*:

The introduction of the *risāla* was a brief explanation from the author to remind his addressee that he has already dealt with the main topic of pride and nobility. He

\(^{616}\) There are many discussions about this term. Most of the lexicographers and scholars are agreed that the basic element of *hilm* is to be self mastery, dignity, detachment and it also connotes the qualities associated with patience, leniency, tolerance, understanding or even gentleness. See Hans Wehr, *A Dictionary of Modern Written Arabic*, p. 202; Baalbaki, *al-Mawrid-Modern Arabic-English Dictionary*, p. 308; *The Encyclopedia of Islam*, art. Hilm, Vol. III, p. 390-392.
expresses it with: “I have already read and understand your work on the subject of pride and nobility. I found that everybody agreed that pride and nobility is blameworthy”.617

3.8.4.1 The definition of nobility:

The author defines nobility is passing which consists above all of ‘humbling oneself before one inferiors, behaving justly towards one’s equals, and asserting oneself with one’s superior’. For instance he asserts: “If nobility consisted simply of making oneself out to be noble, and honour were earned by puffing oneself up, eschewing regrets and apologise and disdaining really worthy men, then all those who are still less retiring, more utterly immodest and more conceited, albeit with less reason, would have a greater claim to nobility, and their conduct would be more pardonable”.618

After all, he adds: “Nobility is note like luck: a man may quite well have the best of fortune through on his deserts he should have the worst, but a man fitted for insignificance will never be noble”.619 He says again: “Remember that unless you plan with nobility as your aim, hammer out the tools for it, approach it from the right direction and do your duty by it, you will be hated despite your efforts and detested for your pains. A man who makes himself open to insults and does not mind being blamed is dead rather

than alive, a dog rather than a human being".620 Related to this definition, the author quotes the example of al-Ahnaf b. Qays.621

3.8.4.2 The definition of pride:

Pride is of two kinds, open and secret. Secret pride is the name of feeling of superiority. When it is expressed in actions, it is called open pride. Feeling of superiority in mind is called self conceit (kibr). When it is expressed in actions, it is called pride (takabbar). So, self coceit is the root of pride.622

According to al-Jāḥīz, pride is a character trait such that nothing short of ḥilm is needed to tolerate it, and the patience of job to endure the proud. To cease from punishing them is a mark of gentleness, and to be kindly to them true glory; generosity is needed to ignore them, and dumbness to leave off from blaming them.

From his point of view "Pride is worse than brutality, which is the worst of sin, and modesty is better than clemency, which is the best of good deeds. Pride is a defect in

---

621 His real name is Abū ʿAbd Allāh al-Ṣaḥr b. Qays b. Muʿāwiya al-Tamīmī al-Saʿdī. He was born before Islam. His laqab (cognomen) al-Ahnaf derives from his feet were misshapen and he also has other abnormalities. He was famous as a spokesman and leader of the Tamīmites, who during the first century of hijra formed the intellectual, religious and political elite of the city of Basra. He was the legend of the ʿilm within the Arabs society. See The Encyclopedia of Islam, art. al-Ahnaf b. Kays, Vol. 1, p. 303-304. For more detail of the description of his physical appearance, see al-Jāḥīz, al-Bayān wa al-tabyīn, Vol. I, p. 56.
which all the elements of evil are put together, and modesty a quality in which all the elements of good are combined”.

3.8.4.3 The Divine pride:

The author says that pride belongs not to the creature but only to the creator (Allah); and the only reason that God rebukes man for his pride is that he oversteps the mark, goes too far, and usurps his Lord’s prerogatives.

3.8.4.4 Pardonable pride:

Though pride is ugly in all men, however, according to the author, it is pardonable and commendable in three cases in human being. Firstly, in uncouth Bedouin, savage when thwarted and neither a town-dweller nor a peasant because based on their natural Bedouin arrogance. Secondly, pride may be the outcome of vengefulness, hostility, rivalry and hatred. Finally, if it is shown only towards rules, tyrants, for instance, Pharaohs and consorts. Then he points out that the person his correspondent refers to falls into none of these categories, for his behaviours are contrary to the definition of nobility given above. Because according to him, absence of nobility leads to envy, falsehood, backbiting and impiousness.

\[624\text{Ibid., Vol. IV, p. 176; see also ‘Uyūn al-Sūd’s edition, Vol. IV, p. 134.}
3.8.4.5 The pride of Iblīs:

The author declares that the first misdeed committed in heaven or on earth was the sin of pride. For instance, the author claims that it was pride prevented Iblīs bowing down [before Ādam], persuaded him of uselessness of friendship and the value of wrath, made disobedience pleasant and loneliness and isolation attractive to him, made the curse of the Lord seem light to him and eternal punishment bearable, promised him victory and gave him hope of salvation, put specious arguments into his mind and made lying words seem fair to him, led him to eschew the company of the angels, united in him all qualities and combined in him all the marks of wickedness, for he was jealous.625

3.8.4.6 Other issues within the Risāla:

The author takes the opportunity in passing to praise people of the Banū Hāshim, who are according to him not proud. Then the author quotes Abū ʿAmr b. al-ʿAlāʾ,626 who omits pride from his list of the failing that disqualify from holding office: for it can be counterbalanced by ḥilm. He refers also in passing to military commanders who are averse to seeking advice, and then reverts to the subject of ḥilm. He points out those qualities that go unrecognised when a man is of lowly station are acknowledged or even exaggerated when he attains high office.627

626 He was a founder of the grammatical school of Basra and died in 154/770. He was also famous as a celebrated reader of al-Qurʾān. His place among Arab lexicographers seems to have been very important, since he is said that to have been the master of al-Khalīl b. Ahmad al-Farāḥidī. See The Encyclopedia of Islam, art. Abū ʿAmr b. al-ʿAlāʾ, Vol. I, p. 106.
The *risāla* end with the discussion on the qualities of leadership that make man loved, and we find that the author states that the Arabs needed tribal chiefs to defend them because they were too remote from the central authority.  

3.8.5 Analysis of the use of the Qurʾān and Ḥadīth:

The use of the Qurʾān and the Ḥadīth is very limited in this *risāla*. There are only three Qurʾānic verses and one Ḥadīth has been quoted by the author. The Qurʾānic verse was used when the author records some of his opponent’s views concerning some God’s name such as *al-Mutakabbir* and *al-Jabbār*. For instance, he writes in the centre of his discussion: “they might say: “If mutakābir (haughty) were very bad and mutakabbir (proud) blameworthy, God would not have so described Himself, or have used these two adjectives in a favourable sense in the Qurʾān i.e. when God says in the Qurʾān (59:23) as follows: “...the Compeller, the Supreme” and He said again in another occasion (59:24): “...To Him belong the Best Names...”.

Now notice this brilliant answer from the author to that question, he writes: “Man, who is created to be subject to the divine will, frail and downtrodden, could only be humble and may only be modest. How could pride be an attribute of a being that is capable of being defeated by hunger and shows him unjust when sated? What possible...”

---


connection is there between pride and the eating, drinking, urinating, defecating human being? What right has a being whom weariness exhausts and rest refreshes to be proud and haughty?" 630

Later, the author quotes another Qur'anic verse when he declares that the first misdeed committed in heaven or on earth was the sin of pride. Here, he quotes this verse from Sūra al-A'rāf (7:13):

ما يكون لك أن تكبر فيها

"It is not for you to be arrogant here".

Finally, when he claimed that the pride belongs not to the creature but only to the creator (Allah); the author quotes this Ḥadīth in which Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) was reported as saying: 631

العظمة رداء الله، فمن نازعه رداءه قصمه

“Greatness is God’s mantle, and he who contends with Him for it tears it to shreds”.

The above Ḥadīth is the only quotation made by the author to support his argument concerning the subject matter, however the Islamic value of this risāla still can be found in its content as has been shown above. In addition, it is interesting to note here

630Ibid., Vol. IV, p. 172; see also ‘Uyūn al-Sūd’s edition, Vol. IV, p. 133.
631This Ḥadīth Qudsi was reported by Ibn Māja and it can be found in al-Mundhirī, al-Targhib wa al-tarhib, Vol. IV, p. 16, with different wording. Cf. The original wording is as follows:

(يتول الله جل وعلا: الكريوم ورضا والعظمة رداءه فمن نازعه واحداً منهما ألقسه في النار.)
that the author had quoted only one bayt of poem by al-Farazdaq\textsuperscript{632} in this risāla, however; on the other hand, there are a large number of proverbs that had been quoted.\textsuperscript{633}

3.9 CONCLUSION

This is a part of the rasā'il of al-Jāḥiz which can be considered as an essay on the questions of proper behaviour and moral studies. All these rasā'il have been the object of our extensive analysis. As we have seen in this chapter, Adab went through various stages of moral thought, combining various elements. We have seen that the author adopts a critical approach to evaluate his idea in all circumstances and mix together with other elements such al-Qur‘ān and Ḥadīth, etc. It is obvious for us from al-Jāḥiz’s works that the dimensions of manners of morality in Islam are numerous, far-reaching and comprehensive.

Through his discussion of a number of the rasā'il in this category, we find that al-Jāḥiz displays his remarkable talent for human observation, for instance, his observation on certain emotions such as envy and jealousy in his Risāla fī al-ḥāsid wa al-maḥsūl and Risāla fī faṣl mā bayn al-ṣadāwa wa al-ḥasād, snobbishness and pride in Risāla fī al-nubl wa al-tanabbul, etc. In addition, it is clear that the author’s approach is based on Islamic thought which can be considered as his Islamic tendency in his writing. For instance, in the discussion of a number of the Qur‘ānic passages, the author refers to the views of

\textsuperscript{632} His full name is Tammām b. Ghalib. This poet was born in Yamāma probably after 20/640, died at Basra about 110/728 or 112/730. See The Encyclopædia of Islam, art. Al-Farazdaq, Vol. II, pp. 788-789.

respected early authorities such as Ibn ʿAbbās and others. On the other hand, in his discussion of the text of Ḥadīth, we find that there is some problem particularly to cross-check the author’s Ḥadīth quotations. Therefore, we have to refer directly to their sources. Finally, we find that al-Jāḥiz addressed some of this rasāʾil to historical figure particularly among the Abbasid caliphs and vizier, accompanied by various examples of good morals such as in Risāla fī al-madīd wa al-madīd. To conclude, we can say that the content of these works conforms to the content of books on adab moralistic literature which is one of the prolific genres in Arabic. This is, of course, al-Jāḥiz made it popular in the third/ninth century.
4.1 Introduction

This chapter of the thesis attempts to study the social works of al-Jāḥīz. As far as we are aware it is generally known that the most important work of al-Jāḥīz concerning the social group is *al-Bukhalāʾ*, however, it will not be considered in this part of the study,\(^{634}\) instead, I will concentrate only on the collection of his *rasāʾil*. As usual, in studying all these *rasāʾil*, other works of al-Jāḥīz will be taken into our consideration.

According to Pellat, in the 2nd century A.H. writers were busy collecting together traditions about various Arabs tribes and recalling the life stories of people belonging to a particular group, starting with a collection of transmitters of tradition, then the *fuqahāʾ*, governors, cadis, etc. In addition they also compiled the collection of hilarious anecdotes

\(^{634}\) *Al-Bukhalāʾ* is discussed briefly in the chapter two of this thesis. In addition to what has already been said, there has been much work done concerning this work both in Arabic and English. For example, Wadiʿah Ṭaha Najm in her Ph.D. thesis “*Studies in the writing of al-Jāḥīz*” has a detailed discussion about the book. Also Fedwa Malti-Douglas compared between two books on al-Bukhalāʾ namely Bukhalāʾ by al-Jāḥīz and Bukhalāʾ by al-Khaṭīb al-Baghdādī in her book “*The Structure of Avarice*”. This book concludes with an excellent bibliography of the case study. Also, Muhammad Burqān Ḥamdī discusses about mockery in al-Jāḥīz’s Bukhalāʾ in his book *Suhkriyat al-Jāḥīz min bukhalāʾih*. Within the same tradition comes two books written by Ahmad b. Muhammad Ambezik and ʿAbd al-Ḥaʿīm Muhammad entitled *Ṣūrat bakhīl al-Jāḥīz al-famiyya min khilāl khaṣṣīṣ usūbīh fi kitāb al-bukhalāʾ* and *al-Sūkhriya fi adab al-Jāḥīz*, etc.
with the aim of contributing to the development of the ādāb works. However, these were feeble attempts, which never reached a full scale toward picturing the social situation at that time.\textsuperscript{635}

Referring to Pellat's list of the works of al-Jāhiz in this category, it seems that there are several risāla, which can be taken for further extensive reading and analysis. These are as follows: Risāla fī al-qiyām, Risāla fī al-īshq wa al-nisā', Risāla fī tābaqāt al-mughannīn, Risāla fī tafṣīl al-ba'īn ʿalā al-zahr, Risāla fī muṭākhbarat al-jawārī wa al-ghilmān, Risāla fī dhamm al-kuttāb and Risāla fī al-muṭallimīn. It should be pointed out, before proceeding further, that the first two of these rasā'il are clearly related to the issue of groups of women, who appeared in the Abbasid society and played an eminent role in social life, the life of art, pleasure and literature. Whils Risāla fī al-muṭallimīn will be discussed together with another two risāla of al-Jāhiz entitled Risāla fī ṣināʿat al-quvwād and Risāla fī madḥ al-tujjār wa dhamm āmal al-sulṭān. This is based on the considerable social elements attaching to the text of the risāla.

4.2 Risāla fī al-qiyām (Risāla on singing slave-girls)

4.2.1 The Text of the Risāla:

We all know that Islam introduces new dimensions into the human relationship of man and women and gave them a new philosophy of life, enriching the family with love, pleasure, comfort, mercy and security and, at the same time, enabling them both to gain

\textsuperscript{635} See Pellat, \textit{The life and works of Jāhiz}, p. 27.
moral goodness and spiritual excellent through this relationship. Thus, al-Jāḥiz through this work sheds some light on the relationship between men and women particularly on the lawfulness of social contact between these two sexes. This issue, even today, as described by Colville, is a highly sensitive one in parts of the Muslim world.\footnote{Colville, Sobriety and Mirth, p. 181.}

One finds from the text of \textit{Risāla fī al-qiyyūn}, al-Jāḥiz, firstly, focuses his discussion on the group of people known as \textit{al-Qiyyūn},\footnote{\textit{Al-Qayn} (pl. \textit{al-Qiyyūn}) means slave-girls either she is singer or not. Ibn Manẓūr, \textit{Liṣān al-ʿArab}, Vol. XI, p. 376. According to Charles Pellat, the first female slave-singers among the Arabs appeared as early as the Jāḥiliyya period. See for further details on “qiyyūn”, Pellat, \textit{The Encyclopedia of Islam}, art. Kayna, Vol. IV, pp. 820-824. On the other hand, A.F.L. Beeston thinks of the geisha of Japan as being similar to the Arab institution of \textit{al-Qiyyūn}. See Beeston, \textit{The Epistle of Singing-Girls of Jāḥiz}, Aris & Philips Ltd, Warminster, 1980, p. 2.} whom he portrays in connection with the Abbasid social life. However, at the same time; he also digresses into the subject of relationship between men and women. So, we are trying to highlight this aspect in this study. Now, before going into further detail on the content of the \textit{risāla}, it is important to know briefly about its background.

Yāqūt did not mention this \textit{risāla} under his list of al-Jāḥiz’s work. It is possible that he had this work in mind when he mentioned the book of \textit{al-Muqayyinīn}\footnote{This word \textit{al-Muqayyin} (pl. \textit{al-Muqayyīnīn}) means merchant of singing slave-girls. On the meaning of \textit{al-Muqāyyn}, see Ibn Manẓūr, \textit{Liṣān al-ʿArab}, art. Qiyan, Vol. XI, pp. 376-377.} which he named it as \textit{Kitāb al-muqayyinīn al-ghināʾ wa al-ṣanʿat}.\footnote{Yāqūt, \textit{Muḥam al-udabāʾ}, Vol. XVI, p. 108.} The text of \textit{Risāla fī al-qiyyūn} firstly was published by J. Finkel in his \textit{Three Essays of al-Jāḥiz}.\footnote{Finkle, \textit{Three Essays of al-Jāḥiz}, pp. 53-75.} In 1959, the \textit{risāla} appeared again in Beirut under the collection of “\textit{Al-Bayān wa al-tabyīn wa aḥamm al-rasāʾil}”, which according to Beeston, is completely devoid of critical value; it is an
unaltered reprint of Finkel’s edition, without even the trouble having been taken to incorporate his corrigenda. However, the excellent edition of the *risāla* has been done by ʿAbd al-Salām Muhammad Ḥārūn, who devoted the first two volumes of his projected complete edition of al-Jāḥiẓ to its content. In this edition, the *risāla* appears in volume two, pp. 143-184. The latest edition of the *risāla* can be seen in the ʿUyūn al-Sūd’s collection. The text of the *risāla* in the printed edition did not consist of any divisions other than paragraphs either in Ḥārūn’s edition or ʿUyūn al-Sūd’s edition. Therefore, for this study, we will use the combination of Ḥārūn’s edition and ʿUyūn al-Sūd’s editions.

A complete translation of the *risāla* has been translated for the first time into French by Charles Pellat which was based on Finkel’s edition. However, the *risāla* was edited again and then translated into English by A.F.L. Beeston. This edition was published in 1980 under the title “The Epistle on Singing-Girls of Jāḥiẓ”. Pellat produced also a partial French translation of the *risāla* in his *Le Melieu Basrien*. The same portion of Pellat’s translation now can be found in his book on the works of al-Jāḥiẓ. Whilst, the latest translation of the *risāla* can be seen in Colville’s book *Sobriety and Mirth* entitled “Chanteuses”. So, all quotations in the text relating to the *risāla* are from both Beeston’s and Colville’s translation.

---

4.2.2 The nature and purpose of the Risala:

The subject of al-Qiyān is found in all periods of Arabic literature particularly in poetry. For instance, referring to a medieval Arabic qaṣīda 645 or ode from the third/ninth century, we find that there is a detail of wasf (description) 646 of this group of singing slave girls. Ibn al-Rūmī (d. c. 283/896), for example, devoted a big part of his poetry to describe them. 647 On contrary, prose literature works devoted to same subject are also found, but far less frequently. Perhaps, Risāla fī al-qiyān written by al-Jāḥīz was the first prose work devoted to this subject matter. We assume that Risāla fī ummahāt al-awlād also written by al-Jāḥīz, as cited by Yāqūt in his list of al-Jāḥīz’s works, 648 can be put in this category. This is based on the term of Umm al-walad (pl. Ummahāt al-awlād) which is normally refers to the female slave when she has given birth to the child. 649 However, it is a pity that the text of this risāla is lost, for it would probably have contained additional views of al-Jāḥīz concerning the subject matter.

Later on, there are some monographs devoted to the subject of al-Qiyān as have been brought to light and cited, for instance, by Ibn Naḍīm and Yāqūt such as Kitāb al-

---

645 The term, qaṣīda (pl. qaṣī'ād) is generally defined according to its certain length, some scholar said that is from seven or ten and others said fifteen to eighteen lines. For more detail on this term, see Encyclopedia of Arabic literature, art. Qaṣīda, Vol. II, pp. 630-633.

646 This term occupies a central role in the Arabic qaṣīda tradition and is commonly held to be characteristic of the genre. See Encyclopedia of Arabic literature, art. Waṣf, Vol. II, pp. 806-807.


649 The legal term for such a slave is Umm al-walad. On the death of her master, Umm al-walad, together with her children, become free. For more discussion on the development of this term in the pre-Islamic period and under Islam, see also The Encyclopedia of Islam, art. Umm al-walad, Vol. X, pp. 857-859.
Kitāb akhbār al-qiyān by Abū al-Faraj al-Asbahānī (d. 363/972), 650 Kitāb qiyān al-Hijāz and Kitāb al-qiyān written by Ibrāhīm b. Iṣḥāq al-Mawṣīlī (d. 188/804). 652 However, this list of works does not seem to have survived and according to Pellat, probably, it is far from having the same literary value as the work of al-Jāḥiz. 653

Therefore, Risāla fī al-qiyān by al-Jāḥiz can be assumed to be among the early prose documents which provide a fairly representative sample of the various kinds of material making up the existing corpus of literature on the profession of al-Qiyān and the development of music among the Arabs. 654 Beeston admits that Risāla fī al-qiyān of al-Jāḥiz was an open letter from the author to some named person. 655 This is based on the first statement of the risāla where al-Jāḥiz listed the putative authors namely Mūsā b. Iṣḥāq b. Mūsā, Muhammad b. Khālid, Abdullah b. Ayyūb, Muhammad b. Ḥammād and others. 656 However, according to Colville, although al-Jāḥiz claimed about his joint authorship, he is the sole author of this piece. 657 In this preamble, al-Jāḥiz informs that they claim their good fortune, and say that they have not hitherto set out their apologia because the truth seemed self-evident and so forth. However, al-Jāḥiz argues: “We have

650 His full name is Abū al-Ḥasan ʿAlī b. Muhammad, but known as al-Madāʾinī, because he lived for a time in al-Madāʾin (Ctesiphon). He is reported to have written more than two hundred books, but hardly any have been survived. See Kaḥbāla, Muṣjam al-muʿallīfūn, Vol. VII, p. 211; see also Encyclopedia of Arabic literature, art al-Madāʾinī, Vol. II, p. 481.

651 Kitāb akhbār al-qiyān (Book of information on singing girls) and Kitāb al-diyyārūt (Book of Monasteries), which both published recently, are not editions of Abū al-Faraj’s books on these subjects but collections of quotations from him, gathered from latter sources. See, Encyclopedia of Arabic Literature, art, Abū al-Faraj al-Asfahānī, Vol. I, pp. 30-31.


653 Ibd., Vol. IV, pp. 822-823.


657 Colville, Sobriety and Mirth, p. 201.
heard about the criticisms levelled against us be a certain groups of persons and if we did not reply to them in our own self-defence – for we know very well that it is in the nature of the envious to make a show of despising the object of their envy..."\(^{658}\)

For the reason of writing of this *risāla*, in fact later on al-Jāḥīz writes: "We have therefore set out in this *risāla* our arguments against those who count it for shame to us that we own singing slave girls, insult us for sitting at table with our friends, and resents our displaying and talking about our prosperity. We hope to be justified because we are the victims of aggression".\(^{659}\) A little later on in the same paragraph, he specifically states his premise: "In this *risāla* we shall set forth our arguments against the extension of jealousy to cover cases that are neither unlawful nor dubious; we shall then describe the good fortune that is our lot, and controvert our opponents’ assertions in terms both concise and clear".\(^{660}\)

### 4.2.3 The Structure of the *Risāla*:

The following content of the *risāla*, was restructured by Beeston who gave it a very clear outline.\(^{661}\)

1. Introduction.

2. General thesis, which since nothing in the Qur'ān and Sunna forbids association between men and women, apart from certain specific cases,

---


\(^{661}\) See Beeston, *The Epistle on Singing-Girls of Jāḥīz*, p. 5.
therefore such association is licit, provided that the specific prohibitions are not violated.

3. A series of anecdotes, all designed to illustrate the fact that in pre-Islamic and early Islamic time’s men and women conversed freely at the social level, and that women were present at assemblies of men, without the strict purda (viel).

4. Excursus on social customs.

5. Anecdotes and general argument, illustrating the thesis that music is an unobjectionable pastime.

6. Further argument on the general thesis that, provided that actual indecency is avoided, social intercourse between men and women is licit.

7. Excursus on the nature of love and passion.

8. Description of the practice of the qiyān.

9. Description of the advantages enjoyed by the muqayyinīn and of the practices employed by them.

10. Terminal apologia.

It seems here that through this risāla, al-Jāḥīz offers us some brilliant insights concerning certain circumstances of singing slave girls in the Abbasid era. In his detailed accounts of them, for instance, al-Jāḥīz suggests that in those days female singer would actually sing poems in front of guests.
4.2.4 Analysis of the main issue in the *Risāla*:

4.2.4.1 The Issue of *al-Qiyān*:

Al-Jāḥīz’s main concern, in this *risāla*, is to discuss about the *qiyān*. The existence of this group of professional female singers or *al-qiyān* was a feature of upper-class life in the Abbasid society. According to al-Jāḥīz, wealthy clients would seek out excellent songstresses to entertain their guests at parties and for other purposes. In order to elevate their commercial value, the female singers were supposed to be endowed with highly trained performance and social skill, resulting from advanced musical education and association with intellectual culture under supervision of the *muqayyin*.662 This training enhanced their commercial value. Al-Jāḥīz claims that a successful singing girl had a repertoire of as many as four thousand songs comprising ten thousand verses, which, of course, she knew by heart, besides her erudition in the traditional sciences and the Qur’ān.

Part way through, the author digresses from this topic and turns his focus on trying to prove that jealousy is unjustifiable, supporting this with examples of the promiscuity of the early Arabs, and telling sundry stories about relation between men and women. This leads him to the subject of the Umayyad caliphs and their use of female slaves and singing slave-girls, and this is followed by a plea on behalf of music and singing.

---

662 These women had received a thorough education. For more information on *al-qiyān’s* education, see *The Encyclopedia of Islam*, art. Kayna, Vol. IV, pp. 821-822.
Al-Jāḥīz then proceeds to analyse physical beauty and sexual attraction. He says: “I shall attempt to explain beauty to you. It is fullness and proportion; and by fullness I do not mean anything excessive or disproportionate, such as tallness, thinness, fleshiness or size of eye or mouth over and above the normal dimensions in well-proportioned individuals. Any such excess detracts from beauty, even if it be thought to add something to physique”. All this is to explain why it is permissible to touch a slave-girl before buying her; and it leads the author on to deal with the attitude of Islam to healing by touching.

4.2.4.2 The issue of relation between men and women:

Apart from discussion on the Qiyān, al-Jāḥīz digresses his discussion into the subject of relation between men and women which also amongst the important issue in Islamic thought. Before proceeding to further discussion of this aspect in al-Jāḥīz’s work, it will be most convenient to know that in Islam, a man, other than husband, is neither allowed to have privacy with a woman, nor is he allowed to any part of the body, no matter how closely he is related to her. This according to Ḥadīth, which Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) warned man not to call on a woman in the absence of her husband, unless he is accompanied by one or two other man. Likewise is the prohibition of touching the body of woman. However, it is lawful to sit with the women of advanced

Now, let us listen to what al-Jāḥīz has to say on the subject in which he argued at length. Firstly, he stresses that among Bedouin men and women there was no veiling of women. He then asserts that men continued to hold converse with women both in pre-Islam and in the beginning of Islam, up to the time the veil was imposed as a particular duty on the wives of the Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.). According to al-Jāḥīz, ʿUmar b. al-Khaṭṭāb never forbids looking at, and talking and joking with women. Regarding this matter, he asserts: “If looking, conversion and joking with women were things to excite jealousy then ʿUmar would have been the first to disapprove”. Then, he quotes another story of Mundhir b. Zubayr, who was in love with Abdulrahman’s daughter, Ḥafṣa. According to al-Jāḥīz, from these two conditions, undermine the cleric’s claim that “the first look is forbidden and the second look is forbidden”, since it is impossible to have conversation with someone that is not accompanied by many looks. It seems that what he means by this is that it is lawful in Islam looking at women. In addition, al-Jāḥīz also gives one more proof which shows us that it is not unlawful to look at any women. He says that spinsters will appear in front of men and feel not the slightest shame. Were it forbidden when she was young, it would not be permissible when she is older.

---

664 For more discussion on this aspect, see Maududi, *Purdah and the status of women in Islam*, Islamic Publication Ltd, Lahore, 1983, pp. 171-178.
4.2.4.3 The issue of legitimacy of songs:

This is another important issue which has been highlighted by al-Jähiz. As far as can be determined, there has been a close connection between singing and poetry in Arabic culture. This song is normally performed by singing slave girls or al-Qiyān. On this situation, al-Jähiz says: “In my opinion, there is nothing at all wrong with song, for it is simply poetry in the dress of music. Songs that are decent can only be good, while those that encourage vice are not”. For instance, the author quotes the Hadīth in which Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) is reported as saying that “some of poetry contains wisdom”. In addition, al-Jähiz also quotes ‘Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb is reported as saying: “Poetry is only words; the good is good and bad is bad”. Then he continues “that a song can be appreciated intuitively and understood technically by wasan (metre) and qāfīya (rhyme). There is no basic, either in reason or in the Qur‘ān and Sunna, to declare it unlawful”.

His argument is: “If it is to be declared unlawful because it distracts from devotion to God, we can point to any number of things that do that such as listening to stories, eating, drinking, looking at gardens and flowers, hunting, etc.” Regarding this matter, he concludes: “We understand that, for the man who is able to do so, spending his time in prayer is fine thing to do but, as long as he has discharged his religious duties, these other things are perfectly permissible”. In this case, al-Jähiz gives us an example

of Prophet Sulaymān when he was distracted from prayer until after sunset by a horse-riding tournament.

4.2.5 Analysis of the use of the Qurʾān and Ḥadīth:

From what can be gleaned from the text of the *risāla*, we find that al-Jāḥīẓ quotes verse from the Qurʾān and Ḥadīth. The Qurʾānic quotation in this *risāla* can be found only in the paragraph on the legitimacy of touching slave-girls. For instance, al-Jāḥīẓ stresses that it is permissible to talk, joke, flirt and shake hands with singing slave-girls, and it is permissible also to touch them while examining them, as long as nothing unlawful happens. In conjunction with this matter, al-Jāḥīẓ commented that Allah has accepted minor misdemeanours from His punishment. Here, we find that the author quotes verse from Sūra al-Najm (53: 32) to support his argument when the Qurʾān said:

(Those who avoid great sins and *al-Fawāḥish* (illegal intercourse, etc.) except the small faults, - verily, your Lord is of vast forgiveness)

In his comment to the above verse, Abdullah Yusuf Ali said: “Allah’s attributes of Mercy and Forgivness are unlimited. They come into action without our asking, but on our bringing our will as offerings to Him.”

670 It is interesting to note here that al-Jāḥīẓ then quotes Abdullah b. Masūd’s interpretation on this verse in which he says: “Asked to interpret this, Abdullah b. Masūd gave the example of a man who approaches a woman:

---

670 In his comment to this verse, Abdullah Yusuf Ali said: “Allah’s attributes of Mercy and Forgivness are unlimited. They come into action without our asking, but on our bringing our will as offerings to Him.” See, Abdullah Yusuf Ali, *The Holy Qurʾān, Text, Translation and Commentary*, p. 1381.
if he proceeds, it is an act of indecency but if he holds back, it may be considered a minor misdemeanor".

Regarding the same case, al-Jāḥīz then asserts: “Let us suppose the following argument: “There are Ḥadīths that say: The breath of men and women shall not commingle” and “A man shall not be alone in a room with the woman even if he is her brother in law, for brother in law are a menace”. He proceeds: “Now, the coming together of men and qiyān is an open invitation to debauchery and vice, since it fills a man with lust, drives him to indecency and spurs him to foul abomination”. 673

Let us see now how he replied to that idea in which he himself creates it. He says: “We would begin by noting that rules apply only to external actions. Although action should be based upon good intent, God does not demand judgment on the basic of unknown factors. For example, a man may be judge to be a Muslim on the basis of his ostensible observance of the rituals, although he is infidel in reality, and so forth”. 674

Beside this Ḥadīth, al-Jāḥīz quoted also another Ḥadīth in conjunction with the legitimacy of singing a song when he stresses: “There is nothing at all wrong with song, for it is simply poetry in the dress of music”. 675 Here, he quotes the Ḥadīth when Prophet

---

672 This Ḥadīth can be seen in Ṣaḥīh Bukhārī, Chapter on marriage, No. 1711.
Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) as reported saying: إن من الشعر لحكمة (which means “Indeed, some poetry contains wisdom”).

Another aspect we would like to highlight here is the style of al-Jaḥīz’s argument. We find that one argument flows into another in such a way that a division required by the outline may come in the midst of a paragraph or in the middle of another argument. This style can be obviously followed in the text of the *risāla* but as a result of this, it is difficult to know where one should stop reading. This is because with his digressions, he jumps from topic to topic, so if you want to follow a particular argument then you need to read the complete text.

Al-Jaḥīz employs a number of post-classical lexical items in this *risāla* which Beeston concludes that the language usage would have to be regarded in some respects as faulty. So, at the end of his analysis, Beeston listed the select glossary to record of non-Arabic words and post-classical usages found in the text of the *risāla*. On the other hand, al-Jaḥīz’s style of writing bears strong traces of the influence of the parallelism characteristic of *Adab*. In addition, al-Jaḥīz avoids using rhyming style; however, on some occasions there are two or three examples of rhyme in his work.

---

678 Ibid., p. 6.
4.3 Risāla fī al-nisā' (Risāla on Women)

4.3.1 The text and title of the Risāla:

Allah has created every living being in pairs – male and female including mankind. By nature, man does not live alone and he cannot live alone. In fact he is destined not to live alone. Even Prophet Ādam, when he was created, was not left to live alone. From the earliest times, Ādam and his wife lived together, naturally, with love and affection. This sense of mutual love and close relations between man and wife is considered to have been due to the physical creation of the woman out of the left rib of her husband, as narrated in a Ḥadīth. Thus, women have a very important place in Islamic society. Unlike a number of other religions, Islam holds a woman in high esteem.679

It is generally observed that al-Jāḥiz’s attitude and discussion of the subject of women can be distinguished by two main characteristics; firstly, a great deal of tolerance, and secondly, a true recognition of human nature.680 From this point of view, some scholars of al-Jāḥiz called him as a protector for women.681 Now, let us refer to the list of al-Jāḥiz’s work, to find out these elements. We find that the works of al-Jāḥiz concerning women can be traced in this rasā’il namely Risāla fī al-nisā’, Kitāb or Risāla fī ummahāt

679 On Islamic view concerning women and their rights and responsibilities from religious and as well as anthropological point of view, see for instance Aisha Lemu, ‘Women in Islam’, in: The Challenge of Islam, Ed. by: Altaf Gauhar, Redwood Burn Limited, London, 1978, pp. 248-265. There is, needless to say, a vast literature on the subject but most works are written from the perspective of current prejudices in the West.


al-uwlāl and Risāla fi al-farq mā bayn al-rijāl wa al-nisā. However, Risāla fi al-nisā' is the only text which survived and it will be engaged our attention in this part of study.

Al-Jāhiz refers in many occasions to this risāla in his Ḥayawān. By referring to the list of al-Jāhiz's works cited by Yāqūt, there is a mention of two books, one on al-Nisā', and the other on al-Šishq. According to Najm, none of these two works come down to us in full. She claims that what we have today only a selection from the original copy which comes among the chapters collected by ʿUbaydullah b. Ḥassān.

Risāla fi al-Šishq wa al-nisā' or simply known as Risāla fi al-nisā' has been published for the first time with some other rasā'il of al-Jāhiz by Muhammad Sādī al-Maghribī. Then, al-Sandūbī published it under the title ‘Min kita-b al-nisā’’. Pellat, however, cited two works under the title of Fi al-Šishq wa al-nisā' and Faṣl mā bayn al-rijał wa al-nisā' wa farq mā bayn al-dhukūr wa al-infāh, which according to him the first one has

---

685 Yāqūt, Muḥjam al-udābā', Vol. XVI, pp. 106-111. It is reported that Ibn Sīnā (d. 428/1037) has also written a risāla in this subject entitled Risāla fi al-Šishq. This risāla has been analysed by G. E. von Grunebaum in his article: 'Avicenna's Risāla fi al-Šishq and courtly love', Journal of Near Eastern Studies, Vol. XI (1952), pp. 233-238.
686 Najm, Studies on the writing of al-Jāhiz, p. 46.
687 Ibid., p. 46.
688 al-Sandūbī's collection contains more than thirteen rasā'il including Risāla fi al-nisā'.
689 Al-Jāhiz tells us in al-Ḥayawān that in this risāla he considered such questions as when women are superior to men and vice verse, whether a child contains more of its father or its mother, in which cases women's right should be absolutely guaranteed, what sort of work is most appropriate for women, and in which occupations they are most efficient. See al-Jāhiz, al-Ḥayawān, Vol. I, p. 13.
Perhaps he think that these titles are, originally, two different works, which later on, combined it together. Nevertheless, referring to al-Jāhiz’s statement that he had dealt with the question of love in details, in the book, saying: “As we have mentioned in this book the love (al-Ḫubb) which is the root of passionate love (al-Hawā'), and the passionate love of which extreme love (al-‘Ishq) is derived and the extreme love for which the person sets out aimlessly or dies of grief in his bed”. We can conclude here that he already wrote two books, one under the heading “al-‘Ishq wa al-nisā”", and the other was “al-Farq mā bayn al-rijāl wa al-nisā”. However, the latter, as far as we are aware, was not survived.

Furthermore, Najm claimed that, in al-Sandūbi’s edition, the whole risāla ends with a chapter where a general description of the book is given by the author, and where he complains of his illness. According to this chapter, al-Jāhiz intended to write a book on the differences between the males and the females of all animals, but found that it was better to limit it within the subject of men and women, who, according to him, was made short, in order to win the interest of the reader. It may be presumed that the book of al-Nisā' is identical with the book of Farq mā bayn al-rijāl wa al-nisā’, of which only selected extracts, in the form of chapter have come down to us. The question, however, still remains whether Risāla fī al-nisā' is part of the work or not. However, we believed that Ibn Naḍīm was right in this context when he insisted that Risāla fī al-nisā' is the

---

693 There are some monographs devoted to the subject of women which has been written by later Muslim scholars such as Ibn Qurayba’s volume entitled “Kitāb al-nisā” in his work ‘Uyun al-akhbār (Beirut, Dār al-Kitāb al-‘Arabī edition, 1963) and al-Sakhawī’s (d. 902/1497) volume entitled, “Kitāb al-nisā” in his work al-Durr al-‘Imrār fi ahl al-qarn al-tāṣīf (Beirut, Maktabat al-Ḥayāt, n.d.).
694 Najm, Studies on the writing of al-Jāhiz, p. 48.
695 Ibid., p. 48.
same work known as Risāla fī al-furq mā bayn al-dhukūr (al-rijāl) wa al-ināt (al-nisā').

The text of the risāla is divided into twenty-one portions. The first portion entitled "Faṣl min ṣadr kitābih fī al-nisā’" and the last portion ends with "Faṣl minhu". The risāla is now available in English under the heading “On Women” which has been translated by Jim Colville. Therefore, the study of the text of the risāla will be based on the Hārūn’s and ‘Uyun al-Sūd’s collection, and for translation of the text will be relied on Colville’s translation.

**4.3.2 The purpose and date of the composition:**

The purpose of composition of this risāla is clear when the author noticed that some men treating women with the utmost contempt and denying them most of their rights which according to him, is the sign of weakness if a man can only fulfil his obligation to his father and uncles by denying them to his mother and aunts. For this reason he admits that he has written of the merits of women.

The date of composition of Risāla fī al-nisā’ can not be determined precisely. Abū Milḥīm suggests it would be before 232 A.H. Some other said that it may be having written within the same period of al-Ḥayawān, or after al-Bayān wa al-tabyīn was

---

696 Ibn Nādir, al-Fihrist, p. 209.
698 Colville, Sobriety and Mirth, pp. 170-179.
completed. However, one can supposed that Risāla fī al-nisā' together with Kitāb al-bighāl have been written after the latter portion of al-Ḥayawān, because these themes and topics are strongly related to al-Ḥayawān as al-Jāḥiz himself has promised the reader of his al-Ḥayawān.701

4.3.3 Analysis of the Content and Style of writing:

According to Pellat, al-Jāḥiz used his favourite technique, firstly, defines passionate love (‘ishq) as a step beyond affection love (ḥubb) in the same way that rashness is a step beyond courage. The word ‘ishq is also used figuratively in the text of the risāla in an empahetic sense to denote love of renowned, wealth, etc.702 In the next paragraph, the author speaks about men and love which according to him, compared with what they give women, men only give each other things of little consequence. Describing the range of bounty, al-Jāḥiz, for instance, says that he never known a man to love his parents or children, his stable or estate with much intensity as he loves forbidden women, even to the point of his death.703 From this point of view, he quotes this Qur‘ānic verse in which Allah tell us about the range of the bounty:

4. زين للناس حب الشهوات من النساء والبنين والقناع Brockling المقتصرة من الذهب والفضة والخيل المسومة والأنعم والحرث 4

702 Pellat, The life and works of Jāḥiz, p. 257.
(Fair in the eyes of men is the love of things they covet: women and sons; headed-up hoards of gold and silver; horse branded (for blood and excellence); and (wealth of) cattle and well-tilled land). Sūra Āl-Imrān (3:14)

It seems from the Qur'ānic verse above that women are in the first range of the bounty. Now, let us see how the author comments on that verse, he says: “Here, God speaks of the range of bounty. He was bestowed on man; men, however, long for nothing with such passion as they long for women. For that reason, He placed them first on the list”. 704 This comment seems that the author used emotional element to support his argument.

It is remarkable to note here that the author also mentions the status of women in Islam which according to him, women are superior to men in certain respects. For instance, he writes “it is they who are are desired, courted, loved and pursued. It is they who are ransomed and guarded”. 705 In another occasion, he said that the God has given wives in their husbands’ hearts, for instance, if a man be asked to to swear to divorce his wife, he grows pale, is overcame with rage, protests, expostulates, gets angry and refuses, etc. In addition, al-Jāḥiz said also that a further point to consider is that God has created a child from a woman without man but not from man without a woman. In conjunction with this idea, he refers to the case of the creation of al-Masīḥ (Messiah) in the womb of Maryam (Mary). This according to the author, the miracle God distinguished woman, not man. 706

Afterwards, the author reverts briefly to the subject of superiority of men to women. He states: “It is my view that the superiority of men to women is evident. Nevertheless, a woman’s right should not be ignored. The right of father, brothers and sons are not respected by diminishing those of mothers, sisters and daughters. Although the rights of the former are greater, I believe compassion dictates that the rights of the latter be respected”.

Finally, the author defines the canon of feminine beauty particularly in the type of women known as Majḍūla (voluptuousness). He said: “I noticed that most expert judges of feminine beauty set great store by Majḍūla. In a woman, this lies somewhere between slender and fat. A woman should have a good figure, finely chiselled features and a straight back and shoulders. She should have enough flesh on her bones not to be skinny but neither should be fat”.

Concerning the style of writing of this risāla, it has already been declared by the author himself as follows: “I had initially intended that this book present as complete a picture as possible of the features of the male and female of each animal species. The virtues and vices of both were to be identified and brought together in one place. By supplying the approariate evidence from the Qur’ān and Sunna, as well as documented quotations and widely known proverbs and maxims, the reader would be shown by just how wide margin superiority differs from inferiority. The book was being truly Arabs in

707 Ibid., Vol. III, p. 152; see also ‘Uyūn al-Sūd’s edition, Vol. III, p. 120.
character and represents our communal norms." Then he continues: "A book should have something to encourage the reader and banish the listeners' yawns. So, if you find anything of that sort here, you know it has been included on purpose." 

By extensive reading of the risāla, we find that the author highlighted the subject matter of the discussion by given the appropriate evidence from the Qurʿān and other sources.

4.4 Risāla fī mufākharat al-jawārī wa al-ghilmān (Boasting match between girls and pretty boys)

4.4.1 Background of the Risāla:

The Qurʿānic legislation on sex and marriage is well known. Men are urged to marry, even to find spouses for their slaves. Adultery is forbidden, and the story of Lūṭ (Lot) is told several times, in terms that leave no doubt that sodomy is forbidden. The text of this risāla will discuss here is one of the most obvious tendencies in the Abbasid social relation, i.e. the tendency towards sodomy, with which al-Jāḥiz deals effectively. Risāla fī mufākharat al-jawārī wa al-ghilmān is the work where al-Jāḥiz relates a debate between the supporters of al-Jawārī and the supporters of al-Ghilmān. A debate

---

711 Yaqūt only named it as Kitāb al-jawārī, see Yaqūt, Muḥjam al-udabāʾ, Vol. XVI, p. 107.
712 Ḫārīya (pl. Jawārī). This word means slave girls, or the champion girls. See Wehr, A Dictionary of Modern Written Arabic, p. 122.
713 Ghilmān (pl. Ghilmān). This word means a young man or boy and very often, but not necessarily, a slave servant or bodyguard, etc. See Wehr, A Dictionary of Modern Written Arabic, p. 682. For more information.
boasts in poetry and anecdotes. In the sphere of prose literature, this *risāla* is the most significant, if not the oldest writing on the subject of sodomy.

There are a number of anecdotes in the *risāla*, which testify to the popularity of stories of this group from the 3rd/9th century. The subject of discussion attaching to the *risāla* is reason enough to examine its content in detail. Colville in his remarks to the translation of the *risāla* into English admits this is first independent treatment of sex in Arabic literature. However, al-Jāḥīz himself describes the *risāla* as no more than light-hearted, with which he hopes to entertain his readers. For instance, at the beginning of the *risāla*, he writes: “The result may be frivolous but this is why I have sought to explain and justify my position from the outset. I have no wish to offend or upset anyone. To God I turn for help and protection, to beg, through His mercy, for peace in this world and hereafter”.

The example set by al-Jāḥīz in this *risāla* has been followed by quite serious author who have left analogous writings, among which we may mention here such as al-
Wasāta bayn al-zunār wa al-štā by Ibn Hindū (d. 420/1029)\(^{717}\) and Kitāb al-ḥikāyāt by Badr al-Dīn al-ʿAynī (d. 855/1451).\(^{718}\)

The text of the *risāla* can be seen in Hārūn’s collection with no division other than paragraphs.\(^{719}\) Hārūn based his publication of the entire text on the only Pellat’s edition. The latest edition of the *risāla* can be seen also in ʿUyūn al-Sūd’s collection.\(^{720}\) The *risāla* has been translated for the first time into English by Hutchins under the following title “Boasting Match over Maids and Youth”.\(^{721}\) And the latest translation of the *risāla* can be seen in Colville’s book with English title “The Pleasure of Boys and Girls; Compared”.\(^{722}\) Therefore, the study of the text of the *risāla* will be based on Hārūn’s and ʿUyūn al-Sūd’s collection, and for translation of the text will be relied on Hutchins and Colville’s translation.

4.4.2 The Structure of the *Risāla*:

Let us now turn from the background of the *risāla* to the work itself which can be separate into these elements:

1. A discussion of the usage of explicit words.

---

\(^{717}\) His full name is Abū al-Faraj ʿAlī b. Ḫusayn b. Hindū. He was a courtier, adḥāb, poet, and scholar. He died in Jurjān during the Ziyārid period. However, his *diwān* (anthology of poetry) and work on proverbs and letter are lost. See Ḫabīl, *Mījam al-muʿallīfīn*, Vol. VII, p. 82; see also *Encyclopedia of Arabic Literature*, art. Ibn Hindū, Vol. I, p. 334.


2. *Al-Jawārī* and *al-Ghilmān* in the Qurʾān.

3. *Al-Jawārī* and *al-Ghilmān* in the Ḥadīth.

4. The penalty of the fornication and sodomy.

5. Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) urges his Ummah for marriage.

6. The characteristic of adultery.

7. *Al-Jawārī* and *al-Ghilmān* in Arabic poetry.

8. Digression onto a Basran and a Kufan who boasted to one another about the number of noble people of Basra and of Kufa.


10. Ends with list of jokes.

### 4.4.3 Analysis of the main issue in the *Risāla:*

At the beginning of the *risāla,* al-Jāḥiẓ explains about the use of explicit language in everyday life which according to him was invented to be employed by the speakers of the language. In addition, he continues, there are enough examples for their use by, or in the presence of, the Prophet and the greatest of the early Muslims to make them generally acceptable. Al-Jāḥiẓ concludes his introduction with the proverb:

( لكل مقام مقال)

"Each place has (its) verbal statement".

This means that the right words must always be used in their proper places.
4.4.3.1 The issue of *al-Liwāt* (Homosexuality)

The main point of this *risāla* is *al-Liwāt* (homosexuality). In spite of the fact that Islamic society condemned this practice and the fact that the Qur’ān itself refers to it with disgust, the growth of it in the Abbasid society was strong and obvious. Its prevalence was not in among a certain class of people, but among all classes whether lower, middle or upper. Its prevalence among judges, teachers, clerks and scholars was well-known to the Abbasid society. No secret was made of this practice, whether among old or young people.  

As has been mentioned before that al-Jāḥiz writes a chapter of *al-Liwāt*, where he argues and condemns the habit. His argument is based, mainly, on religious grounds. For example, he said that God prohibited many practices in the society, such as drinking wine, but He promised to recompensate His good believers by allowing them the prohibition in the next world (the Hereafter). God, however, according to al-Jāḥiz, did not promise to compensate for this prohibition; therefore, it is unnatural, abominable and hateful.  

In *Risāla fī mufākharat al-jawārī wa al-ghilmān*, however, al-Jāḥiz again gives more explanation on this practice which he presents it within the debate between the two groups, i.e. *al-Jawārī* and *al-Ghilmān*. First of all, al-Jāḥiz mentions that the word of *al-Ghilmān* which is exist in the Qur’ān and Sunna was taken by the supporters of this group...
as an argument to justify it as legal and good practice. God, according to them, praised the Ghilmān and often referred to their beauty.\textsuperscript{725}

To illustrate the dialogue between these two groups, let us follow these quotations from the text of the {	extit{risāla}}:

(The youths' patron said: The superiority of boys to girls is demonstrated by the fact that, in poetry, a pretty girl is often described in boyish terms as though, in fact, she were one).

(The maids' patron said: God speaks about the girls of paradise more often than the boys. God protects the honour of women. In criminal cases, including murder and idolatry, religious law requires the evidence of two witnesses. However, in the case of woman accused of fornication, four collective witnesses to the art are required and each has to swear).

(The youth's patron said: Only beardless shall enter heaven. Even women, as the poet Āshā observed, are attracted by bearless young men).

(The maids' patron said: The Prophet is also reported as having said, “Women and perfume are my pleasure and I find my delight in prayer”. He never spoke about boys that way. All the prophets, including Dāwūd and Yūsuf, were captivated by women).

وـجـب قـرـة عـيـنـي فـي الـصـلاة. ولـم يـأـت لـلـغـلـمـان مـثل هـذـه الفضيـلة. وـقـد فـنـت بـنـالـنـسـاء الأـنـبـياء عـلـيهم السلام، منهم داود ويوسف عليهما السلام.

(The youths' patron said: Among inconvenience with females is the legal requirement that, when he buys a slave girl, a man wait a specified time before he can take his pleasure with her- a stipulation which, of course, does not apply to boys).

(The maids' patron said: I have never heard of any lover pining to death out of love for a boy, yet among the poets, particularly the Islamic ones, there are many who have died out of love for women. Jamīl b. Mu'ammar was killed by his love for Buthaynah, Kuthayyir died out of love for 'Azzah and it was his love for Afrā' that killed 'Urwah).

After taking up a number of issues raised by the both groups in dialogue form, we find that the paragraph before the end of the risāla, the author digresses his subject into another subject matter i.e. the eunuchs. The reason is that he was asked to discuss about it. However, he asserts that this topic is out of place in a discussion about slave girls and boys. The eunuch according to al-Jāḥīz is neither man nor woman. His character is a hybrid of woman’s and a boy’s. He has defects that would be repellent in a woman and so
forth. Al-Jāḥīz highlights also the result of the research that has been carried out by certain eminent scholars concerning the eunuch, saying that they found long life more common among the eunuchs than among all races of men; the reason is the absence of intercourse. 726

Finally, we find that al-Jāḥīz follows the dialogue with some equally scabrous anecdotes as the end of the *risāla*. There are around twenty-one anecdotes 727 which according to Colville that a few can still raise a smile. 728 Al-Jāḥīz himself says that he “will now round off this *risāla* with a few comic anecdotes and jokes, to revive the flagging reader and dispel his weariness”. 729

4.4.3.1 The style of writing:

Al-Jāḥīz always prone to cultivate the genre *munāẓara*, debate, of which he is one of the pioneers in Arabic literature, presents in the form of stylised dialogue arguments. The text of this *risāla* shows us that the author presents the debate between homosexuals which he described them as *Ṣāhib al-ghilmān* (The youth’s patron) and men of normal sexuality as *Ṣāhib al-jawārī* (The maids’ patron). However, the editor, ʿAbd al-Salām Muhammad Hārūn, remarks in a note that al-Jāḥīz has hereby silenced him as to the composition of this debate. But, we are not sure of this, it is not at all certain that al-Jāḥīz

is wholly serious here. For one thing, the passage in question is put into mouth of one of the contestants, *al-Ghilmān*, whereas it is his opponent, *al-Jawārī*, who clearly has the better of the debate. This sense can be seen clearly in the statement from the youth's patron when they said as follows: “You have been unjust in the debate and unfair in the argument... Why do you argue against us with the Qurʾān, traditions, and legists when we have read as mush as you and heard from the traditions as mush as you?” In another occasion, they claimed again: “At least play fair and let us argue on the same terms. By intoning the Qurʾān at me and quoting statements from the Prophet that you have scraped together, you have closed down the discussion and we end up like Basran and Kufan arguing about which town has the greater numbers of nobility”.

The use of language of the *risāla* clearly is in debate style. The word “*Qāla*” is frequently used in the *risāla*. The debate starts with the patron of *al-Ghilmān* and the patron of *al-Jawārī* has the last word in this debate. There are eight arguments offered by each patron. In addition, from the second part of the *risāla*, we find that al-Jāḥīz mentions the words *Fadil* (The Virtue) which mean that he will explains to his addressee the virtue of something.

This dialogue between *al-Jawārī* and *al-Ghilmān* is interspersed with quotations from the Qurʾān and Ḥadīths, etc. We find that there is large number of Qurʾānic verses and Ḥadīth which has been quoted by al-Jāḥīz. For instance, when he speaks about the *al-

---

730 See Gelder, *Jest and earnest in classical Arabic literature*, p. 105.
Jawārī and al-Ghilmān or al-Wildān in the Qur’ān, the following Qur’ānic verses has been quoted:

(And there will go round boy-servants of their, to serve them as if they were preserved pearls). Sūra al-Ṭūr (52:24)

(They will be served by immortal boys, with cups, and jugs, and a glass). Sūrah Al-Wāqिँah (17-18)

Al-Jāḥīz then says on behalf of al-Ghilmān: “So, He (Allah) described them in more than one place in His book and created desire for them”.

On discussion of the punishment of adultery, al-Jāḥīz through the youth’s patron said that the ban of adultery was expressed more forcefully than anything else in the Qur’ān and in the Sunna. Here, we find him quoted these following verses:

(And come not near to the unlawful sexual intercourse. Verily, it is a Fāhisha (i.e anything that transgresses its limit (a great sin)), and an evil way (that leads one to Hell unless Allah forgives him). Sūra al-Īsra’ (17:32)

(Nor commit illegal sexual intercourse – and whoever does this shall receive the punishment. The torment will be doubled to him on the Day of Resurrection, and he will abide therein in disgrace).Sūra al-Furqān (25:68-69)
(The woman and the man guilty of illegal sexual intercourse, flog each of them with a hundred stripes. Let no pity withhold you in their case). Sūra al-Nūr (24:2)

Later, he comments on the above verse: “In the absence of witnesses to the act, the divine punishment is for them to be estranged and to loathe and curse each other to the end of their days, followed by eternal torment and damnation for whichever of them lied about the deed”.

In his discussion on al-Ghilmān which mention in Ḥadīth, al-Jāhīz quotes the following Ḥadīth in which the patron of this group argued that Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) said no one enters paradise as a beardless youth:

(إن أهل الجنة يدخلونها مردا مكحلين)

(The people of paradise will enter it clean shaven and wearing kohl).

Based on the above Ḥadīth, al-Jāhīz gives his comment on behalf of this group:

“Women are more attracted to beardless youths and desire them more”.

The following Ḥadīth is used by the other group to support their argument on the virtue of al-Jawārī. It is reported that Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) as saying:

(حبيب إلى النساء والطيب ، وجعلت قرة عيني في الصلاة)

(Women and perfume were made dear to me, and prayer pleases me).

---


734 This Ḥadīth can be seen in al-Nihāya by Ibn al-Athīr with different wording under the heading “jarada”. See, Ibn al-Athīr, al-Nihāya fi gharīb al-Ḥadīth wa al-Āthār, Vol. I, p. 265.


The patron of *al-Jawārī* comment: “No honour like this came to the boys (i.e. *al-Ghilmān*).”

Like adultery, punishment has been described for those who are found to engage in homosexual acts. Al-Jāḥiz also has described that punishment in this *risāla*, for instance he records several Ḥadīth concerning the punishment for sodomy from Islamic law such as the Ḥadīth in which Prophet Muhammad is reported expelled a bisexual called “Hayt” from Medina. 737 In another Ḥadīth, Anas b. Mālik reported that Prophet Muhammad cursed homosexuals and lesbians. 738

The following Ḥadīth is used as supporting idea when the author mentioned that Prophet Muhammad urges his people to get married. For example, Prophet Muhammad is reported as saying: 739

\[(تزوجوا فلني بكث الأمة)\]

(I shall, through you, make nation numerous)

The Prophet again said: 740

\[(إذا قضيت غزوركم فالكيس الكيس)\]

737 It is reported that Hayt was telling the Prophet’s wife, Umm Salama: “When you conquer Tā’if, then you will have Bādiya bt. Ghaylān. She is then-bellied and mirthful, and so forth. Marry her to your son Umar”. The Prophet said: “You have been looking closely, you enemy of God; I never took you for a ladies’s man”. See See al-Jāḥiz, *Risāla fi Mufākharat al-Jawārī wa al-Ghilmān*, in: Hārūn’s edition, Vol. II, p. 101, Uyūn al-Sūd’s edition, Vol. II, p. 80. This text of Ḥadīth can be seen in Ṣaḥīḥ al-Bukhārī, Vol. VIII, p. 35.


739Ibid., No. 3287.

740 The original wording of this Ḥadīth can be found in *Kitāb al-Buyūf*, on the purchase of animal and donkeys, and also can be seen in *Kitāb al-Nikāb*, on the seeking to the beget children, see Ṣaḥīḥ al-Bukhārī, Vol. III, p. 176, Vol. VII, p. 124.
(When you finish the raid, then the sack, the sack, i.e. marriage).

In another occasion, he said: 741

(تُروجوا والتمسوا الولد ، فأنهم شمرات القلوب ، وإياكم والعجز العقر)

(Marry and have children, for they are the fruit of the hearts. Beware of barren old women).

Finally, the Prophet said: 742

(عليكم بالأبكار الشواب ، فإنهن أطيب أفواها ، وأنتق أرحاما)

(Look for young virgins, for they have the sweetest mouths and more fruitful wombs).

Afterwards, al-Jaḥīẓ states that: “The Ḥadīth about this are too numerous for us to mention them”.

Towards the end of the text, al-Jaḥīẓ interrupts the debate and concludes with a collection of assorted anecdotes and jokes. This he does, as he explains, because he fears that the reader would be bored with the debate. Thus, as was noted by Gelder, al-Jaḥīẓ pretends that the debate itself was serious and in need of some light relief. 743 Indeed, al-Jaḥīẓ did it when he declared at the end of the *risāla*: “I cut short this work of mine to prevent the reader becoming bored with it”.

---

741 I have tried to find this Ḥadīth in *al-Muṣfjam al-mufahras li alfāṣṣ al-Ḥadīth al-Nabawī*, and also in the computer program, HARF, which contains ‘The Six Authentic’, but I could not find anything similar or close to this text. Perhaps, al-Jaḥīẓ used his own words which its meaning refer to the Ḥadīth concerning the marriage.


743 Gelder, *Jest and earnest in classical Arabic literature*, p. 106.
4.5 Risāla fī tasfīl al-baṭn 'alā al-ẓahr (The Superiority of the Belly to the Back)

4.5.1 Background of the Risāla:

Al-Jāḥīz’s interest in this aspect of social problems seems to have influenced his writing. Closely connected to Risāla fī muṣākharat al-jawārī wa al-ghilmān as has been discussed above is Risālah fī tasfīl al-baṭn 'alā al-ẓahr, or “in preference of the belly to the back”. This risāla seems to have been another kind of illustration and refutation of the same tendency in the Abbasid society. As we have seen above, this practice (liwāf) remains as big problem within the Muslim community in Baghdad, as a result, al-Jāḥīz try to convince his addressee about the bad nature of this practice.

There is no mention on this risāla in Yāqūt’s list of al-Jāḥīz’s works. The text of the risāla was edited for the first time by ʿAbd al-Salām Muḥammad Ḥārūn. Now, the risāla can be found also ʿUyūn al-Ṣūd’s edition with different length.744 It is divided into six portions. The first portion is the largest which entitled “Min ẓādr kitābih fī tasfīl al-baṭn ‘alā al-ẓahr”, and the second portion is the smallest portion which contains one short paragraph. The text of the risāla now available in English entitled “The Superiority of the Belly over the Back”.745 The latest translation of the risāla appeared in Sobriety and Mirth by Jim Colville.746 So, all quotation from the risāla is based on English translation.

4.5.2 The structure of the *Risāla*:

The structure of this *risāla* can be divided into these elements:

1. Starts with a lengthy preamble which is consume a big part of first portion.
2. Recall that some ancient civilization (i.e. The People of Lūṭ and Thāmūd) became extinct as a result of the unnatural vice.
3. Portion three and four; the author continues his vindication of the “belly”.
4. Proceed with a violent attack on his correspondent particularly in portion five.
5. Ends with the simple prayer from the author for his addressee.

4.5.3 Analysis of the main issue in the *Risāla*:

4.5.3.1 The homosexual practice:

The debate on “The Superiority of the Belly to the Back” opens with a sombre introduction in which an unnamed person is addressed who has a marked preference for back, or, as it strongly suggested, for homosexual practice. Al-Jāhiz says: “May God preserve both of us from doubt and protect us from deviant desire and misguided passion”.\(^747\) Then he describes his opponent’s work as: “Your book, my brother, may God grant you success, in which you describe the merit of backs in a way which shows

your passion, love, longing, and preference for them". He proceeds: "I have therefore embarked on this book of mine to awaken you from your deep slumber and to call you to the right way". 748

Al-Jāḥīz rebuts this view, firstly by adducing some religious arguments. For example, he reminds his addressee: "We have seen that the destruction of the people of Lūt and the people of Thamūd with the onset of eclipse and earthquake, were caused only by what they committed by choosing backs". 749 He then quotes Qur'ānic verse from Sūra al-Shu'arā' (26:165-166) in which Allah mentioned the story of people of the Prophet Lūt. Al-Jāḥīz said to his addressee: "So, God the Blessed and Exalted censured them as you see! There were condemned by God, whose wrath at the enormity of their abomination". 750

4.5.3.2 The merits of belly over the back:

Al-Jāḥīz rebuts this view also by dwelling at length on the various meanings of bā'in "belly" and zahr "back" and by given evidences from the Qur'ān, Sunna and proverbs. He says: "We begin now to mention the merits with which God characterised bellies to help one who is on his way to repentance, and a sleeper to wake up and so forth". 751 In this regard, al-Jāḥīz shows that "belly" is used in favourable contexts; in the Qur'ān, honey is said to come forth from the bellies of bees. He then said that Prophet

---

748 Ibid., Vol. IV, p. 155; see also ʿUyūn al-Sūd's edition, Vol. IV, p. 117.
749 Ibid., Vol. IV, p. 158; see also ʿUyūn al-Sūd's edition, Vol. IV, p. 119.
750 Ibid., Vol. IV, p. 158; see also ʿUyūn al-Sūd's edition, Vol. IV, p. 119.
751 Ibid., Vol. IV, p. 159; see also ʿUyūn al-Sūd's edition, Vol. IV, p. 120.
Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) was born in the best *bapn* (clan) of the tribe Quraysh. The insider or “belly” of parchment is better for writing on than the reverse or “back”. The cutting edge of a knife is called the “belly”. Treasure and precious stones are found in the “belly” (or the bowel of earth), and so forth. It seems here that al-Jāḥīz plays on words and meaning in order to support his arguments later on.

### 4.5.3.3 The penalty for the fornicator:

Al-Jāḥīz also speaks about the penalty for the fornicator in Islamic law as can be seen in the text of the *risāla*. For example, he tells his addressee: “Do you know that the penalty for the fornicator is eighty lashes so long as he has not married and that the penalty of the homosexual is to be burned. Both of them are immoral acts, foul deeds, sin, and impurity”.\(^{752}\) This statement seems that al-Jāḥīz explained about two different kind of penalty. The first one is about the fornication, and the other is about homosexuality.

We know that fornication is morally the most heinous crime that a person can commit. Therefore, Islam has held fornication as a punishable offence for its own sake, whether it is accompanied by some other offence as the use of violence or encroachment upon somebody else’s legal right, or not. The Qurʾān already said in Sūra al-Nūr (24:2):

\[
الزانية والزاني فلاجلدوا كل واحد منهما ماتة جلدة ولا تأخذكم بهما رأفة في دين الله إنكم تؤمنون بآلهة واليوم الآخر وليشهد عذابهما طائفة من المؤمنين
\]

\(^{752}\)Ibid., Vol. IV, p. 164; see also ʿUyūn al-Sūd’s edition, Vol. IV, p. 123.
(The woman and the man guilty of adultery or fornication, flog each of them with hundred stripes, let not compassion move you in their case, in a matter prescribes by Allah, if ye believe in Allah and the Last Day, and let a party of belivers witness their punishment).

4.5.3.4 The conclusion of the Risāla:

Finally, al-Jāḥiz earnestly expresses his hope that the addressee will mend his ways. He says: “Thus, I have thought to conclude my book with a simple prayer for you to safeguard thereby my reward and recompense. I hope you will repent and return after having been headstrong and obstinate”. Therefore, he hopes: “May God put us among those who behold His guidance, know His way, choose justice and apply it, and reject desire and cast it off”.753

4.5.4 The style of writing:

This risāla is among al-Jāḥiz’s works which can be called as “maṭāsin wa al-masāwi” or “merits and fault” together with the previous risāla. We find that the author records oral debate in which one person praises belly while his interlocutor praises back. As we have said before that for al-Jāḥiz, there is no question that the Qurʾān is the most important sources for use as evidence in the construction of his argument. So, this risāla shows al-Jāḥiz’s Islamic tendency in developing his argument concerning the subject. There are three Qurʾānic verses which had been quoted by the author. The first one is the following verse:

The next one is quoted when the author asserts that when God describing bees, He mentioned that from their bellies comes a honey:

(There comes forth from their bellies, a drink of varying color wherein is healing for men...) Sūra al-Nahl (16:69)

Finally, in connection with God commenced His pronouncement on vice with conspicuous acts of immorality, not inconspicuous, al-Jāḥīẓ quotes this verse:

(But the things that my Lord has forbidden are al-Fawāḥish (great evil sins, every kind of unlawful sexual intercourse etc.) whether committed openly or secretly) Sūra al-A'raf (7:33).

Besides these Qur'ānic quotations, al-Jāḥīẓ quotes also Ḥadīth to strengthen his argument. For instance, al-Jāḥīẓ says that it is a sin for mankind to copulate with their wife in their buttocks according to the reported Ḥadīth. Here, he quotes Ḥadīth in which Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) is reported to have said: (لا تأترا النساء في محاشهن:) which means: “Do not copulate with your wife in their anuses”.754

In short, it should be note that it is stated nowhere that unnamed person actually advocates homosexuality: however, all we know is that he wrote this risāla in praise of

---
backs. As Gelder notes, there are two possibilities can be put toward al-Jāḥīz regarding composition of this risāla: either there was nothing more to it, no question of morals and behaviours but merely a playful rhetorical exercise, performed, however, on the part of al-Jāḥīz, with a mixture of ludicrous arguments and deadpan seriousness. Or al-Jāḥīz earnestly wished to cure his correspondent of what he considers a perversity, but at the same time including some arguments that nobody would take seriously, least of all al-Jāḥīz himself.755

4.6 Risāla fī al-muʿallimin (Risāla on Schoolmasters)

4.6.1 The significance of the Risāla:

As we has been mentioned earlier that it was reported that the Caliph al-Mutawakkil wished to appoint al-Jāḥīz as a tutor to one of his sons, but unfortunately, the Caliph refused to accept him due to al-Jāḥīz’s extraordinary ugliness. By this event, it seems to us that al-Jāḥīz to have been a teacher by profession, and this circumstance, as was describe by Hirschfeld, probably induced him to lay down his tutorial experience in a risāla on “al-Muʿallimin”.756 From this point of view, we can say that al-Jāḥīz spent almost of his life in teaching through his writing. His fame and his al-Bayān wa al-tabyīn and Risāla al-tarbī‘ wa al-tadwīr, which reached Spain, is said to have brought him students from there who studied under him for several years.

755 See Gelder, Jest and earnest in classical Arabic literature, p. 105.
The subject of teachers has been mentioned by the author in his *al-Bayān wa al-tabyīn*. However, according to al-Ibshīhī, al-Jāhīz is said to have wrote a book on teachers, in which he quoted their jokes and anecdotes and criticized them. In Yāqūt’s list of works of al-Jāhīz, there is no mention of the *risāla* which criticizing teachers, however, this *risāla* which has come down to us, al-Jāhīz is more inclined to praise them and defend their profession. Perhaps, al-Jāhīz wrote two works on teachers; one criticizing them and the other praising them, showing ambivalence, which is not unusual with him as he do with other works. In addition, al-Jāhīz seems to us to have been embittered by the disappointment mentioned above as well as unhappy experience in his educational work. It is remarkable to note that within the same tradition that Ibn Shahīd (4th of hijra) was the only author who attacked teachers and wrote against them. However, it seems to us that he is later than the time of al-Jāhīz.

4.6.2 The nature of the *Risāla*:

This *risāla* originally is to be found on the margin of *al-Kāmil* by al-Mubarrad, which according to Najm, it being in disorder and it has not been edited properly. However, in modern days, this *risāla* can be seen in Hārūn’s edition and *Uyun al-Sūd’s* edition with good quality in varying length. The text of *risāla* is divided into eleven portions. The first portion entitled “Fasl min ṣadr kitābih ḍī al-mufallимиn”, the eight

---

portion entitled "Faṣl fī riyaḍa al-ṣubṭ", and ninth portion entitled "Fīdhamm al-liwāf". The other portions only entitled "Faṣl minhu". In 1922, Hirschfield translated extracts from the risāla in his article which has been printed in A Volume of Oriental Studies presented to Edward G. Brown in memory of his 60th birthday.762 In addition, Pellat also translated some portion of the risāla into French, and it is now available in English under following title “Schoolmasters”.763

Najm said that the text of the risāla is by no means the whole work and it appears to be extracts made from the original book of al-Mu'allimūn. We would agree with Najm in this aspect, because we have found that one portion of the risāla has under it no more than the following sentence:764

(And these two poets are pre-Islamic and far from al-tawlīd (modernised language) and safe from al-takalluf (artificiality)).765

This sentence, which comes in separate portion, is put, immediately, after al-Jāḥīz discusses about Ibn al-Muqaffā and al-Khalīl b. Ahmad al-Farahīdī, and criticises them. Najm maintains that this sentence have been cut off from whole chapter on two pre-Islamic poets.766

762 See Hirschfeld, A Volume of Essays by al-Jāḥīz, pp. 200-209. It was also translated into German by O. Rescher, Excerpte und Übersetzungen aus deem Schriften des Gāhib, Stuttgart, 1931.
765 For the other meaning of al-Tawlīd and al-Takalluf, see Wehr, A Dictionary of Modern Written Arabic, p. 837 & p. 1098.
766 Najm, Studies on the writing of al-Jāhib, p. 52.
In addition, we think that some paragraph of the *risāla* has been mixed up with other work of al-Jāḥīz particularly *Risāla fi madh ḥ al-tujjār wa dhāmm ʾamal al-sulṭān* and *Risāla fi tafsīl al-baṭn ʾalā al-ṣadr*. This based on the Pellat’s comment concerning the text of the *risāla* when he admits that the *risāla* was mostly lost. This means that the last surviving part of *risāla* consists of remarks which probably belong to another work. Indeed, by referring to the text, one could consider that the paragraph which discuss about the question of trade and merchants probably been taken from that *risāla*. However, we are agree with Pellat, when he admits that to judge by what survives the loss is regrettable, for the aim of the *risāla* seems to have been influence education in the direction of producing ‘gentlemen’.

4.6.3 The structure of the *Risāla*:

The structure of this *risāla* can be seen as follows:

1. Note on the books and their importance.
2. Digression to *al-Hifẓ* (the memory).
3. Then proceeds to the subject of teachers.
4. Then the author embarks on the problem of children’s education.
5. There are teachers for everything that man needs to know.
6. Followed by a list of subjects thought.
7. Note on homosexuality (sodomy).
8. Note on the importance of Sulṭān.

---

768 Ibid., p. 20.
9. Note on trade and merchants particularly on the Quraysh.

10. The *risāla* ends with note on *Adab*.

4.6.4 Analysis of the main issue and the style of writing:

The content of the *risāla* appears in the guise of refutation directed against a person who attacked teachers a class and used abusive language against them. Therefore, it seems to us that al-Jāḥīz is trying to give them their due rights and to do them justice. The author starts by talking about the books and their importance. Then he digresses into *al-Hiṣż* (memory) in which we find him detested learning by heart which according to him, would paralyse the faculty of thinking and would stifle intelligence. Somewhat earlier in the essay he speaks on the important of writing as a means of communication with absent people, keeping records of past events, and the administration of outlying province by the home department. He then precedes with the main theme of the *risāla*, i.e. the subject of teachers.

4.6.4.1 The *Mu'allim* and *Mu'addib*:

There are several terms designated the teacher: *mu'allim*, *mu'addib*, *mukattib*, etc. *Mu'allim* (teacher) meant one who caused another to acquire *ʿilm*, knowledge. *Mu'addib* (tutor) meant the teacher of *adab*, humanistic studies, discipline of the mind and manner. It is clear that al-Jāḥīz defines these two terms which according to him, *mu'allim* and *mu'addib* are derived from *ʿilm* (knowledge) and *adab* (manner). He states the former
being the root and the latter the branch, but often generalised to include both. *Ilm enables us to distinguish between what is noble and what is base, lawful and unlawful, excessive and fair, and to choose between the better of two good things and the lesser of two evils.\(^{769}\)

Al-Jāḥiz classifies teachers into two categories, according to the class of students they teach and the knowledge they possess. He says: “Teachers, as I believe, are of two grades: among them are men who were raised above the teaching of children of the special. Some were raised from teaching children of the special to that of the children of kings themselves, who are prepared for the caliphate. How you think that one like ʻAlī b. Hamza al-Kisā‘T (d. 189/805) and Muhammad al-Mustanṣir, known as Quṭrub (d. 206/821), and the like, could be describe as fools. This saying is not true on these and the grade below them, but if you mean the teachers of village schools (Katāīb al-qurā), there are lower as well as upper grades in every class. Therefore, they are not different in this from others”.\(^{770}\)

It seems that in his discussion on teachers, al-Jāḥiz distinguishes two grades; in general. In his classification, he seems to take two facts into consideration; the fact that people are mainly of two classes, common and special, and secondly the fact that knowledge of man is an essential factor in raising him up in social estimation.


\(^{770}\)Ibid., Vol. III, p. 34; see also ʻUyūn al-Sūd’s edition, Vol. III, p. 29.
Al-Jāḥīz’s attitude toward a system of education in his time can be divided into two categories: 1) the education of certain special class of people which consisted of all branches of knowledge, whether science, art, sport, games, etc. 2) the education of people in general. It is meant that teaching ordinary people a handcraft by which they could earn their living, in order to become cultivators, builders and tailors, etc. In this context, al-Jāḥīz said that teachers are needed for all subjects which are to be learnt, such as, writing, reckoning, law, the Qur’ān, grammar, prosody, poetry, history, horsemanship, games, astronomy, music, medicine, mathematics, archery, agriculture, commerce, agriculture, jewellery, tailoring, bootmaking, dyeing, bookbinding, training of animals, etc.

Afterwards al-Jāḥīz proceeds to discuss on the children education. For instance he advice to the schoolmasters that a boy should not be taught more grammar than he requires for correct speech in order to avoid solecism and common ignorance in writing, reciting poetry, and making statement. He claims that too much grammar would distract boy attention from better things and more than that prejudice his mind against dialectic and historical matters which are superior.

The same point of view had been mentioned by the author in his Risāla fī ṣināʿat al-quwwād in which the author directed to the Caliph al-Muṭaṣim and he intended to

---

771 See Najm, Studies on the writing of al-Jāḥīz, p. 50.
persuade him to arrange for diversified education of his son. From the text of the *risāla*, for example, after quoting some statements by well-known authorities about the important and the power of speech, al-Jāḥīz comes to the main point: "O Commander of the Faithful, see to it that your sons be instructed in all branches of *adab*, for, it you let them specialize in one thing only, and they are then asked about something else, they will not be able to give good answer." The rest of *risāla* is quotations of some lines of verses in the *ghazal* with representatives of ten other professions such as a physician, a tailor, a farmer, a bath-attendant, a street-sweeper, a wine-merchant, a cook, a valet, and etc. The text, however, maintains its disguise and ends with the formula: "The Caliph laughed so that he fell on his back, then he called in the tutor of his sons and ordered him to instruct them in all sciences."  

Next chapter of *Risāla fi al-mu'allimān*, the author speaks about the degree of intelligence in mankind especially among children. It is important to note here that al-Jāḥīz quotes Qur'ānic verse to support his argument regarding this matter. In this regard, he writes: "Boys, it said, differ as to their degree of intelligence as well of slackness and stupidity. This is alluded to in the Qur'ān." Here, we find him quoted this Qur'ānic verse:  

\[
\text{(And had We appointed him an angel, We indeed would have made him a man)}
\]

\[
\text{Sūra al-Anfām. (6:9).}
\]

---

This verse leads al-Jāḥīz to conclude that: "This is because some persons are more intelligent than others. Allah comes to the aid of boys by causing their intellectual faculties to approach the intellect of accomplished scholars". 777

4.6.4.2 The question of homosexuality:

From the topic of teachers and teaching, we suddenly come across a chapter on the question of homosexuality (al-Liwāt). We think there is no relationship between these two issues. Therefore, according to Najm, this part of risāla is not complete and it has probably been taken from another work.778 We think that it might be from Risāla fitafādīl al-batn ēalā al-ṣadr in which al-Jāḥīz focuses his discussion on this practise. However, the discussion on this subject in Risāla fit al-mu'allimin consists of two paragraphs only. For instance, al-Jāḥīz describes: "The hateful nature of sodomy is revealed in the fact that Allah offers no compensation in hereafter for any desire to neglect propagation in this world, although He promises wine to those who eschew it here (in this world)".779 Here, he quotes this Qur'ānic verse:

لا يصدعون عنها ولا ينزون

(Where from they will get neither any aching of the head, nor any intoxication)
Sūra al-Wāqi'a (56:19).

778 See Najm, Studies on the writing of al-Jāḥīz, p. 53.
He then interprets this verse: “He (Allah) means to convey that the wines of paradise doest not intoxicate, and there is no overcrowding of men with men or women with women”.

Afterwards, al-Jāḥīz tells us about the nature of this group of people as expressed in the Qur’ān that Allah created men and women and placed between them the sources of mutual love and attachment. Allah joined men and women one to another in matrimony, but vice turned their relation upside down.

Then al-Jāḥīz turned back to discussion of the teacher. He mentions that a most eloquent and accomplished teacher was ʿAbdullah b. al-Muqaffā. Moreover, he gives us a full description of the personality of Ibn al-Muqaffā. He describes him as follows: “He was of generous nature and elegant and courteous. When he spoke in poetry, he could vie with a competitor without labouring to improve upon it in any way. He was also circumspect in transmitting the utterances of other persons without disclosing either deceit or trustworthiness”.

4.6.4.3 The important of the Sulṭān:

Next chapter is a shortish account of the important of the sulṭān, who is, according to him, like a shepherd to his people. He states: “Know that the most intelligent person is the sulṭān, and whoever seeks intercourse with him must find the right way to present his

\footnote{Ibid., Vol. III, p. 43; see also ʿUyun al-Sūd’s edition, Vol. III, p. 34.}

\footnote{Ibid., Vol. III, p. 44; see also ʿUyun al-Sūd’s edition, Vol. III, p. 34.}
plea. A monarch’s favour towards his subjects is not more marked than the attachment of an owner to his cattle." 782

4.6.4.4 The question of trade and merchants:

Quite unpredictably, the writer now moves on for next discussion which is on the question of trade and merchants. Concerning this topic, al-Jāḥiz sheds some description on the Quraysh. He claims that the Quraysh are people whom Allah kept free from blemish, but allowed their originally fine constitutions to deteriorate. He then argues that if people knew their high station in commerce, they would notice the difference of their way. According to al-Jāḥiz, the Quraysh were brave and pious, they refrained from rapine and ravishing women, and did not bury their daughters alive, etc. Al-Jāḥiz also mentions that the Qurasyh were travellers and depended on certains seasons and the establishment of cities, they were obliged to work for their living, held the ḥāf and travelled to the kings with their wares. This statement refers to the Qur’ānic verse in which Allah describes the Qurasyh as follows:

(For the covenants (of security and safeguard enjoyed) by the Qurasyh, their covenants (covering) journeys by winter and summer. Let them adore the Lord of this House, who provides them with food against hunger and with security against fear of danger). Sūra Qurasyh, (106:1-4)

The idea of trade and merchants has been discussed by al-Jāḥīz in several occasions of his works. For example, his *Risāla fi madḥ al-tujjūr wa dhamm ṣamal al-sulṭān* which is addressed to a correspondent one of whose friends had spoken in praise of officials. So, al-Jāḥīz wrote this *risāla* in order to praise of tradesman and on the other hand disparagement of officialdom. He pointed out that the Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) is known to have been a trader, and the very name Quraysh is derived from trade (*taqrīb*). As a result, according to Najm, this chapter, together with the above one, is completely out of place. This is because; the reader may wonder why al-Jāḥīz should discuss so many topics in one work, and without any apparent connection between them. However, the reason perhaps, lies in the confusion caused by the selected extracts which were presented in this chapter. In short, we can say that kind of composition represent one of the trademarks of al-Jāḥīz’s writing i.e., *al-Istīrād* in which he switches from topic to topic by simple association of ideas.

The *risāla* at that point moves to its conclusion with the rebuke to bear a pure love for *Adab* in order to draw out its hidden treasures even at the risk of material sacrifices. Here, he quotes these two following Qur’ānic verses:

(O My Lord! Leave me not single (childless), though You are the Best of the inheritors). Sūra al-Anbiyā’ (21:89).

---


Al-Jāḥīz asserts that as a result of this prayer, Allah awarded Prophet Zakariyya a beautiful son. The author then quotes final Qur'ānic verse in this risāla which related to the above mention verse:

(And the male is not like the female). Sūra al-An'ām (4:36).

4.7 Risāla fī tabaqāt al-mughannīn (Classes of Singers)

4.7.1 Background of the Risāla:

This risāla is closely connected with Risāla fī al-qiyān. It is based on the art of song (al-ghinā') in Arabic society particularly in the Abbasid period existed within the group of al-qiyān.785 Yāqūt did not mention this risāla under the list of al-Jāḥīz's work. He only mentions Kitāb al-mughannīn which would be the title of this risāla.786 However, Sandūbī cites two works of al-Jāḥīz, one Kitāb al-mughannīn wa al-ghinā' wa al-sun'ā', and the other Kitāb tabaqāt al-mughannīn.787 Kitāb or Risāla fī tabaqāt al-mughannīn seems to have been one of the rasā'il of al-Jāḥīz which thrown an interesting light on professional grouping. A selected portion of this risāla was published for the first time by Sāsī al-Maghribī and it appeared again in better edition in ʿAbd al-Salām

---

785 It has been said that almost these qayyināt were all foreigners and they sang probably to foreign airs. Some of them came from Persia, or more likely al-Hira, and even Byzantium. See Farmer, The Encyclopedia of Islam, art. Ghuṣnā, Vol. II, pp. 1072-1074.
786 Yāqūt, Muṣjam al-udabā', Vol. XVI, p. 110.
787 Sandūbī, Adab al-Jāḥīz, p. 129.
Muhammad Hārūn collection. The latest edition we have is "Uyūn al-Sūd’s edition." It seems to us that this piece was designed as preface to the original work which indeed not extant. The length of the risāla is in six consecutive pages only with no division other than paragraphs. It starts with the following title: "Fāṣl min ṣadr kitābih fī ṭabaqāt al-mughannīn".

The date of composition of this risāla is very clear when the author himself mentioned the year 215 A.H. where he start writing this work. However, Najm argued that it is possible that al-Jāḥīz wrote the introduction after completing the main work. Pellat, on the other hand claims that al-Jāḥīz has in mind to write a sort of musical almanac for the year 251 A.H., leaving blanks which he will fill in later but which no one else is to be allowed to fill in for him. For this reason, al-Jāḥīz resolves to deposit a copy with someone for safe keeping, but unfortunately the text is lost.

4.7.2 The scheme of the Risāla:

Referring to the text of the risāla, Najm, for instance, divided it into this scheme:

1. To classify singer according to their: a) instruments b) school or method of singing c) peculiarities and d) reputation.

---

790 Najm, Studies on the writing of al-Jāḥīz, p. 40.
791 Pellat, The life and works of Jāḥīz, p. 125.
792 Najm, Studies on the writing of al-Jāḥīz, p. 40.
2. To give each class its name accordingly.

3. To be concerned only with contemporary singers and particularly those who lived in Baghdad.

4. To leave a space after each chapter for new singers who might appear and had not been included or to drop who might lose their reputation as singers by changing their place to the class that befit with them.

5. Not to be partial in judgement and prefer one to other without reason.

4.7.3 Analysis of the main issue in the Risāla:

4.7.3.1 Branches of knowledge:

In the opening chapter, al-Jāhizi talks about branches of knowledge. The old philosophers, according to him, said that the origin of arts from which all sciences had derived, are four namely astronomy, geometry, chemistry and the art of melodies. He claims that the art of melodies contains its parts, syllables, divisions and themes which form harmony. Al-Jāhizi states that he was going to give only the name of these four origins without going into details.\(^{793}\) This point of view can be assumed as a foundation for further study on the field which have been develop by later scholars such as al-Farābī (d. 339/950), Ibn Sīnā (d. 428/1037) and al-Ghazzālī (d. 505/1111).\(^{794}\)


\(^{794}\) Among al-Farābī works is *Kitāb lḥsān al-ṣulūm wa tibrīḥā* (A book on the enumeration and classification of the sciences), twice translated into Latin. *Maqāla fi taqṣīm al-bikmaw wa al-ṣulūm* (Discourse on the classification of the philosophical and other sciences) is among Ibn Sīnā’s works on this field, while al-Ghazzālī through his *Iḥyā’ ʿulūm al-dīn* (The revivification of the religious sciences).
In this preface, al-Jāḥiz delineates a complete scheme for the risāla itself. He does not embark upon a discussion of the subject of singers and their classes as is to be expected from the title of the work, but gives a general idea of the scope of the risāla, its aims, method and style.

4.7.3.2 The science and music:

Al-Jāḥiz discusses about the science and music which he refers to al-Khalīl b. Ahmad al-Farāhīdī (d. 175/791) as founder of Arabic music. He says: “Their knowledge of it was intuitive or based on Persian or Pahlavi traditions, until al-Khalīl b. Ahmad al-Farāhīdī made a study of poetry and its cadence and scansion, identified and classified the various metres used by Arabs, and collected them together in a book which he entitled al-‘Ardā". 795 He continues: “When he had mastered and perfected this branch of knowledge, he set to work to analyses melodies and musical sounds; and after that some trial and error he established rules, which his successor adopted and elaborated”. 796

The author next refers to the writing of Ishāq al-Mawṣili (d. 235/850), who according to him, was better equipped than al-Khalīl b. Ahmad al-Farāhīdī, and to many musicians who came after him. He proceeds, however, to discuss the history of music beginning with Islamic times.

Al-Jāḥīz also mentions one particular type of singers who made repentance namely Ṣāliḥ b. Abī Ṣāliḥ, Ahmad b. Sallām and Ṣāliḥ Mawla Rashīda. However, one understands that this respect and admiration for the class of singer made al-Jāḥīz, as he says, devote a whole work to them.

4.7.4 The style of writing

A study of this risāla gives us indication of the character of the original work on al-Mughannīn for which it was presumably designed as an introduction. Concerning the style of writing of this risāla, as was described by the author himself, is to mix between seriousness with jest, particularising with hinting. The text of the risāla starts without traditional preamble as has been used by al-Jāḥīz in other work. In addition, there is no quotation from the Qur’ān, Ḥadīth, poetry or proverbs except a few anecdotes. The rest of paragraphs run on the normal type of al-Jāḥīz’s style of writing including the used of al-Istīrād. It it found also that all his arguments begin with ‘they say’, ‘they said’, he say’, etc. Therefore, one cannot be sure whether al-Jāḥīz agrees with what ‘they said’ or not.

---

4.8 Risāla fī dhamm al-kuttāb (An attack on Secretaries).

4.8.1 Background and the significance of the Risāla:

It is reported that the Kātib (Secretary) were considered next to kings in his value and position. This post is the first official profession al-Jāḥiz is known to practised during al-Ma’mūn reign, however, he resigned after three days. The Kuttāb had a great influence on the culture and the whole literature of Islamic society. Their high position in the Abbasid court gave them great privilege over the fields of knowledge, whether in the court or outside it. Before al-Jāḥiz, ʿAbd al-Ḥamīd al-Kātib already wrote a risāla addressed to secretaries. Then, Ibn Qutayba’s Adab al-kātib, was the first of several similar works on correct linguistic usage, and followed by Adab al-kuttāb, the work of Abū Bakr al-Ṣūlī.

Due to the importance of this job, al-Jāḥiz offers his view concerning those people who are working as Kuttāb. Yāqūt mentioned two works of al-Jāḥiz concerning al-Kuttāb, one criticising them “Kitāb risālatih fī dhamm al-kuttāb” and the other praising.

798 Kātib (pl. Kuttāb) or in English is secretary. This term was used in the early Islamic century for every person whose role or function consisted of writing or drafting official letters or administrative documents for the caliphate and for those of its provincial successor states. For more information on the development of this job in the classical era, see The Encyclopedia of Islam, art. Kātib, Vol. IV, pp. 754-760; see also, Encyclopedia of Arabic literature, art. Secretaries, Vol. II, p. 698. On the other hand, Najm suggests ‘the clerks’ is the best term for the Kuttāb. See Najm, Studies on the writing of al-Jāḥiz, p. 131. On contrary, Hutchins thinks of the attorney of modern times as being similar to the Arab institution of Kātib. See Hutchins, Nine Essays of al-Jāḥiz, p. 6.

799 Yāqūt, Muqarn al-dabābī, Vol. XVI, p. 79.


them “Kitāb risālatih fī madḥ al-kuttāb”. This is to show the author’s ambivalence concerning the issue which is not unusual with him. In other words, it shows us the author double-minded i.e. praising and at the same time condemning various groups of people. However, only the first is survived in which al-Jāḥiz more inclined in criticised them. One may assume that al-Jāḥiz writes this risāla as a result of his anger over this group of people particularly when he resigned from this post after three days of his appointment. In addition, it was reported that al-Mutawakkil was unhappy with some of his Kutṭāb who are working with him in several department. For instance, he replaces ‘Ubaydullah b. Yahyā b. Khāqān instead of Muhammad b. al-Faḍl at Dīwān al-tawqī and he also appointed Mūsā b. ʿAbd al-Malik b. Hishām as Kāṭib at Dīwān al-Kharāj instead of Najāḥ b. Salama, etc. As a result of this situation, al-Jāḥiz writes this risāla to show his support toward the caliph’s policy. Thus, we can say also that the risāla is combination of ethical and political issue and is written in the period of al-Mutawakkil (r. 232/847–247/861).

The text of the risāla can be found in Ḥārūn’s and ʿUyūn al-Sūd’s collection under the heading “Kitāb fī dhamm akhlāq al-kuttāb” with varying length. There is no division of the text other than paragraphs. The risāla is also available in English under following title “Censure of the Conduct of Secretaries”. Therefore, the study of the text of the risāla will be based on the Ḥārūn’s and ʿUyūn al-Sūd’s collection, and all English quotations in the text relating to the risāla are from Hutchins’s translation.

4.8.2 Analysis of the *risāla*:

Al-Jāḥīz regrets the fact that the class of official *kuttāb* of his time were preoccupied with false education and appearances, following the Persian example in extravagance so much, so that they hated and despised everything Arabic, even the learning of the Qur’ān, which is according to al-Jāḥīz, the best example of the language. This is clearly stated when al-Jāḥīz argued: “What do you think of a group among whom was the first apostate from Islam?” He then says: “Part of proof for that is no *kātib* (secretary) has ever been seen to make the Qur’ān his evening companion, its study his exegesis, gaining knowledge of religion his emblem, or memorizing reports of the Prophet’s words and deeds his prop. If one of them is found to mention some of that he does it awkwardly and there is no grace to it when it comes from him”.\footnote{1804} More than that, al-Jāḥīz says, it would be impossible for him to pronounce it properly. It seems here that the *kuttāb*, who were a mixture of Arabs and non-Arabs, especially Persians, were adopting new styles, whether in manners, appearance or writing. This is, according to Najm, caused the criticism of al-Jāḥīz.\footnote{1805}

For example, al-Jāḥīz points out their vanity about Persian culture, saying that as soon as anyone of them is appointed and learns a few anecdotes and saying of Buzurgemhr, Ardashir, ʿAbd al-Ḥamīd al-Kātib or Ibn al-Muqaffaʾ and holds the books of Mazdak as a basic knowledge and *Kalīla wa Dimna* his treasure, he feels as if he became capable of knowing everything.

\footnotetext[1805]{1805} Najm, *Studies on the writing of al-Jāḥīz*, p. 132.
In his attack, al-Jāḥiz seems to reject not only the social manners of the Kuttāb of his time, but also their school of thought who was distinguished in connection with official writing letters and administrative works. Al-Jāḥiz, however, did not deny the good qualities of their merits. It seems that his attack was not directed against individuals, but against the whole class of Kuttāb, their culture, way of thinking and manners. For example, al-Jāḥiz says that the relation of the Kuttāb with the Caliph finished with them, he got rid of them. Away from their own field, al-Jāḥiz says, they worth nothing, they are at the same level with the common people. Besides their own profession, they can do nothing, because it is not suitable for any of them to be anything else, after having been a Kuttāb. They may enjoy a good influence among the special people, al-Jāḥiz says, but they hate each other. In addition, al-Jāḥiz quotes other theologians who criticised the superficial knowledge of the Kuttāb. 806

As for Islamic culture and traditional knowledge, al-Jāḥiz says, they despised it and put it behind their backs. They never approached the Qurʾān or tried to quote it. If anyone of them tried to learn it, the rest of his class would despised him, but even if he could learn it, al-Jāḥiz says, it would be impossible for him to pronounce it properly. 807

The closing section of the risāla ends with al-Jāḥiz point of view concerning this group of people. He says: “Had we related all the stories of this type and all those analogous and similar, the work would have become long and wearied the sympathetic

reader. We have limited ourselves to a portion of the material, to part in place of the whole”. 808

4.9 Conclusion:

As we have seen above that this is a part of the rasā‘il of al-Jāḥiz which can be considered as an essay on the questions of social groups and emotion. All these rasā‘il have been the object of our extensive analysis. Al-Jāḥiz displays his remarkable talent for human observation, for instance, his observation on certain issues in social life of the Abbasid society. In addition, as we have seen in this chapter, the author has a critical approach to evaluate his idea in all circumstances and mix together with other elements such al-Qur‘ān and Ḥadīth, etc.

Through all these works, it is the most helpful in revealing a side of al-Jāḥiz’s interests in the social issue of his time. Risāla fī al-qiyān and Risāla fī tābaqāt al-mughannān, for instance, shows us that al-Jāḥiz highlights the social problems arises particularly after the Abbasid’s era saw the centre of musical life which was transferred from the Ịjījāz. As a result, the Qiyān or professional musicians’ amateurs appeared which could cause ravages among her admirers among the people in the Abbasid society, as al-Mbīz recorded. In addition, these two risāla also shows that al-Jāḥiz was the first writer who began to record the custom of celebrating festive occasions. The author, for instance, showed his interest in recording the daily life of professionals, artisans and etc. On the other hand, it cannot be denied also that in this group of the rasā‘il, the author

presents a systematic argument against other people or parties. This is clear, for instance, in his *Risāla fi dhamm al-kuttāb* where al-Jāhiz denounces them for their arrogance, their reliance on Persian lore and precedent and their contempt for the Qurʾān and so forth.

On the subject of women, we find that al-Jāhiz’s attitude towards the question of women is not merely that of an observer or reporter, but also of a critic. This aspect can be seen clearly in the text of *Risāla fi wa al-nisā‘*. Through this *risāla*, al-Jāhiz provides us with numerous insights into the social lives of women. The significance of this *risāla* emerges from the fact that almost half of what history should discuss is left out concerning this group that represents half of any society.

Moreover, some other social phenomena such sodomy and adultery can be found in *Risāla fi musākharat al-jawārī wa al-ghilmān*, *Risāla fi tafsīl al-baḥn ʿalā al-ẓahr* and part of *Risāla fi al-muʿallimān*. Through these *rasāʾil*, al-Jāhiz does not fail to portray social manners in the Abbasid life in his time. In some case, al-Jāhiz claims that there was another person who involved him in the argument, in order to create another side to stand for the opposite point of view. This is obvious from an analysis on *Risāla fi musākharat al-jawārī wa al-ghilmān* and *Risāla fi tafsīl al-baḥn ʿalā al-ẓahr*. In short, we can say that it would be difficult to find anywhere in classical Arabic prose literature a more vivid picture of social environment than we find in the work of al-Jāhiz. In addition, his examples in giving the groups of professions a special place in Arabic literature, was followed by later writers, who showed the same interest. For instance, in the fourth/tenth
century, writers like al-Tha'ālibī and al-Tanūkhī quote al-Jāḥiz in various occasion on themes pertaining to professional groups, classes and other characteristics of people.
CHAPTER FIVE

THE RASĀ'IL CONCERNING THE
SEMI-THEOLOGY ISSUES

5.1 Introduction:

The main purpose of this part is to cast light on the rasā'il of al-Jāḥiz concerning
the semi-theology issues which mainly related to an account of Muʿtazilite doctrine. As
it has been mentioned earlier in this thesis that although Muʿtazilite scholars had
written many works about Muʿtazila were lost, but some of the material concerning this
school of thought could be found in al-Jāḥiz's works.

MaMur describes the works of al-Jdbiz on Muʿtazilite ideology as a kind of
substitute for the lost works of other scholars of the Muʿtazila. For instance, from the
rasā'il of al-Jāḥiz concerning the doctrine of Muʿtazila, we shall see a vivid picture of the

809 The word 'semi' means half, partly or almost. However, the usage of this word in designations of
heresies, sect, and school of thought, expressing partial adherence to the tenets or theories connected by the
second element of the compound. For detailed linguistic usage of 'semi', see Simpson, The Oxford
English Dictionary, Vol. XIV, pp. 944-950. The word 'theology' refers to the rational analysis of a
religious faith or a system of theoretical principle, especially an impractical or rigid ideology. Whilst, the
term 'Islamic theology' is defined by al-Ghazzālī as only the study of God; it has four main topics: the
existence and basic nature of God, His attributes, His works and His prophet Muhammad together with his
teachings concerning God and eschatological matters. For the term 'theology' see The Concise Oxford
Dictionary of Current English, p. 1266; and for 'Islamic theology' see Abū Ḥamīd al-Ghazzālī, al-Iqtiṣād fi
al-fiqād, Maktabat al-Ḥusayn al-Tijāriyya, Cairo, undated, pp. 3-4.

810 Please refer to the Chapter one of this thesis, p. 44.

Mu'tazila theological arguments and discussions represented in his writing. Based on this point of view, this part of the thesis will highlight some of these elements from the selected rasā'il of al-Jāḥīz.

When describing the Muṭṣazila, Watt obviously describes it, in some sense, as the school of rational or liberal theologian and they seemed to be closer to the occidental outlook. Because of this reason, it attracts the attention of European scholars during the nineteenth century. From this point of view, it would better to bear in mind that it is not our aim in this thesis to prove that al-Jāḥīz was a Muṭṣazilī thinker, nor is it not our purpose to look at the reasons why many of the Muṭṣazila views were rejected by the main body of Sunnite Muslims. On the contrary, our aim is only to elaborate al-Jāḥīz’s perspective concerning the issues, which relates to the Abbasid society at his time and at the same time to shed some light on al-Jāḥīz’s contribution to Islamic thought.

Pellat listed nine rasā'il of al-Jāḥīz concerning the subject of Muṭṣazila’s doctrine, which in some extent contains the meaning of semi-theology or semi-religious. However, this thesis offers only three rasāla for extensive reading and analysis in the hope of gaining some insight into al-Jāḥīz’s school of thought in general. The works to be treated in this section are; Risāla fi ḥujaj al-nubuwwa, Risāla fi al-radd ʾalā al-mushabbiha and Risāla fi al-shāriḥ wa al-mashrūb. It is important to note here that Risāla fi madh al-nabīḥ will be taken for discussion in connection with Risāla fi al-

---

whilst, Risāla fī nafy al-tashbīḥ will be discussed together with Risāla fī al-radd ʾalā al-mushabbiha because this two works are on the same subject.

5.2 Risāla fī ḥujaj al-nubuwwa (Proofs of Prophecy):

5.2.1 The significance of the Risāla:

Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) was born on Monday 12th Rabī’ al-Awwal (2nd August 570 A.D.), at Mecca, to the noble family of the Quraysh. When he forty years old, he received al-Wābih (the Divine call), this was when he was in his retreat in Hira’ cave. It was the first Revelation and the beginning of the prophethood of Muhammad and he became the Prophet of Islam. However, Islamic history told us that some people did not accept his nubuwwa (prophecy), but the triumph of Islam at Medina, followed by the conquest of Mecca, put an end to such reservation.

There are several Muslims authors who have written interesting works concerning the subject of nubuwwa and its distinctive signs particularly writers from the Abbasid era when most Muslim’s scholars are at the time get in touch with the Greek philosopher.

815 Nubuwwa is derived from word Nabī (Prophet) and distinctive signs i.e. (al-mustū, dalā’il, imārāt al-nubuwwa). See The Encyclopedia of Islam, art. Nubuwwa, Vol. VIII, pp. 93-96.
817 There are some work which had been written by later Muslim authors on the subject of Nubuwwa (prophecy), for instance, Kitāb dalā’il al-nubuwwa by Abū Naʿīm Ahmad b. Abdullah al-Aṣbahānī (d. 430 A.H.) and Kitāb dalā’il al-nubuwwa by Abū Bakr Ahmad b. al-Husayn al-Bayhaqī (d. 458/1066). However, both books were not survived. The only work of al-Mawardī (d. 450/1058), Kitāb dīlān al-nubuwwa and ‘Iṣnāmat al-anbiyyā’ by Fakhr al-Dīn al-Rāzī (d. 606/1209), was survived. See Hajji Khalīfa, Kashf al-zunūn, Vol. I, p. 760. For detailed view on the prophecy in Islam, see F. Rahman, Prophecy in Islam, George Allen & Unwin Ltd, London, 1958; see also The Encyclopedia of Islam, art. Nubuwwa, Vol. VIII, pp. 93-96.
Al-Jāḥīz, for instance, as a famous Muʿtazila's scholar at the time, had contributed some of his work on the subject especially concerning the distinctive signs of Muhammad's prophecy. Referring to Yāqūt's list of the work of al-Jāḥīz, there are two works of this author which related to subject of nubuwwa namely Risāla fi al-nabī wa al-mutanabbiʿ and Risāla fi ḥujaj al-nubuwwa. However, as far as we are aware, only the latter had survived which will be the main subject for this extensive study.

The significance of the Risāla fi ḥujaj al-nubuwwa lies in the fact that it constitutes a central point at the subject matter which the author elaborates the reasons (Ḥujaj) of the nubuwwa as we shall see later on. In addition, it can be said that this risāla, which presented here is one of the earliest works on the subject from the Muʿtazila's perspective and is among the best study on the subject of nubuwwa as described by al-Ḥājirī.

5.2.2 The title of the Risāla:

Al-Jāḥīz had already mentioned in two occasions in his al-Ḥayawān regarding the title of this work which seems to be the same as the risāla under discussion here. The first one is in his introduction, when he named as Kitāb al-ḥujjja fī tathbī al-nubuwwa and, in other occasion, he named it only as Kitāb al-ḥujja. However, in later tradition, Ibn

---

819 Al-Ḥājirī, al-Jāḥīz baydār wa āḥārūh, p. 316.
821 The title of the risāla has been mentioned by al-Jāḥīz when he writes about the story from the Qurʾān concerning the elephant and the Abābīl (flight) of birds in Sūra al-Fil (105: 3). See al-Jāḥīz, al-İkhyawān, Vol. VII, p. 61.
Rawandi, one of al-Jahiz’s opponents, claimed that al-Jahiz wrote the book on prophecy, which he called it as al-Akhbaar wa ithbāt al-nubuwwa. Afterwards, al-Murtada in his al-Munya wa al-amal named it as Kitāb fi ithbāt al-nubuwwa. Yaqūt, on the other hand, is the only scholar mentions in his list of the works of al-Jahiz which he called it as Kitāb al-Ḥujr wa al-nubuwwa. However, in modern times, al-Ḥajiri for example, assumes that both al-Murtaḍā and Yaqūt are mistaken when they mentioned about the works of al-Jahiz. He suggests that the correct reading of the title is Kitāb al-Ḥujja fi tathbīt al-nubuwwa.

Pellat and Brockelmann, on the other hand, only named this risāla as Kitāb Ḥujja (ḥujaj) al-nubuwwa. Nevertheless, by referring to Sandūbi’s list of al-Jahiz’s work, we find that there are two works of al-Jahiz on this subject matter with different titles. The first one is Kitāb al-Ḥujjah fi tathbīt al-nubuwwa and the other is Kitāb al-Ḥajr wa al-nubuwwa. In this case, we assume that Sandūbi is seemingly thinks that this two works are on the different subject.

5.2.3 The text of the Risāla:

The text of risāla is divided into eighteen portions. The first portion entitled “Faṣl min ṣadr kitābih fi Ḥujaj al-nubuwwa”, followed by the second portion entitled “Faṣl...”

---

822 Al-Khayyāṭ, al-Intisār wa al-radd, p.111.
823 Al-Murtaḍā, al-Munya wa al-Amal, p. 162.
825 Al-Ḥajiri, al-Jāḥīz kayrūh wa āthārūh, p. 316.
826 Ibid., p. 317.
828 Sandūbi, Adab al-Jāḥīz, p. 129.
minhu fi al-iḥtiyāj li al-jamʿ "alā qirāʿā Zayd". The last portion comes with the heading "Fusl fi dhiqr aklāq al-Nabī (p.b.u.h.)". Selected part of this risāla has been translated in Pellat’s book under the title “Proofs of prophecy”. Now, the risāla is available in English under the heading “On the Prophet’s Authenticity”. Therefore, the study of the text of the risāla will be based on the Hārūn’s and ʿUyūn al-Sūd’s collection, and for translation of the text I will rely on Colville’s translation.

5.2.4 The time of composition.

It is very difficult to decide the precise date concerning the time of composition of the risāla. In modern times, al-Ḥājirī and El-ʿAttār are the only scholars of al-Jāḥiz who have discussed this matter in their work. For example, we find that al-Ḥājirī recorded the title of the risāla among al-Raʾīz’s works that had been written between the year 233 A.H. which is the date of Ibn al-Zayyāt’s death and the year 236 A.H. which was the date ʿUbaydullah b. Yaḥyā b. Khāqān had been appointed as a vizier. In contrast, El-ʿAttār puts the title of the risāla with other works of al-Jāḥiz in al-Mutawakkil’s third period, where this era is known as the Orthodox and Sunni policy of al-Mutawakkil and the decline of İʿtizāl. This period stretched from the year 237 A.H. until 247 A.H. Therefore, based on these two statements, the best thing that can be said regarding this

---

830 Colville, Sobriety and Mirth, pp. 101-131.
831 According to al-Ḥājirī, Kitāb al-futūḥ, Kitāb naẓn al-Qurʾān, Kitāb masāʿ il al-Qurʾān, Risāla fi al-maʿāli was al-maʿāsh, Risāla fi al-radd ʿalā al-mushabbih, and etc. is another works of al-Jāḥiz that has been written in this period. See al-Ḥājirī, al-Jāḥīz ḥayān was ṣāḥān, pp. 311-339.
832 El-ʿAttār claims that Risāla fi al-radd ʿalā al-Naṣṣāh, Risāla fi manṣiq al-Turk and Risāla fi al-akhbār wa kaṭf taṣbīh are another works of al-Jāḥiz that has been written at this time limit. See El-ʿAttār, The Political Thought of al-Jāḥiz, pp. 387-395.
matter is to put it in some place in the Baghdad era where al-Jāḥiẓ wrote almost of his works.

5.2.5 Outline of the Risāla:

The following outline of the content of the risāla should give us a clear idea of its design:

1. The topic and scope of the risāla.
2. The definition of the "Hujja".
3. The reason why the earlier generation forgot to write about the proof of the prophecy.
4. The reason why Allah may have distracted the first generation to collect the proof of prophecy in order to test prosperity of later generation.
5. The first generation prefer to have verification in the science of the Qurʾān rather than collecting the proof of prophecy.
6. The requisite of collecting the proof of the prophecy.
7. The aim of collecting of the proof of the prophecy.
8. The use of mind is not the only way to receive knowledge.
9. The reason why Allah sending his prophets to the people?
10. List of the evidences for prophecy:
   a. The unconditional fulfilment of his prayer (al-Duʿāʾ al-mustajab)
   b. The prophethood of Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) was foretold in ancient scriptures.
   c. The Arabs cannot resistance with the Qurʾān.
c. The Unique combination of morality and works of the Prophet Muhammad.

11. Conclusion.

5.2.6 Analysis of the main issue in the Risāla:

In his introduction to the risāla, al-Jāḥiz enumerates the issues that he would like to highlight in this work such as the differences between the proof (Hujja) and the doubt, the proofs of prophecy, the types and the need of traditions, men manners, prophets traditions, and reason of spreading traditions, etc. 833

Firstly of all, al-Jāḥiz stresses on the topic of the risāla when he says as follows: “As I sorted the mass of data at my disposal, I kept in mind the argument for the Prophet’s authenticity – that is, his sign, edicts and practice. I arranged the traditions in term of importance and summarised them in a clear and straightforward manner, so that the man who has heard little and whose memory is poor might achieve, by means of rational argument and compelling evidence, the same level of understanding as one who has read much and whose memory is good”. 834 Secondly, according to al-Jāḥiz, there are two kinds of evidence, first-hand eyewitness and second, authentic reports. 835

5.2.6.1 The proofs and signs of Nubuwwa:

When arranging and classifying evidences (al-Ak̄hbār), al-Jāḥiz clearly stated that he wants to mention the proofs and the signs of the Prophet. From this point, he goes further to elaborate the reason why the earlier generation did not collect together the proofs of the prophecy. He claims that: "The first generation of Muslims collected the Qurʾān in book form— it having previously existed only as fragment in men’s memories—and established the position of Zayd b. Thābit recensions as canonical where, before, there had been no standard text... Had they also collected the evidence, sign and proofs of the Prophet’s authenticity and accounts of the wonders he performed in the course of his daily life as well as his sermons before great congregations of such number that none but a fool or fanatic would doubt the accounts". 

The author admits that there are two reasons why earlier generation forget to collect evidence of the prophecy. Firstly, is to test the posterity of later generation. Concerning to this matter, he writes: “Of course, Allah may have occasionally distracted the first generation by causing them to forget, or whatever, in order to test posterity and give later opportunity to show their obedience to Him by defending His faith and championing His Prophet”. 

And another reason is that they were busy with learning and collecting al-Qirāʾāt (the different style of reading of the Qurʾān). Al-Jāḥiz says: “By virtue of God’s grace

and their own intelligence, the first Muslims (earlier generation) that they had to protect the text (the Qur’ān) from confusion and the odd counterfeit letter and word”.

Because of this, al-Jāḥiz suggests to put the importance of collecting the proofs of nubuwwa is in the same level with the collecting of the Qira’āt. The main objective of this collection as the author argued is: “Once they have been arranged systemically in one place, someone who is unable or unwilling to collect them himself from the various sources, who has difficulty with the language employed or who is unaware of where to locate them may be encouraged to study and understand them”.

Afterwards, al-Jāḥiz goes on to tell us the reason why Allah has sent His Messenger to mankind. According to al-Ribāz, the reason is that “Allah created men imperfect and unable to act in their own interests. His design was for mankind to worship Him. But, He has not burdened men beyond their abilities and He has given them free rein to hope. He sent His prophets and apostle among them”.

From this point of view, al-Jāḥiz goes further to discuss the differences between men’s character. He found that these differences were due to the types of their works. He writes: “There is something that makes each professional group particularly satisfied with the trade it practices. The weaver, noticing a defect in a colleague’s work, will call him a barber, while the barber, pointing out a colleague’s shoddy work, will describe him as a weaver! For this reason, tradesmen are usually keen to see their sons follow them into the

839 Ibid., Vol. III, p. 239; see also ‘Uyūn al-Sūd’s edition, Vol. III, p. 184
same trade". And as a result, al-Jāḥiz emphasises that Allah created men differently in order to unite them.

He then relates the creation of men and their relationship with homeland. He states that: “if marsh-dwellers were exiled to the desert, plainsmen to the mountains, highlanders to the coast and nomad to the towns, the hearts of each would dissolve in sorrow and their lives descend into stripe. The love of homeland is said to be inherent in everyone”.

5.2.6.2. The author theology doctrine:

From the above point of view, al-Jāḥiz employs part of the risāla to provide his readers some of his Mu'tazilite doctrine, for example he says: “A man may be compelled to do one thing but have free choice with regard to another. Even in the absence of the divine command and prohibition, it would be possible for men to be drawn to the subtle and the sublime, the esoteric and the evident”.

Al-Jāḥiz’s main purpose from all of these statements is: “to enable you to see how a large number of men could not simultaneously conspire to fabricate a report”. Because of this, he claims that: “he will discuss further the matter of human similarity
and diversity and show how, in certain crucial respects, diversity secures the welfare of mankind and allows the authenticity of reports to be established.\textsuperscript{844}

Afterwards, al-Jāḥīz gives two more examples about human similarity. Firstly, between the merchant and the consumer, both of them are in cohesion in buying and selling, which according to al-Jāḥīz, where there is commerce there are profits for all and where there are profits there is social cohesion. Secondly, al-Jāḥīz’s illustration of the diversity of human nature and instinct is that in eating food. According to him, if the desires of each person happened to coincide, there would be an outbreak of bad manners, bickering and rash initiatives.\textsuperscript{845}

Al-Jāḥīz again returns to the point that human needs to listen to and relates news reports and traditions particularly to the strange reports and traditions. Here, he gives us detail information about the reports and tradition. For example, he said that men have an innate to speak of uncommon events and a predisposition to tell of epic deeds but are no more likely to recount the instructive and good than they are to relate the vicious and bad and etc.\textsuperscript{846}

5.2.6.3 Evidence of Nubuwwa:

Finally, we find that al-Jāḥīz had listed a several proofs or evidences of nubuwwa. First of all, he said that the Prophet Muhammad is afforded by his foretelling the future

and his appeals to Allah were answered. Here, al-Jāḥīz gives the example, particularly when both Quraysh and the Bedouin has rejected Prophet Muhammad’s prophecy and mobilised men and material against him, he beseeched Allah to make them barren their lands and poverty enter their home, so Allah withheld rain and the palm trees died, the dates disappeared, the crops withered and the cattle perished. 847

The second proof and evidence of nubūwwa is that the prophethood of Muhammad was foretold in ancient scriptures such as the Tawrat (Old Testament/Pentateuch), the Injīl (New Testament/Gospels), and the Zabūr (Psalms). For example, he said, if we refer to both Old Testament and New Testament, we find references which speak of the coming of the Last Messenger of Allah on the earth. 848

Concerning to this matter, al-Jāḥīz writes: “By observing that Syrian Christians and Jews who convert to Islam give the same reason as Iraqi Christian and Jews who convert. The same applies to converts from the Ḥijāz and the Yemen, without any collusion or prior acquaintance. These men could not have met or corresponded since not only do they not know each other but they are unaware of one another’s existence”. 849

The third proof of nubūwwa is that the Arabs cannot resistant with the Qur’ān which has been revealed to the Prophet Muhammad which according to al-Jāḥīz was uniquely gifted with one exceptional sign. He further added that it is impossible to accept

848 Similar prophecies are also found in Indian religious books as well as Persian (Iranian) books. For further information on the external and internal evidence of the prophethood, see Encyclopaedia of Seera, art. Proof of His Prophethood, Vol. I, pp. 141-159.
and absurd that Qurasyh with their intelligent, sharp and perceptive men, were lost for words in fighting against the Qur’ān and the Prophet Muhammad. Al-Jāḥīz explains: “what foiled them (Quraysh) was the same thing that foiled Ibn Abī al-Awā’, Ishāq b. Ṭālūt, al-Nu‘mān b. al-Mundhir and others who bartered honour with for disgrace, faith for unbelief, happiness for misery, and certainty for doubt”.  

After all, al-Jāḥīz records the last proof of nubuwwa i.e. the unique combination of morality and works of Prophet Muhammad, which has never been found in one man before or since. As for the conclusion al-Jāḥīz states: “To my knowledge, no men ever had such remarkable upbringing or possessed such patience, composure, good faith, piety, honesty, generosity, courage, humility, understanding, recollection, serenity, eloquence, forgiveness, consistency, stability and self-sufficiency as Muhammad”.

5.2.7 Analysis of the use of the Qur’ān and Ḥadīth in the text:

The Qur’ān is the primary and most reable source for any event in the Prophet’s life to which makes reference, since it transmitted through the centuries in unchanged form. Therefore, one can observed that al-Jāḥīz used several verses from the Qur’ān to support and strengthen his case. For instance, al-Jāḥīz records three Qur’ānic verses in the explanation of the scope of the risāla. The first one is from Sūra al-Tawba (9:33), when the Qur’ān said:

\[...\]

\[...\]

---


“It is He Who has sent His Messenger (Muhammad) with guidance and the religion of truth (Islam), to make it superior over all religion even though the Mushrikūn (polytheist, pagans, idolaters, disbelievers in the Oneness of Allah etc.) hate (it)”.

His comment is: “The most basic level on which to prevail is in debate against those who resist of God”.

He then quotes the second verse from Sūra al-Ṣaf (61:8):

"They intend to put out the Light of Allah (i.e the Religion of Islam, this Qur'an, and Prophet Muhammad) with their mouths. But Allah will complete His Light even though the disbelievers hate (it)”.

He continues that God has announced that He has commanded all races of men, near and far, and said to His prophet (Muhammad) (Sūra Saba’), (34:28):

“And We have not sent you (O Muhammad) except as a giver of glad tidings and a warner to all mankind”.

This verse from Sūra al-Nisā’ (4:165) was cited when al-Jāḥīz speaks about the reason of sending the prophets to mankind.

“…in order that mankind should have no plea against Allah after Messengers…”

The love of homeland is said to be inherent in everyone. For example, he said that if marsh-dwellers were exiled to the desert, plainsmen to the mountains, highlanders to the coast and nomads to the town, the hearts of each would dissolve in sorrow and their
lives descend strife. Here, al-Jāḥīz cited this verse from Sūra al-Nisā’ (4:66) to support his view:

ونَ دَعَاهُم مِّن خَيْرِهِمْ أَن يَفْتَرَّوا أَن فِسَامَةً أَوْ أَخْرَجُوا مِن دِيَارَهُمْ إِلَّا قَلِيلٌ مِّنْهُمْ

“And if We had ordered them (saying), "Kill yourselves (i.e. the innocent ones kill the guilty ones) or leave your homes," very few of them would done it.”

He comments: “God compared the attachment to one’s homeland with attachment to life itself”.

The Prophet was very often rejected, opposed and ridiculed by unbelievers. Al-Jāḥīz tells us that Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) once wrote to Chosroes (Kisrā), inviting him to salvation and to renounce his unbelief. He quotes this verse from Sūra al-Tawba (9:33):

هو الذي أرسل رسوله بالهدى ودين الحق ليظهره على الدين كله، ولو كره المشركون

“It is He who hath sent His Messenger with guidance and the religion of truth, to proclaim it over all religion, even though the pagans may detest”.

He then comments: “It is not enough that this religion be proclaimed without Muslims holding supreme power and receiving tribute”.

The Prophet was very eager for all the unbelievers to accept his faith and was often grieved at their rejection of him. Al-Jāḥīz proves this matter of the fact by offering some quotation of the Qur’ānic verses such as:

---

852 The same verse can be seen also in Sūra al-Ṣaf (61:9) and in Sūra al-Fath (48:28) ends with this verse (وَكَتَبَ نَبِيُّ اللَّهُ).
“Makke for us a god as they have gods” Sūra al-Aʿrāf. (7:138).


“So go you and your Lord and fight you two, we are sitting right here”. Sūra al-Mā‘ida (5:240).

“And when Our Verses (of the Qurʾān) are recited to them, they say:” We have heard this (the Qurʾān); if we wish we can say the like of this”. Sūra al-Anfāl (8:31).

“And those who disbelieve say:” why is not the Qurʾān revealed to him all at once?” Sūra al-Furqān. (25:32).

"And when Our Clear Verses are recited unto them, those who hope not for their meeting with Us, say: Bring us a Qurʾān other than this, or change it. Sūra Yūnus. (10:15).

Beside these Qurʾānic verses, the author quotes also several Ḥadīth which related to the same issue. For instance, when both Quraysh and the Bedouin had rejected nubuwwa of Muhammad and mobilised men and material against him, the Prophet
beseeched God to make barren their lands and poverty enter their home. Here, al-Jāḥīz quoted this Ḥadīth in which Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) is reported as saying:\textsuperscript{853}

\[\text{اللهم بسـين كـسـني يوسف } \text{ اللهم أشدد وطلـك على مضر } \]

"O Allah, afflict them with years (of famine) similar to the (famine) years of the time of Prophet Yūsuf. O Allah, Be very hard on Muḍar tribe".

As a result, al-Jāḥīz continues: "So, God withheld rain and the palm-trees died, the dates disappeared, the crops withered and the cattle perished. People were reduced to eating hide and a broth of camel blood, hair and fleas".\textsuperscript{854}

According to al-Jāḥīz, the Prophet, in his mercy, relented and appeal to God to send rain and make the land green once again particularly when Muḍar had been worn down hunger and suffering. However, the rains destroy their homes and swept away their belongings, so in response to their appeals, Prophet Muhammad prays again:\textsuperscript{855}

\[\text{اللهم حوالينا ولا علينا } \]

"O Allah, send the rains around us, not upon us"

In another occasion al-Jāḥīz tells us that once Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) wrote a letter to Chosroes inviting him to Islam, however, Chosroes tear up that letter. So, in respon to this attitude, Prophet Muhammad prays:\textsuperscript{856}

\textsuperscript{856} See al-Bukhārī, \textit{Ṣaḥīḥ al-Bukhārī}, in Bāb al-Jihād, No 2781.
"O God, tear apart his empire".


It seems that Allah occasionally provided him with relief and solace for his satisfaction. As the Prophet was very anxious for the people, sometimes he wished that some miracles would be shown so that people could embrace the faith and save themselves from the punishment. As we all known that the Qur’ān itself is the greatest miracle Muhammad has given to mankind. There are many verses which provide strong evidence to this effect. The most obvious one is the challenge to mankind to produce a similar Book or few Sūra like it. Al-Jahiz quotes this verse to show that the Prophet requests some miracles:

\begin{quote}
\textit{قل فائتوا بعشر سور مثله مفتريات}
\end{quote}

"Say: "Bring you then ten forged Surahs (chapters) like unto it, and call whomsoever you can”. Sūra Hud (11:13).

Al-Jahiz adds that the style and force of the Qur’ān and his manner of delivery would itself have been the challenge.
5.2.8 Language of the *Risāla*:

The language of the *risāla* is obviously in the debate style. For instance, the author frequently used these words to express his view such as “If you said”, “If they said”, “If someone said”, etc. And for respond, he will say: “I say”. To illustrate that, let us follow these quotations:

"فإن قلتم: إن الناس يكتبون في الأخبار عن الأعراب والكهنوت من كل جيل؟
قلنا: فهم في أخبارهم عن المنجمين أكثرب.
فإن قالوا: وما علمتم أن محمدًا عليه السلام لم يكن منجمًا؟
قلنا: إن علمتم بذلك كعلمنا بأن العباس وحمزة وعليا وأبا بكر وعمر، رضوان الله عليهم أجمعين، لم يكونوا منجمين ولا أطباء مكهنين.
فإن قال قائل: هذه الروافض بأسراها تأتي ذلك وتتكرب.
قلنا: إن الروافض ليست منها سبيل ...

Among other linguistic style which has been used in the text of the *risāla* is the usage of conditional sentences.\(^\text{858}\) It has been used more than twenty locations in the text. Let us follow some of this passage:

"ليكون زيد من آل أبي العاص، أو من عرض بني أمية، لوجد ابن مسعود متعلقًا.

\(^\text{858}\) A conditional sentence consists of two parts: "شرط" the condition (i.e Protasis) and "جواب الشرط" answer of the condition (i.e. Apodosis). See Nadwi, *Learn the language of the Holy Qurʾan*, p. 353. For more information on the conditional sentences, see Cowan, *An introduction into modern literary Arabic*, pp. 195-198.
This short paragraph contains a conditional sentence which is introduced by particle “ل”. While the following examples shows us that the author used some other conjunctions which followed by a negative particle such as “لم” and “لا”:

We notice that the answer for these conditional sentences may be introduced by the attached particle “ل” to give more stress on the nature of the sentence.

Finally, the author used rhyme style in his writing. Note the careful and clever structure of the following paragraph in which the author stresses on the further evidence of the Prophet’s authenticity:859

In short, the foregoing discussion shows us that through this *risāla*, al-Jāhiz establishes the authenticity of Muhammad's prophecy and in the same time he defends the truthfulness of the Qur'ānic verses and the Sunna of the Prophet (p.b.u.h.).

5.3 *Risāla fī al-radd ʿalā al-mushabbiha* (Refutation of the Anthropomorphism)

5.3.1 The significance of the *Risāla*:

This is the second *risāla* in this category, which has been chosen for extensive analysis in this study. The significant of the *risāla* lies on the issues that have been employed by the author in refuting the group of people known as "al-Mushabbiha". It is already known that the principle of *al-Tawḥīd* (God unity) is one of the five principles of al-Muʿtazila school of thought. Therefore, there are three important matters, which came under this principle, firstly, the denial of hypostatic character of God's, secondly, the denial of the creation of the Qur'ān and finally, the denial of anthropomorphism. The Muʿtazila believed that Allah is one; there no thing like Him; he is hearing, seeing; he is not a body (*jism, shahab, jutha*), and not a form, etc. As a result, those who differed from the Muʿtazila in these points of view were accused of holding false doctrines of *tashbīḥ*.

---

860 The word *al-Mushabbiha* is denoting to a person or group practising *Tashbīḥ* which means making similar, and can be understood either as producing something similar to creation or as assimilating Allah to His creature. See *The Encyclopaedia of Islam*, art. *Tashbīḥ*, Vol. X, pp. 341-344.


From this point of view, al-Jāḥīz as one of the followers of the Muʿtazila’s school of thought had taken his responsibility to refute this issue that have been employed by this group in order to avoid misunderstanding about God. Al-Jāḥīz had already told us about his aims when he stated in his Risāla fi al-radd alā al-Nāṣarā as follows: “I shall proceed to confound them further when I discuss anthropomorphism, a doctrine adhered by most of the Christian community, with the exception of some dissident scholastic and philosophers”.

5.3.2 Date of composition and addressee of the Risāla:

As usual, indeed, it is very difficult to have a precise time of composition of all al-Jāḥīz’s works and the same problem occurred also to this risāla. Most valuedy, when referring to another work of al-Jāḥīz entitle Risāla fi naḥy al-tasbīh which al-Jāḥīz addressed to Abū al-Walīd Muhammad b. Ahmad b. Abī Duʿād al-Ayādī, he himself remarks that he also wrote another work in the same subject entitled al-Radd ʿalā al-mushabbiha. Based on this remark, Jirjis assumed that both works has been written in the time of the Caliph al-Muṭṭasim. At that time, Ahmad b. Abī Duʿād, the father was a chief Qāḍī for the Caliph al-Muṭṭasim, while Muhammad, the son was his assistant, this occurs between the year 218/833 and 227/841. On the other hand, al-Ḥājirī assumed that this risāla has been written between the year 233/848 and 236/850 when Abū al-

865 Ibid. p. 96.
Walīd himself was a chief Qādī in the reign of the Caliph al-Mutawakkil. From this point of view, it can be safe to say that the addressee of the risāla was Abū al-Walīd Muhammad b. Ahmad b. Abī Du'ād, who was himself pro-Mu'tazilite. The time of composition was somewhere between the year 218/833 and the year 236/852. In other words, we can say that this risāla had been written after Risāla fī al-radd ʿalā al-Naṣīrā which will be discussed later. This is based on the statement made by the author at the end of the risāla when he declared: "I shall proceed to confound them further when I discuss anthropomorphism (al-Mushabbiha)." 867

5.3.3 The title and the text of the Risāla:

Jirjis in his book on the study of the two works of al-Jāhiz remarks that "al-Dhab ʿalā al-mushabbiha" was the correct title of the risāla. This is because that he found in the manuscript of the risāla from Topkapi Museum, Istanbul bearing that title. 868 However, most scholars of al-Jāhiz in the modern days agreed that the correct reading of this work is Risāla fī al-radd ʿalā al-mushabbiha. This is based on the statement given by the author himself in the long introductory section which takes up the first hundred pages or so of Hārūn's edition of al-Ḥayawān. There is to be found remarkably interesting passage in which al-Jāhiz describes fairly clearly the title of this work. 869 In addition,

866 Al-Hajiri, al-Jāhiz ḥayyūh wa shāhīruh, p. 306.
Yaqt, al-Khayyat and some other classical biographical authors stated that *al-Radd al- mushabbiha* is among the title of al-Jahiz’s work.\(^{870}\)

The text of the *risala* in the printed edition consists of eight pages which are divided into four portions with sub-titles. The first portion entitled “*Faśl min ṣadr kitābih fi al-radd al-mushabbiha*”, and the rest of the portion only entitled “*Faśl minhu*”. However, many thanks to Abū Milhim with his edition of this *risala* in which he has divided the text of the *risala* into sub-titles, this is very useful for the student of al-Jahiz like us, to understand the content. The *risala* now is available in English.\(^{871}\)

**5.3.4 The structure of the *Risāla*:**

The body of the *Risāla fi al-radd al-mushabbiha* can be break down into these constituting elements:

1. The meaning of “*al-Tawḥīd*”.
2. Refuting the claim, which said that Allah is visible?
3. Refuting the claim which considered that Allah as a body.
4. Some of the differences between anthropomorphisms.
5. The interpretation of the anthropomorphism concerning the Qur’ānic verse which related to possibility of Allah to be seen.
6. Refuting of some scholars concerning the interpretation of the Qur’ānic verse.
7. The Qur’ān as a judge and arbiter.


\(^{871}\) Colville, *Sobriety and Mirth*, pp. 94-99. Thus, all quotations relating to the text of the *risāla* are from Colville’s translation.
8. Anthropomorphism’s evidence concerning Allah as a body.

9. Refuting on that evidence.

5.3.5 Analysis of the main issues in the Risāla:

5.3.5.1 The connection between the two Risāla (i.e. Risāla fī al-radd ‘alā al-mushabbiha and Risāla fīnafy al-tashbīḥ)

As has been mentioned earlier that al-Jāhiz composed another work concerning anthropomorphism, which presumably was the introduction into Risāla fī al-radd ‘alā al-mushabbiha. Now, before going into details analysis of the content of this risāla, it would be interesting to have some basic information about the content of the Risāla fīnafy al-tashbīḥ which will be useful to this study.

The whole introduction to Risāla fīnafy al-tashbīḥ, in fact, was on the character of the common people, how to deal with them and how to gain control over them. In addition, al-Jāhiz expresses also various views of these category of people concerning anthropomorphism, he also complaints of the treatment meted out to the Mulakallimun and according to him, thanks to Ahmad b. Abī Du‘ād, who brought this group under the protection of the authorities. On this situation, it is understood that al-Jāhiz lays the

---

872 According to Najm, al-Khaṣṣā‘ī in his Ṣirāṣ al-majālis admits that the first part of this risāla was an introduction to the other work of al-Jāhiz entitled Risāla fī rwaḥf al-cawwām. However, she found that it was originally belongs to Risāla fīnafy al-tashbīḥ. This risāla then has been edited by Charles Pellat. See Najm, Studies oil the writing of al-Jahiz, p. 28.

873 Al-Mutakallimūn is a term used to describe the group of people who involve in the science which is concerned firmly with establishing religious beliefs by adducing proofs and with banishing doubts or known as ‘Ilm al-Kalām (dogmatic theology). Therefore, al-Mutakallimūn can be described as the doctors of Kalām. See The Encyclopedia of Islam, art. ‘Ilm al-Kalām, Vol. III, pp. 1141-1142.
importance of refuting the anthropomorphist. Here, he states: “You know that although the supporters of anthropomorphism have been crushed, reduced and subjected to the inquisition, their number have not decreased, the majority have not change their views, and only a tiny minority are dead... This situation in which cunning and persuasion are called for, since force and violence are ineffectual”.

Regarding to this situation, al-Jāḥīz admits: “I have therefore written a book in refutation of the anthropomorphist which will be neither beneath the notice scholars and educated men nor above the heads of tyros”. However, he expresses his reason why he against the anthropomorphism by saying: “They have started to debate with us and challenge our friends, after insulting us, to pay great deference to us....”

Afterwards, al-Jāḥīz asks Abū al-Walīd Muhammad to read it (the risāla) and give it a wide circulation. He also declares that it is everyone’s duty to help the authorities with advices, for example by ordering the good and forbidding the evil. Then, al-Jāḥīz recorded his praise to Abū al-Walīd Muhammad by means of examples drawn from history. Finally, al-Jāḥīz explains why he writes to him and not to his father, Ahmad; perhaps Muhammad is still young at that time.

---

5.3.5.2 The meaning of “Tawḥīd”

The paragraph above is a brief introduction of the previous work of al-Jāḥīz concerning the refutation of anthropomorphism. Now, al-Jāḥīz employs small fragment of the Risāla fī al-radd ʿalā al-mushabbiha to elaborate the meaning of the “al-Tawḥīd” which related to the main doctrine of Muʿtazila. We already know that they considered and called themselves as “Ahl al-ṣadl wa al-tawḥīd”. Therefore, al-Jāḥīz admits that: “not everyone who professes to be monotheist (al-Tawḥīd) actually is one, since some treat the One (Allah) as made up of parts and consider Him (Allah) something divisible”.

According to al-Jāḥīz, there are two types of men who cannot be called as Mawāḥīḍ or simply as the followers of Muʿtazila. The first one is a man who claims that Allah is visible and can be perceived by certain of the senses, and sometimes he going far than that by saying Allah can be seen like a man and perceived in the same way as colours. The second is a man who considered Allah as a body. Here, it is safely can be said that al-Jāḥīz, firstly draw a framework of the Muʿtazila’s doctrine, before he goes further on the subject of the work.

5.3.5.3 Category of the Anthropomorphist:

Al-Jāḥīz divides the anthropomorphist into two factions. The first faction said that Allah is a body and that all bodies have the attribute of length. Another faction also

---

874 Ibid., Vol. IV, pp. 5-6; see also ʿUyūn al-Sūd’s edition, Vol. IV, pp. 5-6.
maintain that Allah is a body but do not assert that He has the attribute of length.\textsuperscript{880} Then al-Jāḥīz recorded the argument from the both factions which he concluded it as follows: “To claim that Allah has any particular physical shape – square, pentagonal, cruciform, and polygonal or what have you – is strained in the utterance and demeaning in the supposition”.\textsuperscript{881}

Al-Jāḥīz then move to discuss the argument from those who contend that Allah can be seen visible by interpretation several of the Qurʿānic verses. He then responds to these arguments by interpretation of another Qurʿān verses. He says: “It has, however, given rise to much controversy among the opposition, since the literal meaning supports a position at odds with theirs because the jurisprudents and scriptural exegetes themselves dispute its interpretation”.\textsuperscript{882}

On the other hand, al-Jāḥīz asks his opponents to go back to the Qurʿān on their principle issue, because according to him the Qurʿān is the judge and arbiter. And there is a long discussion between al-Jāḥīz and his opponents concerning the interpretation of this Qurʿānic verse (4:153):

\textit{The People of the Book ask thee to cause a book to descend to them from heaven; indeed they asked Moses for an even greater (miracle) for they said; show us God in public, but they were dazed by their presumption with thunder and lightning}
In the last point, al-Jāḥīz recorded again the anthropomorphism’s claim that the Qur’ānic verse, Sūra al-Fajr (89:22): which means “And God came with row upon row of angels” proves that Allah is a body. Al-Jāḥīz replied: “Such is the trust of their argument”. However, al-Jāḥīz said that it is possible for one thing to be “in” something else in a number of ways. He hopes to show them what these are and define all permissible relationship. Finally, we find that al-Jāḥīz employs the last two pages of the risāla for further explanation of the issue.

5.3.6 The style of writing:

Our examination of al-Jāḥīz’s argumentation in the Risāla fi-al-radd ʿalā al-mushabbihā reveals his Muʿtazilite conviction. He writes in a distinctive way arguing with thoroughness and orderliness to maintain reader interest. In order to achieve this aim, the author, as usual, gives his attention to quote several Qur’ānic verses as supporting elements into his idea. He then proceeds to refute the case made by his opponent for these verses. For instance, he mentions the argument of those who contend that God can be seen when they said as follows: “You advance as argument against us the Qur’ānic verse: “No vision can grasp Him, but He grasps all vision”. Nothing correctly that it is ambiguous and of a general, non-specific, nature. You are also correct in nothing that a genral verse remains so until God qualifies it with another. Thus, had He said: “No vision can grasp Him, but He grasps all vision” without subsequently saying: “Some

\[\text{Ibid, Vol. IV, p. 13; see also Ṣuyūn al-Sūd’s edition, Vol. IV, p. 11.}\]

\[\text{Sūra al-An’ām. (6:103)}\]
faces that Day shall be Nādira (shining and radiant). Looking at their Lord Allah we would not know that there are exceptions to the general rule. 885

Now, let find out how al-Jāḥiẓ responds to this argument. He says: “My response is that, because God revealed: 887 "None in the heavens and earth knows the Ghayb (Unseen) except Allah", Sūra al-Naml. (27:65). "Nor will Allah disclose to you the secrets of the Ghayb (Unseen)", Sūra Al-Imrān. (3:179). We do indeed know that there are a certain exceptions to the general statement that He shall disclose nothing. There is no disagreement about this exception either textually or semantically and, in my opinion, the literal meaning of the text is the actual meaning. It has, however, given rise to much controversy among the opposition, since the literal meaning supports a position at odds with theirs. 889

In his discussion of these Qur'ānic verses, we see that al-Jāḥiẓ at work played as an interpreter of the Qur'ān. For instance, in the discussion of a number of the Qur'ānic passages; the author refers to the views of respected early authorities such as Ibn Abbās, Mujāhid and others. Refering to his quotation of two verses from Sūra al-Qiyāma (75:22-23), al-Jāḥiẓ states that Ibn Mahdī (d. 198 A.H.) quoting Sufyān (d. 161 A.H.), quoting Manṣūr (d. 132 A.H.), quoting Mujāhid (d. 104 A.H.) interpreted that verses to mean “anticipating reward from their God”. He then adds: “A similar interpretation was offered

887. “Nor will Allah disclose to you the secrets of the Ghayb (Unseen)”. Sūra Al-Imrān. (3:179).
by Abū Mu‘āwiya, quoting Ismā‘īl b. Abī Khālid, quoting Abū Ṣāliḥ. Mujāhid and Abū Ṣāliḥ were both leading figures in Ibn ʿAbbās circle and were eminent Mufassir. It seems here that he refers to the famous figure in the field of the Qur’ānic interpretation.

The language of the *risāla* is also in the debate style. For instance, the usage of these passages “If you said”, “If they said”, “If someone said”, “If they said that” etc. can be found frequently in the text of the *risāla*. And for respond, the author will say: “I said”, “I said to these people”, or “We said”, and etc. It is interesting to note here that such passages have been used by the author more than ten times in the *risāla*.

In short, through this *risāla* we have had the chance to see examples of al-Jāḥiz vigorous arguments against this group of people. We find him concentrated much attack upon them and refuted their ideas whenever the chance came. So, his ability in argumentation gave him a special place in this apologetic movement.

5.4 *Risāla fi Ta‘l-shārib wa al-mashrūb* (Drink and Drinkers)

5.4.1 The significance of the *Risāla*:

The significant of the *risāla* lies on its content whenever the author tries to discuss the issue of special drinks, which the people of the Abbasid society take after their meal. According to Ahsan, the Abbasid society generally has their special drinks taken after the meal. According to Ahsan, the Abbasid society generally has their special drinks taken after the meal.

---

meal. These drinks were known simply as *nabīdhi*[^1] and sometimes known with the addition of the principal ingredient's name such as *al-Nabīdhi al-ṣinābī*, *al-Nabīdhi al-zābībī*, *al-Nabīdhi al-tamarī*, *al-Nabīdhi al-ṣasālī* and etc. These types of *nabīdhi* were widely taken during this period by people from all walks of life[^2]. As a result of this situation, there was a fierce controversy among the scholars and the jurists as to whether or not *nabīdhi* belonged to the category of wine. In addition, there is also a wide discussion among the *fuqahā'* whether the consuming of this kind of drink is allowed or forbidden[^3].

The Qurʾān has clearly forbids Muslims from drinking *khamr* (wine) which has been stated in several verses. Because Islam found that wine drinking deeply rooted in the habits of people in *Jāhiliya*. However, Islam proceeded towards its prohibition only by gradual steps as can be found in the Qurʾān[^4].

The subject of wine and *nabīdhi* is found in all periods of Arabic literature particularly in poetry[^5]. However, prose literature works devoted to wine and *nabīdhi* are also found, but far less frequently. *Risāla fi al-shārīb wa al-mashrūb*, *Risāla fi madh al-

[^1]: *Nabīdhi* is a comprehensive designation for intoxicating drinks, several kinds of which were produce in early Arabia, made from barley, honey, spelt, dates and etc. For further information about the term *Nabīdhi*, see *The Encyclopaedia of Islam*, art. *Nabīdhi*, Vol.VII, p. 840; E.W. Lane, *Arabic-English Lexicon*, Vol. II, p. 2757. E.W.Lane particularly claimed that *Nabīdhi* is a lawful beverage.


[^3]: For example, Imam Abū Ḥanīfā (d. 150 A.H.) interpreted the prohibited wine as meaning only that made from grape juice and regarded *nabīdhi* (made by boiling dates or raisins) as permitted, provided the quantity drunk was not enough to cause intoxication, in which he was probably following Abdullah b. Mas‘ūd al-Hudhailī, leader of the Iraqi school of law, See Harb, ‘Wine poetry’, in: *Abbasid Belles Letters*, p. 222; The same idea was brought forward by the Mu’tazilī Abū Hāshim al-Jubbātī (d. 321/933) who argues that God has created things which resemble those things which were allowed in Paradise but forbidden on earth. Among them is *nabīdhi*, which is allowed for the believers so that they can guess what *khamr* will be like in the hereafter. See *The Encyclopaedia of Islam*, art. *Nabīdhi*, Vol.VII, p. 840.


[^5]: For further information about wine poetry, see Harb, *Wine poetry*, pp. 219-234.
nel dens wa ṣifat asḥābib and Risāla fi ḏhamm al-nabīlīḥ written by al-Jāḥīz were among the earliest prose work touching this subject matter.896 Afterward, in the fourth to fifth century of Hijra, Abū Ishāq Ibrāhīm b. al-Qāsim (d. 383 A.H.) wrote Quth al-surūr fi awṣāf al-khumīr.897 This work, as was described by Harb, is an encyclopaedic work discussing the etiquette of wine and wine parties, wine’s remedial qualities, how to profit from its blends, textual citation dealing with it, legal argument centred on it, entertaining stories about it, and an appendix of poetical reference.898

Being a man of letter (Adīb) and religious scholar, al-Jāḥīz, the author of the risāla intends to explain the differences between nabīlīḥ and khamr (wine) and giving more information about these types of drink to his reader. When describing the content of this work of al-Jāḥīz, Colville said that the author employs the methods and terminology of Islamic disputation in this risāla, to argue in favour of that most un-Islamic of vices – alcoholic drinks.899 Pellat, on the other hand admits that al-Jāḥīz has designed it to show that the drinking nabīlīḥ is lawful.900 Moreover, it can be said here that the risāla was among al-Jāḥīz’s contribution to the study of Islamic jurisprudence from the Muṭazzila point of view, which may be differed from other schools of Islamic juristic thought as can be seen later.

---

896 The text of Risāla fi ḏhamm al-nabīlīḥ is not survived; Yāqūt in his list of al-Jāḥīz’s works mentioned the title of this risāla. See Yāqūt, Mu’jam al-udabī’, Vol. XVI, pp. 106-110; see also, Pellat, Inventaire de l’œuvre Gaḥiżienne, No. 119, 120 & 152, pp. 169, 174.
897 His full name is Abū Ishāq Ibrāhīm b. al-Qāsim al-Qurāwī al-Kātib al-Qayrawānī. He was known as Ibn al-Raqīq or Ibn al-Raqīq al-Nādīm. His origin is from Qayrawān. Amongst his works are Tārikh Qayrawān, Quth al-surūr fi awṣāf al-khumīr, and Nazm al-sulūk fi musāmara al-mulūk, see Ḥājjī Khalīfa, Kashf al-zunūn, Vol. V, p. 7.
899 Colville, Sobriety and Mirth, p. 134.
900 Pellat, The life and works of Jāḥīz, p. 16.
5.4.2 The addressee and the date of composition:

There is another work written by al-Jāhīz, which related to the subject of nabīdīh entitled Risāla fī madh al-nabīdīh wa sīfat asḥābīh. The work has been addressed to al-Ḥasan b. Wahb who al-Jāhīz asked him for some nabīdīh. We find that al-Jāhīz develops his idea about the effects of nabīdīh and its advantages. For example, he claims that when nabīdīh soaks into your bones, spreads to every organ and suffuses into your brain, it clarifies your mind, redeems your spirit from care, relaxes you in body and soul, makes you carefree, and etc. Then he proceeds to praise al-Ḥasan b. Wahb and describes the quality of his nabīdīh.

Scholars of al-Jāhīz agreed that the title of the work is Risāla fī al-shārīb wa al-mashrūb, however, al-Jāhīz in his Risāla fī faṣl mā bayn al-qādāw wa al-ḥasad which has been discussed in chapter three called this work as Risāla fī tahlīl al-nabīdīh. He claimed that when the work was presented to the Caliph al-Maʾmūn, Muhammad b. Abī al-Abbās al-Ṭūsī attack it and protest against al-RibiZ’s arguments in it. By referring to Abī Milḥim’s collection of the rasāʾil of al-Jāhīz, one could observe that the Risāla fī al-shārīb wa al-mashrūb is the second work on the subject of nabīdīh. Although, al-Jāhīz did not mention specifically his addressee, presumably the addressee of the risāla was also al-Ḥasan b. Wahb, because both of the risāla is on the discussion of nabīdīh.

901 His full name is al-Ḥasan b. Wahb b. Saʿīd b. ʿAmr b. al-Ḥasīn b. Qays b. Qanān al-Ḥāriṭī but was known as Abī ʿAlī. He was among the famous kālib for Muḥammad b. ʿAbd al-Malik al-Zayyāt and was also considered an excellent poet in the Abbasid period and contemporary to the two of great Abbasid poet, Abī Tammām (d.c. 231 or 232 A.H.) and al-Buḥṭūrī (d. 284 A.H.). His brother, Sulaymān (d. c. 250) was a vizier to the Caliph al-Muʿtaṣṣ and al-Muḥtaḍī, See al-Zirīkī, al-ʿAllām, Vol II, 226; al-Kutubi, Fawāʾil al-wafayāt, Vol. I, p.136.

However, it is difficult to give a precise date of composition the *risāla*, because the author as usual never mentioned the date of composition of his works. What can be suggested here is to put somewhere in the period of al-Ḥasan b. Wahb was *al-Kātib* for Muhammad b. ʿAbd al-Malik al-Zayyāt between 218 A.H. and 233 A.H.

5.4.3 The text of the *Risāla*:

The text of the *risāla* can be found in Hārūn’s and ʿUyūn al-Sūd’s edition with varying length. This *risāla* in its scholarship edition consists of fifteen pages with no divisions other than paragraphs. It seems to us that the body of the *risāla* can be divided into two main parts. Part one starts with al-Jāḥīz’s introduction in which he mentions his correspondent’s request. Whilst part two begins with al-Jāḥīz’s respond to the issue that has been highlighted by his correspondent. For example he states: “I understand everything you have said about the varieties of *nabāḥ* and the difference between good and bad quality. I can see you just how interested you are in the subject”.

The study of this *risāla* will based on English translation by Colville which can be found in “Sobriety and Mirth” under the heading “On Drink and Drinkers”\(^903\). In addition, the study also will refer to Pellat’s collection of translated portion of al-Jāḥīz’s work who has published some two pages selected from two places of the *risāla* entitled “Drink and the Drinkers”\(^904\).

---

\(^{903}\) Collivile, *Sobriety and Mirth*, pp. 134-143.

5.4.4 The structure of the *Risāla*:

As has been mentioned before that the *Risāla fi al-shīrīb wa al-mashrūb* is very short, however, one can observed that the author of the *risāla* has develop more information concerning the topic. Let us now break the *risāla* down into its constituting elements which can be divided into two parts. These are as follows:

- **Part One:**
  1. The subject matter of the *risāla*.
  2. The advantages of *nabdīl*.
  3. The disadvantages of *nabdīl*.
  4. The type of *nabdīl*.

- **Part Two:**
  5. The author responds to the issues.
  6. The differences between *khamr* and *nabdīl* in the light of legitimacy.
  7. The Prophet’s Muhammad companions made a distinction between the *Farāʿiḍ* and drinking alcoholic beverage.
  8. There are many more things are permissible than are forbidden.
  9. *Ahl al-Madīna* (The resident of the Prophet’s city) forbidden *nabdīl*.
  10. Some people from the Prophet’s city drink *nabdīl*.
  11. The main purpose of the *risāla*.
  12. Conclusion.
5.4.5 Analysis of the main issue in the *Risāla*:

5.4.5.1 The introduction of the *Risāla*:

In his introduction, al-Jāḥīz praises his correspondent without naming the person. He then goes to explain the subject matter of this work. He said as follows: “You (his correspondent) have asked me to write on the virtues and vices of drink and of drinkers and to describe the condition of drunkenness. You asked me also to make clear the difference between *nabīl* and *khamr*, and explain why the former is such a popular drink. I was to list all the points in its favour and detail the defects of bottled varieties ... etc”.

5.4.5.2 The advantages of *Nabīl*:

He then goes further to explain the advantages of *nabīl* on behalf of his correspondent. For example he explains: “It settles the stomach, eases the temper, and removes traces of pallor and put colour back into the check. It transforms sickness into health. It puts energy into the weary and gives companionship to the lonely. It clears the mind, invigorates the body and puts backbone and heart in a man. It dispels inhibition and shame. It sharpens the appetite and reduces the consumption of water ... and etc.”

---

5.4.5.3 The disadvantages of Nabīlh:

Furthermore, al-Jāḥīz makes a list of the disadvantages of nabīlh such as “it loosens the tongue and adds to the level of nonsense around. It causes bad temper and incontinence, headaches and insomnia and leaves a hangover that spoils the whole day. It prevents a man rising for prayer. It demeans the soul and degrades the sense. It damages the character and stimulates bile. It gives malice free rein in the heart. It dries up sperm and creates paranoia. It causes jaundice, consumption and eye disease. It destroys a man physically and ruins him financially..., and etc.”

5.4.5.4 Types of Nabīlh:

Al-Jāḥīz also makes a list of the types of nabīlh and mentions the quality of each type as was described by his correspondent. Among the varieties of nabīlh which al-Jāḥīz records in the risāla are as follows: al-Sakar, al-Masjūr, Nabīlh al-zabīb, ʿAṣīr al-karm, Nabīlh ʿasal Miṣr, Rāzin al-Ahwaz, al-Dushab al-bustānī, Nabīlh al-jazar, and Nabīlh al-kishmish, etc. In the following section, al-Jāḥīz goes to answer the question from his correspondent. He states that he understands everything what his correspondent said about the varieties of nabīlh and the difference between good and bad quality.

---

907 Ibid., Vol. IV, pp. 265-266; see also ʿUyūn al-Sūd’s edition, Vol. IV, pp. 204-205.
5.4.5.5 The reason of legitimacy of *Nabīl*:

Then he goes to differentiate between *al-khamr* and *al-nabīl* in the light of its legitimacy. He writes: "It sometimes happens that thing classed as legally forbidden undergoes a sort of metamorphosis whereby the effect upon it of a new colour, smell, taste, etc. alters it in such way that a semantic shift occurs and, what had been forbidden is transformed into something legitimate!". 910

From al-Jāḥiz's point of view, there is no doubt about the legitimacy of *nabīl*. This is based on his personal evidence particularly against those people who disagree with him on that matter. For example, he points out as follows: "The scholars who disagree with my position on the legitimacy of *nabīl* are contradicted by their own admission.... because this view (legitimacy of *nabīl*) is corroborated by the fact that at no time, past or present, has God ever forbidden man anything without allowing him something else with the same, or similar effect. He (Allah) thus provides men with a lawful substitute for everything He denies them". 911

According to al-Jāḥiz, although people of the Prophet's city (*Madīna al-Munawwara*) are forbidden *nabīl*, but this is not the reason for it to be forbidden because the status of a particular community cannot be basis for prescribing or proscribing anything. Because according to him what is lawful and unlawful can be

---


determined only by three elements, firstly, the revealed Qur’ān, secondly, established prophetic precedent and finally, the valid reasoning of sound minds. It is clear here that al-Jāḥiẓ refused to accept evidence from Ahl al-Ḥadīth, (the Ḥadīth scholars) but he prefers to use his mind to come to the conclusion on the matter.\footnote{Ibid., Vol. IV, p. 276; see also Ḥūn al-Sūd’s edition, Vol. IV, p. 212.}

We find that al-Jāḥiẓ gives a list of men from the Prophet’s city who drink nabīdūh namely; Maḥbūd,\footnote{His full name is Mābūd b. Wāḥib known as Abū Isbād al-Badānī, died in 126 A.H.} Gharīd,\footnote{His real name is ʿAbd al-Malik, his kunya is Abū Yazīd, but famous with nickname Gharīd because of his gentlemen appearance. He died in 95 A.H.} Ibn Surayj,\footnote{His full name is Ṭabūḍūlīd b. Suṣrayj. He died in the reign of the Caliph Hishām b. ʿAbd al-Malik when he was eighty five years old.} Daḥmān,\footnote{His full name is Muslim b. Muḥriz, his kunya is Abū al-Khaṭṭāb, from Persian origin. He died in 140 A.H.} Ibn Muḥriz,\footnote{ Ḥūn al-Sūd, Rasūl al-Jāḥiẓ, Vol. IV, pp. 213-214.} and some others.\footnote{Ḥūn al-Sūd, Rasa’il al-Jāḥiẓ, Vol. IV, pp. 213-214.}

Al-Jāḥiẓ also claims that some of the Prophet’s immediate successors and their own forefather who live in the Prophet’s city without naming them were drinkers of nabīdūh. Because of this reason, in the next step, al-Jāḥiẓ attacked the Ḥadīth scholars’ by calling them as a quite unprecedented in the chroniclē of human fabrication and deceit.\footnote{Ḥūn al-Sūd, Ṣūlūq al-Ṣūlūq, in: Hārūn’ edition, Vol. IV, p. 280; Ḥūn al-Sūd’s edition, Vol. IV, p. 215.}

5.4.5.6 Some additional juristic rules:

Al-Jāḥiẓ also mentions other juristic rules in this risāla. For instance, firstly, he states that God has forbidden the consumption of blood that has been spilled but not of
congealed blood in the liver, the spleen, etc. Secondly, God has forbidden the flesh of carrion but not the flesh of animals slaughtered in accordance with the law or of the fish and locusts. Thirdly, usury is unlawful but ordinary financial transactions are perfectly legitimate. Fourthly, short selling is unlawful but forward buying is permissible. Finally, he says that fornication is forbidden but sex within marriage is most definitely not and pig meat is unlawful to eat but suckling goat, lamb and veal are not. After all he writes "in fact, many more things are permissible than are forbidden". 920

5.4.5.7 The purpose of the Risāla:

Near the end of the risāla, al-Jāḥiz again mentions his main aim from this work. He admits: "My reason for listing the above mentioned drinks and discussing their varieties and origins was a fear that this text might fall into the hands of someone who may not have heard of them all and would suppose that the references to some of these abominable, new fangled brands are the ravings of man stung by a scorpion. My purpose in noting them at the beginning was to advise upon which ones are lawful and which ones are not and to show how the Muslim community has failed to reach unanimity on this issue and why ambiguity and error have arisen". 921

---

5.4.5.8 The conclusion of the Risāla:

Al-Jāḥīz concludes the risāla by saying: "Let that be sufficient for now. If this risāla went on any longer, you would find it too much to take in. Brevity can be more effective than thoroughness if it runs the risk of being boring. I have leavened seriousness with humour and spiced reasoning with jest to lighten the reader's labour and spur the listener's interest".922

5.4.6 The style of writing:

There is only one Qur'ānic verse that has been quoted in the risāla i.e. from Sūra al-Mā'īda (5:90) when the Qur'ān said:

"O ye who believe! Make not unlawful the good thing which God has made lawful for you, but commit no excess; for God loveth not those given to excess".

Al-Jāḥīz quotes this verse to support his argument concerning the legitimacy of nabīkh. We find that al-Jāḥīz had already explained above his reason for the legitimacy of this type of drink, and finally, he concludes with this quotation of the Qur'ānic verse by saying: "I have sought not only to argue the case for the lawful but also to shed light on the illicit and give full recognition to each. In this way, I shall have affirmed the legitimate, acknowledge the unlawful and adhered to the injunction of God's saying".923

We find that the author runs his argument in debate style. For instance, in the first part of the *risāla*, the author records the arguments which have been forwarded by his addressee by using the following passages such as “You have asked me”, “You asked my opinion of”, “What is your opinion”, “Tell me”, “What is your judgment”, etc. For instance, at the beginning of the *risāla*, he says:

(You have asked me to write on the virtues and vice of drink and of drinkers and to describe the condition of drunkenness...and so on.)

Then, he replies:

(I understand everything you have said about the varieties of nabidh and the differences between good and bad quality. I can see just how interested you are in this subject. You have always been the sort of man who keeps on asking and inquiring while I am one of those small bands which never ceases to explain).

In another occasion, we find that the author gives his response directly to the argument which has been highlighted by his addressee. For example, he says:

(Suppose if someone say: People of Medina knew better than anyone else what was lawful and unlawful, about wine and intoxicating drinks and what the Prophet allowed and forbade....and so on).
Let us now see what his reply was, he says:

(إن عظم حق البلدة لا يحل شيئا ولا يحرمه، وإنما يعرف الحلال والحرام بالكتاب الناطق، والسنة المجمع عليها، والعقول الصحيحة، والمقاييس المضيفة)

(My reply to this would be that the status of a particular community cannot be a basis of prescribing or proscribing anything. What was lawful and unlawful can be determined only by the revealed Qur’an, established prophetic precedent and the valid reasoning of sound minds).

This argument obviously highlighted al-Jāḥiz’s point of view which based on Muʿtazilite doctrine. In short, our examination of al-Jāḥiz’s argumentation in the Risāla fī al-shārīb wa al-mashrūb reveals his Muʿtazilite conviction.

5.5 CONCLUSION

When the Muʿtazilite thought began to asset itself in the early third/ninth century, its influence was far left beyond the field of theological polimics. For one thing, these polimics made for a more exact prose which left its mark on belles-lettres (adlāb). For another, the discussion of certain topics raised further problems which demanded concreate answers. Al-Jāḥiz, as we have seen in this chapter, through his rasā’il concerning the semi-theological issues gives us some information on the method of his thinking which is based on Mutazilite doctrine. Risāla fī ḥujaj al-nubūwā, for instance, highlights the Muʿtazila teaching, when al-Jāḥiz speaks about the sign of the Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) which is attested in the Qurʾān and contained in a trustworthy
report. In addition, the Qur‘ān itself, according to al-Jāḥīz, is a sign because of unmet challenge to imitate it, its language, and the foretelling of events contained in it. Since Islamic theology aims at defending the religious belief which is based on the Qur’ānic and prophetic sources against heretical aberrations and innovations, al-Jahiz through *Risāla fi al-radd ‘alā al-mushabbiha*, highlights his arguments to the group of people known as *al-Mushabbiha*. Therefore, al-Jāḥīz appears as a leading participant in a sophisticated debate on theological issues by using his intellectual strenght.

It is seem that, in the hand of al-Jāḥīz, this Mu‘tazilite argument is not only defended at length but is also to support the reality of the event of past ages as we have seen in *Risāla fi al-shārib wa al-mashrūb*. This *risāla* also show us that the literary form of *adab* often requires presenting all sides of controversial subject. In this regard, we find that al-Jāḥīz always put every single theological matter in the context of whether or not it is compatible with the regulation of logic. In short, in this *rasā’il*, we have an example of Mu‘tazilite rhetorical method applied to a controversial subject of relevance to theology. However, that aspect of religious arguments which presented by al-Jāḥīz through this *rasā’il* to his readers most vividly was the arguments and stories derived from the Qur‘ān and Sunna.
CHAPTER SIX

THE RASĀ‘IL CONCERNING THE
SEMI-POLITICAL ISSUES

6.1 Introduction:

In general, the Mu‘tazila refutation on non-Muslim doctrine was a basic element in their defence of religious belief and their stand with the Abbasid government. Al-Jāḥiz like many other Mu‘tazilite scholars, including his teacher al-Nazzām, is not only defending the Mu‘tazila against other Muslim schools, but also wrote in defence of Islam against Christians, Jews and other faiths. The present part focuses on the rasā‘il of the defence of the Abbasid against their political opponent which can be described as a series of observations on al-Jāḥiz’s works concerning the semi-political issues. Pellat has listed nine risāla of al-Jāḥiz which are connected with the topic, however, in this part of the study the focus goes only on two main risāla i.e. Risāla fī al-radd `alā al-Naṣūrā and Risāla fī manākib al-Turk. Our intention is to identify some of the many historical and

924 He was reported not only engaged in discussion about Christian doctrine, but also supposed to have memorised the Torah and the Gospel. For further information on his biography, see The Encyclopaedia of Islam, art. Al-Nazzām, Vol. VII, pp. 1057-1058.
925 The used of term ‘semi-political’ refers to the meaning of partially taking to a side in politics. For the detailed analysis of the meaning of ‘political’, see Simpson, The Oxford English Dictionary, Vol. XII, pp. 32-33.
926 The rest of risāla are as follows: Fī al-‘Abbāsiyya, Fā’il Ḥāshim `alā `Abd al-Shams, Bayān madhhab al-Shī‘a, Jawāhir fī al-imāma, Kitāb taswīb `Alī fī taḥkīn al-bakamayn, Fī al-‘Uthmāniyya, Fī al-nāhiba, see Pellat, The life and Works of Jāḥiz, pp. 16-18. Almost all of the rasā‘il in this category has been studied by
political allusions to groups and events found throughout these two *risāla* and to illustrate how they serve al-Jāḥīz’s strategy in defence the Abbāsid against their opponents.

6.2 *Risāla fi al-radd ʿalā al-Naṣārā* (Refutation of the Christians)

6.2.1 The significance of the *Risāla*:

Let us first recall that Islam in its earliest period had to deal with two major religions, Judaism and Christianity. It not only showed respect for the two and tried to accommodate them, but it also tried to have dialogue with them on the basis of what was common between them.\(^927\) However, it is important to note here that as has been reported in Islamic history that at the Abbāsid period, the Abbāsid State openly changed its friendly policy to the Christians after the latter revolted in Armenia, which bordered the Byzantine Empire.\(^928\) Al-Ṭabarī mentioned that in the year 235/850, the Caliph al-Mutawakkil ordered new laws which related to the dress of Christian and to the social and education position of Christians. For instance, he forbade their employment in government offices and on official business where they would have authority over Muslims. He also forbade the display of crosses on Palm Sundays and Jewish rites in the streets and so forth.\(^929\) As a result, this period witnessed some interesting examples of interchange between Christians and Muslims, and also witnessed significant change with

---

\(^{927}\) El-Attār in his Ph.D. thesis entitled “The Political Thought of al-Jāḥīz”, and *Iḥāṣ al-Uthmāniyya*, particularly has been studied by Zahniser in his Ph.D. thesis entitled “The Uthmāniyya of al-Jāḥīz”.


respect to the position of other faith communities with the Muslims world.\footnote{Goddard, \textit{A History of Christian-Muslim Relations}, Edinburgh University Press, Edinburgh, 2000, p. 66. For more detail on the development of Christians and Jews in Iraq particularly under the Sasanians and after the Muslim conquest and some aspects of their interactions with Muslims, see M.G. Morony, ‘Religious communities in late Sasanian and early Muslim Iraq’, \textit{Journal of the Economic and Social History of the Orient}, 17 (1974), pp. 113-135.} So, we assume that from this point of view, the debate and dialog between Muslim and Christian or other faiths had become an integral part of religious discourse in Islam particularly in the middle of the third/ninth century.

According to David Thomas in his book on Abū ʿĪsā al-Warrāq (d. 247/861) that nearly all of the major theologians active at this time are known to have participated in debates or to have written some polemical work.\footnote{Thomas also assumes that al-Warrāq and al-Jāḥīz engaged in polemical exchange especially through the two of al-Jāḥīz’s works entitled \textit{Risāla fi madh al-warrāq} and \textit{Risāla fi dhimm al-warrāq}, See Thomas, \textit{Anti Christian polemic in early Islam}, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1992, p. 31. Yāqūt in his list make reference to the title of both \textit{risāla} of al-Jāḥīz, however, as far as we are concerned that the text of these two \textit{risāla} not survived, see Yāqūt, \textit{Muṭjam al-udabā’}, Vol. XVI, p. 109.} However, he points out that most of the works composed in the decades around the year 200/815-16, where al-Jāḥīz lived, are lost.\footnote{Thomson, \textit{Anti Christian polemic in early Islam}, p. 31. It is reported that ʿAlī b. Sahl Rabbān al-Ṭabarī (d. c. 240/855) wrote also polemical \textit{risāla} against the Christians. His detail biography can be seen in: \textit{Shorter Encyclopedia of Islam}, art. Naṣārā, pp. 440-444.} Writing during one of the most magnificent periods in the history of Islamic civilization, al-Jāḥīz could not ignore the reality of that time. So, as far as we are aware the text of \textit{Risāla fi al-radd ʿalā al-Naṣārā} which will be analysed in this study is one of the earliest Muslim attacks on Christian doctrines, and it can be considered as the most comprehensive anti-Christian polemic that survives from the early Islamic period. Thus, the significant point of the works lies in the arguments that al-Jāḥīz employs in the body of his attack to prove his case against Christians and Jews. It also lies in the information he collects about the various Christian interpretations of their doctrine which stretched through out the \textit{risāla}. Moreover, the \textit{risāla} analysed in the immediately preceding pages
belong to a recognizable literary type; the dialogue. In addition, al-Jāḥīz used the comparison technique for defending Islam by comparing it with Judaism and Christianity. From this point of view, it can be assumed that al-Jāḥīz is one of the biggest names in the field of comparative religious study.

6.2.2 The title and the text of the Risāla:

Most valuably, al-Qāḍī ʿAbd al-Jabbār (d. 415/1025) claimed that al-Jāḥīz composed two works on the subject of Muslim-Christian relations, firstly, known as Risāla al-ʿasaliya and secondly entitled al-Mukhtar fī al-radd ʿalā al-Naṣārā. However, as far we are aware, the latter is the only one which has survived. Therefore, there are different views concerning the correct reading of title of the risāla. Al-Jāḥīz for example, he himself mentions the title of this risāla in his introduction to the al-Ḥayawān as Kitāb ʿalā al-Naṣārā wa al-Yahūd, and in other occasion, he named it as Kitāb ʿalā al-Naṣārā.

933 In this context, it is important to note that the etymology of the word “dialogue” is dia in Greek, referring to the act of seeing through. An essential component in dialogue is the willingness to reexamine one’s faith in the light of how others relate to their tradition and the ability to strengthen or adjust one’s own engagement and interaction with the sacred based on the experience of the other. For more information on the nature of interfaith dialogue, see Liyatakali, “From Conversation: Interfaith Dialogue”, The Muslim World, Vol. 94, No. 3 (2004), pp. 343-355.

934 Yaʿqūt did not make any reference to this Risāla in his list of al-Jāḥīz’s work. See, Yaʿqūt, Muṣjam al-udabāʾ, Vol. XVI, p. 107.


On the other hand, Yāqūt in his list of al-Jāḥīz’s works only named it as *Kitāb al-radd ʿalā al-Naṣīrā*.

As a result, al-Ḥājirī assumed that al-Jāḥīz has two works with different title, the first works is *Kitāb al-radd ʿalā al-Naṣīrā*, and the other is *Kitāb al-radd ʿalā al-Yahūd*.

As far as we are aware *Kitāb al-radd ʿalā al-Yahūd* is not extant. Sharqāwī claimed that the correct reading of the title of the *risāla* is *al-Mukhtār fī al-radd ʿalā al-Naṣīrā*, because the original copy of the *risāla* is lost. And what we have now is a selection of text from the original work. In addition, he also claimed that it was the shortest *risāla* of al-Jāḥīz as well.

Based on this confusion, Ibrāhīm ʿIwaḍ asked whether *al-Mukhtār fī al-radd ʿalā al-Naṣīrā* is the summary of *Risāla al-Asaliyya*? However, we have no further information about this matter, because as we have said earlier, that the text of *Risāla al-Asaliyya* has not come down to us.

Joshua Finkel was the first editor of the *risāla*. The text of the *risāla* can be found in his edition with other two *risāla* of al-Jāḥīz namely *Risāla fī dhamm akhlāq al-kutṭāb* and *Risāla fī al-qiyān*. Afterwards Ḥārūn edited the *risāla* for the second time based on the Finkel’s edition. The text of the *risāla* also can be found in ʿUyūn al-Sūd’s with varying length. This *risāla* in the scholarship edition consists of forty-eight consecutive pages. It is divided into ten portions. The first portion entitled “Fāṣ min ṣadr kitābih fī al-radd ʿalā al-Naṣīrā”, and the other portions only begin with “Fāṣ min hu”.

---


The full translation of the *risāla* could be seen in “Sobriety and Mirth” translated by Jim Colville with the title in English translation: “Contra Christianororum”.\(^{941}\) Pellat in his collection of translated portions of al-Jāḥiz’s work also has published some five pages selected from various places of the *risāla* under the heading “Refutation of the Christian”.\(^{942}\) So, all quotations in the text relating to the *risāla* are from both Colville’s and Pellat’s translation.

**6.2.3 The addressee and the purpose of composition:**

The addressee of the *risāla* cannot be determined precisely, however al-Ḥājirī and El-ʿAṭṭār suggest that al-Jāḥiz addresses the work to the Turkish vizier, al-Fath b. Khāqān.\(^{943}\) Their suggestions were based on al-Jāḥiz’s statement in the introduction of the *risāla* when he claimed that he had received al-Fath b. Khāqān message about the Christians, particularly the confusion in argumentation which has come into minds of the young and the weak, and the fear that they may not be able to answer their questions, and asking how to help with good answers\(^{944}\). Al-Ḥājirī also states that Yāqūt recorded in his *Muʿjam al-udabāʿ* that he relates to Abū Ḥayyān al-Tawḥīdī that al-Fath b. Khāqān urged al-Jāḥiz to write this *risāla*.\(^{945}\)

---

\(^{941}\) Colville, *Sobriety and Mirth*, pp. 71-94.


By observing to the beginning of the *risāla*, it is clear that al-Jāḥīz himself declares that he has read the letter from somebody without mentioning the name of the person who asking him to write this *risāla*, he says as follows: “I have read your *risāla* (treatise) on the issue which Christian factions in your community have raised and I can understand the confusion which these have caused in the minds”. As a result, al-Fath b. Khāqān, the vizier promised in his letter that he would give al-Jāḥīz one year’s earning in advance. Concerning the addressee of the *risāla*, Abū Milḥim, on the other hand, claims that al-Jāḥīz did not refer to any person, but only an illusory man. This is based on al-Jāḥīz’s statement; for example, he writes “I have read your *risāla* on the issues which Christian factions in your community have raised... etc”. This is due to the nature of the methodology of al-Jāḥīz’s writing which he always used a dialog style in order to attract the reader.

Pellat, however, only assumed that the *risāla* has been written as a supporting idea of al-Mutawakkil’s view regarding the relationship between Muslim and Christians in the Abbasid society. Perhaps, Pellat has observed from the announcement of decree made by the Caliph al-Mutawakkil which has been designed to ensure the strict application to Christian and Jews of the discriminatory status in the year 235/850 and 239/853. Because according to Brockelmann, the Christians and Jews at the time had played a big

---

role at court of the caliph.\textsuperscript{951} Actually, we agree with al-Ḥājirī when he stated that al-Jāḥīz’s main purpose of the writing of the \textit{risāla} was as a response to religious situation which according to him the Christians and the Jews are the sources of the atheists movement in the country at the time.\textsuperscript{952} Based on all of this information, it can be safely to say that the \textit{risāla} seem to have been written according to a wish of an authority either by the Caliph al-Mutawakkil or his vizier, al-Fatḥ b. Khāqān. It is seems here that al-Jāḥīz was able to maintain his relation with the Abbasid authority, although the Abbasid government has no longer upheld Muʿtazilite doctrine at that period.

6.2.4 The date of writing:

The only discussion of the possible date of writing the \textit{risāla} on the part of modern scholarship is that of al-Ḥājirī in his book on the life and works of al-Jāḥīz. He pointed out that the most logical date for this \textit{risāla} would be during the period of the Caliph al-Mutawakkil.\textsuperscript{953} El-Ḥātār also added the more specific period is in the third period of al-Mutawakkil in power which this era is classified as the era of the Sunni triumph and decline of Muʿtazila.\textsuperscript{954} In the light of both statements, the important thing can be said here is that this \textit{risāla} was written under the reign of the Caliph al-Mutawakkil which his power stretched from 232/846 until 247/861.

\textsuperscript{951} Brockelmann, \textit{History of the Islamic people}, p. 132.
\textsuperscript{952} Al-Ḥājirī, \textit{al-Jāḥīz ʿayyāh wa aḥārūh}, p. 359.
\textsuperscript{953} Ibid., p. 359.
\textsuperscript{954} El-Ḥātār, \textit{The political thought of al-Jāḥīz}, p. 387.
6.2.5 The structure of the *Risāla*:

Al-Jāḥīz seems to have compensated for the blow to the Mu'tazila by giving the praises to the Abbasids and responding to al-Fatḥ b. Khāqān wishes that were aggravated by the first Christian rebellion that threatened the Abbasid sovereignty in Armenia, given its proximity to the Roman land. From this point of view, Pellat assumes that the *Risāla fī al-radd ʿalā al-Nasārā* is consistent with measure taken by al-Mutawakkil against *Ahl al-Kitāb*. Furthermore, he regards this *risāla* as a polemical work which was designed to furnish arguments against Christians occupying high position in Muslim countries. On contrary, Hugh Goddard only considered the *risāla* is as much an attack on the social position of Christians as it is on their system of belief. However, let us now go back to the text of the *risāla* to see its content which can be divided into these structures:

1. Introduction – contains main Mu'tazilite principle.
2. Some of Christian’s criticisms on Muslims.
3. Note on Maryam (Mary) and ʿĪsā (Jesus).
4. Note on ʿUzayr (Ezra).
5. Note on Firaun (Pharaoh) telling Hāmān “*Build me a high tower*”.
7. Note on ʿĪsā spoke in the cradle.
8. Al-Jāḥīz’s strategic to tackle down Christian’s criticisms.
9. Why Muslims are more favourably towards Christians than other faith.

---

10. Clash between Muslims and Jews.
11. The Emigration of Muslims to Abyssinia.
12. The interpretation of some Qur'anic verses.
13. Some of the Arabs king adopts Christianity.
14. Trade relation between the Arabs and Christians.
15. Christianity spread among the Bedouin.
16. The Arabs assumed that Christians are philosophers and sages.
17. The Christians gain a better place in the heart of Caliph and Sultan.
18. Tolerance with Christians.
19. The role of Christian in spreading of atheism.
20. Some of Christian’s faith.
21. The Spread of castration between Christians.
22. Some of Christian’s culture.
23. Uncertainty on the nature of the Christianity.
24. Refutation of the Christian on the issue of Æsæ spoke in the cradle.
25. Refutation of the Christian on “al-Masîh (Messiah) is the son of God”.
26. Refutation of the Christian on “God is poor”.
27. Refutation of the Christian on “Æzayr is the son of God”.
28. Refutation of the Christian on “Messiah is the spirit of God”.
29. Conclusion.
6.2.6 Analysis of the main issue in the *Risāla*:

One would gather from what al-Jāḥīz says about the *risāla* in his introduction to his *al-Iḥyāʾ al-wāḥīn* that he intended it to be as a response to the argument posed by Christians.\(^{958}\) However, it is interesting to note here that Ibn Qutayba, one of al-Jāḥīz’s contemporary scholars was not satisfied with the content of the *risāla*. For example, he claimed that its content is like the list of the grievances that Christians have against Muslims. In other occasion, Ibn Qutayba also stated that al-Jāḥīz, as the author of the *risāla* highlights more Muslims weaknesses.\(^{959}\) However, a study of the *risāla* gives us a useful indication of al-Jāḥīz’s evidences to defend Muslims against Christians. For instance, in the opening chapter of the *risāla*, al-Jāḥīz talks about his role in this work when he clarifies: “I shall respond to each of these points – and to others besides – with powerful arguments and compelling evidence. Once I delivered my response, I shall proceed to address specific issues wherein lies, as Christians are well aware, the refutation of their teaching, and dissolution of their doctrine and complete collapse of their religion”\(^{960}\).

And as a Muslim writer, he seeks from Allah Almighty for help and forgiveness, before he goes onto further discussion. He says: “I seek refuge in God from unfounded

---


assumption. I beseech Him for clarity of purpose in word and in deed, for His sake and for the triumph oh His religion. He is close at hand and to our prayers responding”. 961

In his introduction, al-Jāḥīz as usual tries to explain some of the Muʿtazila doctrines to his reader. Here, we find him saying: “All praise be to Allah who has bestowed on us the knowledge of His oneness, inspired us to reject mankind’s sophistry and contrivance and moved us to dismiss all distinctions between His apostles. We deny no scripture He has enjoined us to believe in and add nothing thereto that has no rightful palace therein. He is the Glorious and the Omnipotent and alone is worthy of our praise”. 962

6.2.6.1 The issue of Muslims-Christians-Jews relation:

Among al-Jāḥīz strategic to tackle down Christian’s criticisms, he highlights the reason why Muslims are more favourably towards Christians than other faiths. We find that he starts by pointed out the main issue of Muslim-Christian-Jews relation in the past till his age by saying that “I shall begin by considering why the Muslim masses are more favourably disposed towards Christian than they are towards Zoroastrians and ... Jews”. 963 From al-Jāḥīz’s point of view, this is refers to the case of Muslims and Jews relationship when they have bad relation since they were lived side by side at Medina. On the contrary, the relationship between Muslim and Christian was in good condition because Christian’s lands were distant from both Mecca and Medina, and they never

resorted to intrigue against Muslim. According to al-Jāḥīz, this is the principle reason why Muslim opinion became set against Jews, but remains tolerant with Christians.

The second point al-Jāḥīz raised here is the history of Judaism and Christianity in Arabia before and under Islam. He writes: “Another point to note is that Christianity, unlike Judaism and Zoroastrianism, had spread among the Bedouin...” And then he adds “Christianity prevailed among the Arabs kings and the tribes of Lakhm, Ghassān, Ḥārith b. Kaʿab at Najrān, Khudhāʿa and Ṭayy, to name but a few. It later, spread among Rabīʿa, Tighlab, ʿAbd al-Qays, obscure elements of Bakr, in particular, among the Dhū al-Jaddayn. However, by the time of coming Islam, there were no predominantly Jewish tribes outside the Yemen, except for insignificant element of Iyyāḍ and Rabīʿa...”

Al-Jāḥīz then proceeds to explain wherein lies the apparent superiority of Christians, he writes: “The reason why the common people respects and love them is that they include among their number secretaries, kings, flunkeys, noblemen’s physicians, perfumers and money-changers, whereas the Jews are dyers, tanners, barbers, butchers and tinkers”.

In his explanation to content of the Qur’ānic verse (5: 82-85) which means: “Verily, you will find the strongest among men in enmity to the believers (Muslims) the Jews and those who are al-Mushrikūn, and you will find the nearest in love the believers (Muslims) those who say: "We are Christians". ...”. Such is the recompense of those who

do well”⁹⁶⁷ al-Jāhiz writes: “these same verses provide strong evidence that Allah Almighty was not referring to such Christians as the ones you speak of their Milkiya (Melchite) and Ya`kubiya (Jacobite), but, rather, to the likes of Bahira and the monks whom Salman served. Just because they all claim to be Christian does not mean we have to treat them all alike”.⁹⁶⁸ Concerning to this point of view, ‘Iwad al-Karīm admits that al-Jāhiz is the first Muslim scholars who had brought this idea into Islamic thought.⁹⁶⁹ However, it is seems that al-Jāhiz assumed that not all Christian accepted in this category.

6.2.6.2 The doctrine and custom of Christianity:

One can notice that al-Jāhiz in this *risāla* writes also about some of the Christianity doctrine. For example, he says: “It is simply astonishing that no primate, bishop, archbishop, Jacobite hermit, Nestorian (or any other) monk or nun anywhere engages in procreative activity, in spite of the legion of monk and nuns around, the army of priest who follow their lead, the hordes of campaign veterans in their ranks and their share or normal male and female sterility. Christian who does take a wife cannot divorce and remarry or take a second wife or concubine”.⁹⁷⁰

Besides this, al-Jāhiz also writes about some of Christian’s bad custom, such as human castration, eating pigs, and etc. For example, he said about human castration as follows: “Proof of the moral corruption and lack of compassion of Christians is that they,

---

uniquely, practice that grimmest of all human custom: castration. They even performed it on innocent children". Then he attacks Christians: "He (Christian) may be better dressed, practice a higher profession and be less hideous to look at than the Jew but the Christian is, at heart, a foul and dirty creature. Why? Because he is uncircumcised, does not wash after intercourse and eats pig meat. His wife does not wash after intercourse, either, or even after menstruation and childbirth, which leave her absolutely filthy. Furthermore she, too, is uncircumcised".

When he completed from describing some of Christian’s custom, he moved to explain more specific about the reality of Christianity because according to him, it is impossible to discover exactly what their religion consists of. He asked: “Even if you made a supreme mental effort to grasp their teaching on the Messiah and, particular, the doctrine of the nature of divinity, you would fail to understand the essential point of Christianity”. He says again: “How could you? If you corner a Nestorian and ask him about the doctrine of Messiah, he will tell you one thing. If you then corner his brother (also a Nestorian) and ask him the same thing, he will tell you something else. In consequence, we cannot grasp the truth of Christianity as we can of all other religions”.

6.2.6.3 The argumentative issues:

In the next paragraph, al-Jāḥīz starts his arguments about the main issue in Christianity. The first issue is the refutation of Christians about Jesus having spoken in the cradle. From al-Jāḥīz's point of view, in spite of their wish to glorify Jesus, it forms no part of their belief. He writes on the issue as follows: "Let me now respond to their denial of the infant Jesus in the cradle. When Christians thought up and posed this spurious issue, they supposed that their purpose had been achieved. Not so. It may charm their audience with superficial appeal but it is, in truth, a stark abomination and an act of desperation."

It is a brilliant point from al-Jāḥīz to deal with the problem that has been arises among Christians. Then, he goes to another sensitive issue which can be crack down the relationship between Muslim and Christian. The issue is about the question “Is the Jesus son of God?” Concerning that issue, one can observed from the risāla that al-Jāḥīz had succeeded in handling this sensitive issue, he answers to the question that had been arise by Christians as follows: “I do not accept that God may have a son, either begotten of the flesh or by adoption. I believe that to allow such a thing is gross ignorance and cardinal sin. If it were possible for God to be Jacob’s father, He would be grandfather to Joseph. Were it conceivable – without implying a paternity, supposing any sort of physical similarity or in any way demeaning His majesty – for God to be both father and grandfather, it would be conceivable for Him to be an uncle, too. Were it possible to call Him “father” out of love and obedience, it would be equally possible to Him “brother”

out of honour and respect. It would also be conceivable that He find Himself a friend and partner. However, all this would only be deemed possibly by someone ignorant of the majesty of God and the insignificance of humanity”. 976

In another occasion, al-Jāḥīz comes again with other evidence, he says: “If the Messiah is to be known as the son of God because God conceived immaculately, ought more properly to be described as the children of God – if, indeed, Immaculate Conception was the reason why God took Jesus as His son. If, however, it was because of how He raised him, we might ask in what way did He raise him any differently from Moses, David and the other prophets?”. 977

Moving to next paragraph, al-Jāḥīz goes further to discuss the complain from Christians that we Muslims accuse the adherent of other faiths of believing certain things which they do not and could not possibly believe such as, Muslim claim that the Jews said, God is poor and we are rich (Sūra Āl īmārān, 3:181), the hand of God is tied (Sūra al-Mā‘īda, 5:64), and etc. As regards to this matter, al-Ribiz also brings a strong argument to deny the statement. He says: “My reply to them is that the accursed Jews vilify the Qur’ān, attempt to disprove it, look for faults in it, accuse the Messenger to whom it was revealed of making mistakes, attack it from every side and seek to undermine it with every device, to confuse the minds of the simple and lead the hearts of the foolish ashtray... How could anyone believe that God is unable to do anything man can do yet acknowledge that He is the One who created and sustains him? If He wished, He could

deprive him of everything he has. If He wished, He could torment him or forgive him.
His power to do all things is as His power to do just one”. 978

Referring to the same issue, al-Jahiz as linguistic scholar, tries to explain the word “qarfd” when God quoted the Jews as saying: *Who is the one who will give unto God a goodly loan that He shall multiply for him?”* (Sūra al-Baqara, 2:245). Al-Jahiz states: “The verse in question obviously metaphorical and its interpretation is perfectly clear”. Indeed, this is similar to this saying: “A man short of cash might tell his slave, “Lend me a dirham”, although he knows that the slave and everything he owns belong to him. It is simply a speech act that demonstrates his decency towards the slave and indicates that he will repay what he himself has given him. This is not an incorrect or strained use of language”. 979

From this explanation, one can notice how luminous al-Jahiz when he replies to the Jews saying that *the hand of God is tied*. To prove this, he delves into the psychology of the scholar. He writes: “By saying, *the hand of God is tied*, they were really referring to God’s goodness and mercy, even if they did not state it openly.” 980 Then, al-Jahiz relates it with another verse from al-Qur’ān which means: *Indeed, His hands are both stretched out. He bestows just as He wills* (Sūra al-Mā’ida, 5:64). And he proceeds: “This proves my point”. 981

Al-Jāḥīz then goes to discuss the second Christians complains on behalf of the Jews that we Muslims accuse the Jews saying that Ezra is the son of God. He writes again: “Regarding the contention that the Jews do not really claim that Ezra is the son of God, there are, in fact, two Jewish positions, one of which is localised while the other is held by all Jewish communities”. 982 He then continues: “The specific case is this: when some Jews realised the Ezra had, by himself, restored the Pentateuch to them after it had been effected and scattered, they went overboard and came up with the claim that he is God’s son....They generally held position is that every Jews is begotten by Israel and it thus the son of God, since the son of the son must himself be a son”. 983

After further exegetical consideration, al-Jāḥīz comes to the problem of the Christians denying that Jesus is the spirit and the word of God. He reply: “You have question us about what is accepted in our language and our religion not in yours....If in saying ‘Jesus is the Spirit and Word of God’ (Sūra al-Nisā’, 4:171), we were bound according to our own language to admit that God made him His son, to regard his as another god beside God, and to say that a Spirit was in God and left Him and entered into Jesus’s body and Mary breast, then we should have to say the same of the angel Gabriel; for he also has been called Spirit of God and sanctified Spirit”. 984

This was the last point that al-Jāḥīz wants to arise in this risāla. After all he says: “I have dealt with the issues which Christians have raised more rigorously than they themselves have done, in order to make this guide complete and my response

comprehensive. The reader who reflects on replies will appreciate that I have not exploited weakness or seized upon oversight but have been summoned by reason and confidence in salvation to speak candidly about their faith as they cannot do themselves.\textsuperscript{985}

However, as usual, in his digression, al-Jāḥīz comes again with the last point he would like to conclude his writing. Here, al-Jāḥīz endeavours to show that Jesus is a man like other men, asserting that Jesus only an anthropomorphist could accept that divinity could be incarnated in human body. He draws his last question: "Was the Messiah ... a man and not a god or a god not man? Or was he both god and man?\textsuperscript{986} He says the answer of this question could be found his work entitled Risāla fī nafy al-tashbih.

6.2.7 The style of writing:

Our examination of al-Jāḥīz's argumentation in the Risāla fī al-radd 'alā al-Naṣārā reveals his Muʿtazilite conviction. One can see him reasoning logically in accordance with canons of rhetoric, as well as reasoning from the mean between two positions, or from the psychological realities of human motivation. He writes in a distinctive way arguing with thoroughness and orderliness surprising in its ability to maintain reader interest. For example, he starts his writing with this word:

\textsuperscript{985} Ibid., Vol. III, p. 349; see also ʿUyun al-Sūd's edition, Vol. III, p. 263.
I have read your essay on the issue which Christian's factions in your community have raised and I can well understand the confusion which these have caused in the minds of the young and easily-led. I sympathise with your concern for the latter's inability to respond adequately...

While, on the other hand, al-Jāḥiz has been portrayed as writing almost carelessly and sometimes given to digression and half serious, however, here in the risāla one can found that al-Jāḥiz's writing systematically with a plan in mind, and, for most part, with seriousness. To illustrate that, let us find these elements particularly in the second portion of the risāla. For example, al-Jāḥiz writes:

(وستقول في جميع ما ورد علينا من مسائلكم، وفيما لا يقع إليكم كم مسائلهم، بالشهاد)

(I shall respond to each of these points with powerful arguments and compelling evidence. Once I have delivered my response, I shall proceed to address specific issue wherein lies, as Christians are well aware, the refutation of their teaching, and dissolution of their doctrine and complete collapse of their religion).

Then, he writes:

(قلنا مثقيادة في ذكر الأسباب التي لها صارت النصراء أحب إلى العوا من المجوس،)

(I shall begin by considering why the Muslim masses are more favourable disposed towards Christians than they are towards Zoroastrians and why they believe them to be more trustworthy, more sociable, less pernicious, lesser infields).
Afterwards, he continues:

(وأول ذلك أن اليهود كانوا جيران المسلمين يثرب وغيرها ... وكانت النصارى لبعد
ديارهم ، من مبعث النبي صلى الله عليه وسلم ومهاجره ، لا يتكلفون طعنا ، ولا يثيرون كيدا ، ولا)

(The first point to note is that Jews and Muslims were neighbours in Medina and elsewhere, ... However, because their lands were distant from both Mecca (where Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) was born) and Medina (where Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) emigrate), Christians never restored to intrigue, vilification and open hostility against Muslims).

He proceeds again by given his second reason:

(وأمر آخر ، وهو من أمنن أسبابهم وأقوى أمورهم ، وهو تأويل آية غلطت فيها العامة حتى
نازعة الخاصة ... وهو تأويل الآية : لتجدن أشد الناس عدوى للذين أمنوا اليهود والذين أشركوا
ولتجدن أقربهم مودة للذين أمنوا الذين قالوا إنا نصارى)

(The other thing which is one the most compelling reasons of all concern the interpretation of certain Qur'anic verse which have been misunderstood by the Muslim masses. Christians picked up on them and used them to bend the ears of the rabble. These are the verses in which the Qur'an said: "Verily, you will find the strongest among men in enimity to the believers (Muslims) the Jews and those who are al-Mushrikūn, and you will find the nearest in love the believers (Muslims) those who say: "We are Christians").

Finally, at the end of the risāla, al-Jāḥiz concludes with this humble statement:

(قد جعلنا في جواباتهم وقدمنا مسائلهم ، بما لم يكونوا ليلغوا لأنفسهم ، ليكون الذليل تاما ، والجواب
جامعا ، وليعلم من قرأ هذا الكتاب ، وتدبر هذا الجواب، أنا لم نغتنم عجزهم ، ولم ننتهز غرثهم ...
...and answered them with a scholarly response to their queries, as I have dealt with the issue which Christians have raised more rigorously than they themselves have done, in order to make this guide complete and my responses comprehensive. The reader who reflects on my replies will appreciate that I have not exploited weaknesses or seized upon oversights... I hope to have the opportunity of questioning them and scrutinizing their replies, just as I fully expect them to interrogate me. I have already considered the questions I shall ask.)

In addition, the *risāla* also draw heavily on verses of the Qur’ān, in which the author based his arguments and built his case. For example, in the first page of the *risāla*, the author told us that the Christians claim to have never professed, either in private or in public, about the divinity of Maryam (Mary). Here, he quotes this Qur’ānic verse Sūra al-Mā’i đa (5:116):

> “And (remember) when Allah will say (on the Day of Resurrection): "O Isa (Jesus), son of Maryam (Mary)! Did you say unto men: "Worship me and my mother as two gods besides Allah?"

In another occasion, al-Jāhiz again quotes another Qur’ānic verse to support his argument especially when he mentioned the claim by Christians or Jews. For instance, he quotes this verse (Sūra al-Baqara, 2:245):

> “Who is he that will loan to Allah a beautiful loan, unto his credit and multiply many times?”

Al-Jāhiz then recorded what had been said by Jews: “They replied in that insulting and arrogant manner of their: “God, you say, wants loan but He would not be
asking us were He not poor”. Afterwards, al-Jāḥīz replied: “This verse in question is obviously metaphorical and its interpretation is perfectly clear. One man lends money to another as a favour and small profit accrue to himself, along with the eventual return of his capital, which remains at risk until it has been repaired.”

This brilliant statement from al-Jāḥīz shows us that our author also has his special skill in tackling the claims from his opponents.

The language of the risāla is obviously in the debate style. For instance, the author, frequently use these passages to express his view such as “They claim”, “If they said” and “If they asked”, etc. To illustrate that, let us follow these quotations:
These quotations seem to us that the author made the structure of this risāla on the dialogue style. Or in other words, we can say that this style of writing is designed not to reveal the structure of the argument but to carry the reader along maintaining his interest and eliciting from him a positive response.

6.3 Risāla fī manāṣib al-Turk wa ʾammat jund al-khilāfah (The virtue of Turk and the whole army of the Caliphate)

6.3.1 The significance of the Risāla:

In general, Islamic history is not concerned with only one people such as the Arabs; it is the history of several nations, Turks and Persians, etc. However, the clash between these nationalities occurred in the Abbasid time. The Turks for example, they come into existence from Samarkand and Bukhara and marched to Baghdad. During the reign of the Caliph al-Muʿtaṣīm, as the Caliph himself having Turkish blood on his mother's side, he has invited many strong, healthy and pure-blooded Turks to joint him in the government, and he founded a magnificence army and employed them in the most significant positions. Explaining the position of the Turks at that time, al-Mas'ūdī said as follows: “The Turks became the owners of everything (in the Caliphate countries); the rest of the people were either listeners (to their order) or submissive (to their will)”.

---

987 For further information on the origin of the Turks, see Brockelmann, History of the Islamic Peoples, p. 163; see also Kitapchi, al-Turk fī muʿallaṣat al-Jāḥīz, pp. 29-37.
The Turks reached their zenith in the time of the Caliph al-Mutawakkil in which according to al-Ṭabarī, at the time, there were two hundred thousand Turks in the Caliphate army.\textsuperscript{991} This is the result of al-Mutawakkil’s policy when he recruited a large number of Turkish slaves. Therefore, he created a sort of military class, whose role according to him, was to protect the caliph and the government. But the reverse happened; the caliph was assassinated following on a plot hatched by Turkish officers.\textsuperscript{992}

\textit{Risāla fī manāqib al-Turk} is the second work of al-Jāḥīz will be discussed in this part. The significant of this \textit{risāla} lies on the question of inequality, racial and national which becomes the main social and political problem in the Abbasid society. Here, the author tries to explain his attitude towards the all nationalities and give them their rights and merit which according to him, every nation has their special characteristics, by which they are distinguished from each other. However, in this \textit{risāla}, he stresses on the Turkish racial national and military characteristics and peculiarities more than others as we shall see later.\textsuperscript{993} When describing the \textit{risāla}, Pellat said that is concern to conciliate the troops that al-Jāḥīz takes the opportunity of praising the Turks in order to flatter the court favourite al-Fatḥ b. Ḵāqān, who was of Turkish extraction.\textsuperscript{994}

\textsuperscript{991} Al-Ṭabarī, \textit{Ṭurkh al-umam wa al-mulūk}, Vol. XI, p. 32.
\textsuperscript{993} In the same tradition, we can mention here \textit{Risāla fī al-ṣaḥāba} by Ibn al-Muqaffāʾ which was cited with regard to military propagandas. It contains concrete proposal for establishing an enduring Abbasid state. For excellent analysis on the text of the \textit{risāla}, see Latham, \textit{Ibn al-Muqaffāʾ and early Abbasid prose}, pp. 64-73.
\textsuperscript{994} Pellat, \textit{The life and works of Jāḥīz}, p. 18.
6.3.2 The addressee of the Risāla:

Beeston claimed that the risāla is formally addressed to the Caliph al-Mutawakkil, however, most scholars of al-Jāḥiz agreed that the real addressee of the risāla is al-Fatḥ b. Khāqān. He was the son of Khāqān b. Ghurtuj of the Turkish ruling family at Farghana. Biographical information concerning him is scarce; nevertheless, he must have been born around 200/846, because he was probably same age as al-Mutawakkil. He was a member of the caliph’s literary circle and he was himself a writer and poet. Amongst his works, as recorded by Ibn Khallikān are Ikhtilāf al-mulūk, al-Sayyid wa al-jāriḥ and al-Rawḍa wa al-zahr, but, none of these works has come down to us.

In addition to this risāla, al-Jāḥiz wrote also another work entitled Naẓm al-Qurʾān which he addresses it to al-Fatḥ b. Khāqān. However, as far as we know, this work also has not come down to us. Some scholars claimed that it was a book on the

---

995 Beeston, Samples of Arabic Prose, p. 12.
996 One should bear in mind that this person is not the other al-Fatḥ b. Khāqān who is his full name, al-Fatḥ b. Muhammad b. Ībāy d Allah b. Khāqān. He is an Andalusian anthologist whose history is somewhat obscure. He is the author of the book entitled Qalā‘id al-ṣayyān fī maḥāsin al-dīya. He was assassinated at the date which various sources varies between 528/1134 and 555/1160, however the year 529/1134 being the most possible. See Encyclopaedia of Islam, art. Al-Fatḥ b. Khāqān, Vol. II, p. 838.
inimitability of the Holy Qur'ān in which the author analysed the content of the Qur'ān from literary point of view.\textsuperscript{1000}

6.3.3 The date and the purpose of writing:

The precise date of composition of the two parts of the \textit{risāla} cannot be determined. However, as it has been mentioned earlier that the second part of the \textit{risāla} was written during the reign of the Caliph al-Mu'tāṣim, but it does not reached him. This means that the second part of the \textit{risāla} was written between the year 218/833 and 227/842 when the Caliph al-Mu'tāṣim was the caliph of the Abbasid dynasty. On the other hand, the first part of the \textit{risāla} was written during the reign of the Caliph al-Mutawakkil particularly in the time of al-Fāṭḥ b. Khāqān being his vizier. This means that this part was written by al-Jāḥiẓ between the year 232/847 and 247/861. And then it was combined together with the second part and hand over to al-Fāṭḥ b. Khāqān. We know that under the caliphate al-Mutawakkil, the Mu'tazila policy was once abandoned and no Abbasid caliph ever attempted to return to it. And al-Jāḥiẓ of course, try to make his attempt to be more closer to this new policy, presumably this is the main reason of the composition of the \textit{risāla}.

However, it seems to us that his main purpose of the writing of this \textit{risāla} is an attempt of establishing an idea of equality through compromise between all the elements which the caliphate had to employ under its own power. Thus, the fact remains that it was

\textsuperscript{1000} See al-Ḥājirī, \textit{al-Jāḥiẓ: wa ẓuhūr wa ẓāhirīh}, p.322.
written in accordance with the Abbasid policy at al-Jāḥiz’s time.\textsuperscript{1001} Therefore, Najm maintains that this \textit{risāla} was written especially by al-Jāḥiz in praise of the Turks as soldier of the Caliphate.\textsuperscript{1002} Or in other word, it can be said the Turkish fighting units are compared to four other groups in the army of the Caliphate; i.e. the Arabs, Mawālī (clients), Abnā’, and Khurāsānis.

6.3.4 The title and the text of the \textit{Risāla}:

Yāqūt claimed that the title of the \textit{risāla} is \textit{Manāqib jund al-khilāfa wa faḍā’il al-Atrāk}. However, most of the modern scholars of al-Jāḥiz such as Pellat, Hārūn, al-Ḥājirī and others agreed that the correct reading of the \textit{risāla} is \textit{Risāla fī manāqib al-Turk wa āmmat jund al-khilāfa}. On the other hand, some scholars simply named it as “\textit{Faḍā’il al-Atrāk}”.\textsuperscript{1003} Al-Ḥājirī claims that the text of the \textit{risāla} is in two portions which had been written by al-Jāḥiz in different time.\textsuperscript{1004} The second part was written during the reign of the Caliph al-Muṭaṣim, while the first part in the reign of the Caliph al-Mutawakkil as has been mentioned by al-Jāḥiz in his introduction to this part. He states: “In the name of Allah, the Compassionate and the Merciful. This is a book (the second part) I wrote in the days of al-Muṭaṣim Billah (May Allah is pleased with him). It did not reach him for reasons which would take a long time to explain. Therefore, I did not give information


\textsuperscript{1002} Najm, \textit{Studies in the writing of al-Jāḥiz}, p. 81.


\textsuperscript{1004} Al-Ḥājirī, \textit{al-Jāḥiz hayātuh wa āḥārūh}, p. 293.
about it. The both part afterwards hand over to al-Fatḥ b. Khāqān when he was a vizier of the Caliph al-Mutawakkil.

Referring to the text of *risāla* in Hārūn’s and ‘Uyūn al-Sūd’s edition, one can observe that the first part of the *risāla* begins with al-Jāḥiz’s statement: “In the name of Allah, the Compassionate and the Merciful. May Allah grant you success in following right course, help you to be thankful, make you and your hand sure, place us both among those who speak the truth .....”, while the second part starts with this statement: “In the name of Allah, the Compassionate and the Merciful. This is a book I wrote in the days of al-Mu’taṣim Billah (May Allah is pleased with him). It did not reach him for reasons which would take a long time to explain ...”

The *risāla* was published at Leyden in 1903 edited by G. van Vloten. But he died before completing the work; it was continued and sent to the press by de Goeje. Since then, it published again in the Muhammad Sāsī al-Maghrībi’s collection in 1907. The latest edition we have now is Hārūn’s and ‘Uyūn al-Sūd’s edition. Both edition differs slightly from that G. van Vloten and Sāsī al-Maghrībi and is cited throughout the text.

---

1007 This edition entitled “*Tria opuscula, auctore al-Djahiz*”. It was printed by E.J. Brill, Leiden, 1903, pp. 1-56.
An English translation was published by C. T. Walker entitled “Exploits of the Turks and the Army of the Caliphate in General” which he used the Cairo edition for his translation. The text of the *risāla* is divided into three parts which he named it as Letter I, Letter II, and Letter III. The latest English translation of the *risāla* could be found in “Nine Essay of al-Jāḥiẓ” by M. Hutchins entitled “The Virtue of the Turks”. Pellat also in his book on the life and works of Jāḥiẓ has translated some selected pages from various place of the *risāla* under the heading “The merits of the Turks and the Imperial army as whole”.

6.3.5 The structure of the *Risāla*:

*Risāla fi manāqib al-Turk* is dealing with the comparative qualities of the various racial elements in the army and their composition as can be seen in this brief outline which will be divided into these structures:

a. Part one:

1. Introduction – Dedication to al-Fatḥ b. Khāqān.
2. The unity of the imperial army.
3. Al-Jāḥiẓ compared the merits of Turk with those of other groups.
4. The Case of Khurasānīs.
5. The Case for the Arabs.

---


6. The Case for the Mawālī (clients).

7. The Case for the Abnā’ (The descendant of the Persian immigrant).

8. The conclusion of the first part.

b. Part Two:

1. Time of composition.

2. The virtue of the Turks.

3. The Turks as horseman.

4. National characteristics.

5. List of the qualities required in war.

6. Quote a line of reasoning by which the Turks claim to be closer to the caliphate than the Arabs.

9. Some information about customary law among Khurasanis and the Turks.

10. Some anecdote.

11. Conclusion

6.3.6 Analysis of the main issue in the *Risāla*:

In his introduction, al-Jāḥiẓ starts his *risāla* by recording his praise to al-Fath b. Khāqān. He then declares that knowledge must precede action by saying as follows: “people have sought clear understanding and for love of safety from destruction and desire for prosperity, they have endured the burden of knowledge and hastened on with the hated part of reform, because there are few doers and many prescribers”.

After that al-Jāhiz expresses his admiration for the loyalty and zeal with which al-
Fatḥ b. Khāqān defends his leader against the enemies of authority. He writes: "I have
been pleased by what I have seen your zealous obedience to your leader, defence of your
caliph's rule... For authority is never free of the vindictive busybody, a man angry at
being convicted, a disparaging man whose sentence was redressed, the unemployed critic,
a person pleased with his own opinion whose presentation is foolish, one who loves to
scorn the right way, objects to sound management, until he seems a scout for all the
nation and minister for the inhabitants of all the realm".\textsuperscript{1015}

6.3.6.1 The composition of army:

The component of the caliphate army at the time of al-Fatḥ b. Khāqān consists of
five groups: Khurāsānis, Turks, Mawālī, Arabs and Abnā'. According to al-Jāhiz, al-Fatḥ
b. Khāqān had declared that the army could really be regarded as composed entirely of
Khurāsānis, and there were no sharp distinctions between these various groups. However,
we find that al-Jāhiz propose to deal with the Turks and compare their merit with those of
the other groups, and provides with evidences which conciliating him.

6.3.6.2 The catalogue of virtues:

6.3.6.2.1 The Khurasānī group:

Al-Jāḥīz starts his comparison by the case of Khurasānī and immediately invokes the memories of the Abbasid revolution. They are the early Khurasānis who brought the Abbasid to power. Therefore, al-Jāḥīz records in this risāla some of the qualities that the Khurasānī were proud with. For example, they boast: “We are chieftains and the son of chieftains; they are nobles and the son of nobles. They are provided the Abbasid missionaries and it was through them the kingdom of their foes ceased from its place, and the kingdom of their friend was established. And they also claimed that they have conquered the lands and killed the enemies and destroyed the foe in every valley. And finally, they claimed that they are the people of this dynasty and the missionaries of this claim and the root of this tree; and from their direction blows this wind...etc. So, we deserve better to be preferred and have the better right to the first place”.

There then follows a list of major military campaign, beginning with the fortification of the villages in Khurāsān, and ending with an allusion to the siege of Wasīṭ. The author also cites a variant of the famous tradition in which Muhammad b. cʿAlī, considered where to send his ṣufī (propagandist). The Khurasānī therefore boasts: “We are the best contingent for the best imām. We vindicate his opinion, confirmed his idea, and prove the accuracy of his insight”.

1017 Ibid., Vol. 1, p. 16; see also ʿUyūn al-Sūd’s edition, Vol. 1, p. 17.
Al-Jahiz completes the case for the Khurāsānis with a description of their cultural background, fighting qualities, and armour. Initially, his praise for them seems to us is generous; unique in the history of Islam, highly discipline and remarkably well-behaved towards the civilian population.

6.3.6.2.2 The Arab group:

If these are the virtues of Khurāsānis, who are the Arabs and what are their claims? Al-Jahiz's description of the Arabs is obviously presented. The next paragraph the writer moves on to record some of the qualities which the Arabs claimed. For instance, he quotes what the Arabs having said: "the Arabs that the merit is earned by established relationship and intermarriage and ancient association and obedience to parents and tribe, and by serviceable gratitude and adequate eulogy, and by measured verse, which endures as long as time and shines like a star, and is recited, so long as men start on pilgrimage and the east wind blows and the olive is pressed, by prose and speech worthy to be handed down, and description of the origin of the dynasty and argument on behalf of its claims and perpetuating its exploits, since the non-Arabs are not used to this, and this not related as known to any but the Arabs".\footnote{Ibid., Vol. I, p. 21-22; see also 'Uyun al-Sūd's edition, Vol. I, pp. 20-21.}

The Arab also boasts, "Who are most of the agents (naqīb), if not, in essence, Arabs (min samīn al-ʿArab)".\footnote{Ibid., Vol. I, p. 22; see also 'Uyun al-Sūd's edition, Vol. I, p. 21.} A description of their military exploits is the same as
that of the Khurāsānis. There is, one difference: whereas a Khurāsānī is credited with killing the last Umayyad Caliph, it is an Arab who spread the good news. If there any other subtle differences between the so-called Arabs and Khurāsānis of al-Jāhiz, it is not clear from a reading of the text.

6.3.6.2.3 The Mawāli group: 1020

The smallest section of the risāla is reversed for the Mawāli. They were least significant compare to the other component of the Caliphate army. 1021 Al-Jāhiz records the Mawāli (the client) saying: "We are the really loyal and the really affectionate. We are trusted in a crisis. We are kinder to patrons, more dependable, and happier with what is provided. And to us belong, among the chief of nobility and to us belong the exploits of the people of Khurāsān and the exploit of the Abbasid propaganda; and we belong to them and are reckoned among them." 1022

Their role as a distinct division of the army was limited. They were units under the name of Mawāli that fought in campaigns subsequent to the revolution, but these were relatively small and the occasions on which they served were extremely rare. 1023

1020 Mawlā (pl. Mawāli) is Arabic term for clientship. For further information on this issue, see The Encyclopedia of Islam, art. Mawlā, Vol. VI, pp. 874-882.
1023 Lassner, The Shaping of the Abbasid Rule, p. 128. For more information on military slaves and their role in the early Abbasid state, see Daniel, Slave soldier and Islam, the genesis of the military system, Yale University Press, New Haven, 1981.
6.3.6.2.4 The Banawi group:

This group is among the early contingents of the army. Al-Jahiz linked them, as a group, to service in the Caliphate army. According to author, the Banawi is an expert at close combat. When weapons are exhausted, the Banawi grabs the neck of his foe. They also knows how to stab with the knife and fend off the dagger and so on. On the Banawi origin, al-Jahiz says: "Banawi said that my root is Khurasan. It was the place where the state originated and the call began... until the truth was established and covered the horizon with its light." He continues: "And my branch is Baghdad. It is the residence of the caliphate and the place of the material resources. It is the Khurasan of Iraq, the home of the caliphate, and the place of substance". The Banawi also boasts: "We know how to fight at the entrances to protective moats and at the bridges.... We are masters of night fighting and kill openly in the markets and the roads.... We fight in the water as well as in the land". Because of this, the Banawi says: "Thus who has more right to preference and is more worthy of high rank than one with these inner qualities and characteristics". Other images of the Banawi in al-Jahiz's description reappear in the description of the qualities of the Turks.

1024 The term abnš (sing. Ibn) literally means "sons". See, Wehr, *A Dictionary of Modern Written Arabic*, p. 76. Lassner described abnš as the foster sons of the Caliphs and the neighbours of the wası̄s. They are born in the court of their kings and under the wings of their Caliphs, see Lassner, *The Shaping of the Abbasid Rule*, p. 132. On the other hand, Pellat suggested that they are descendents of Persian immigrants in the Yemen, see Pellat, *The life and works of Jāhiz*, p. 276. However, we are agreed with Beeston's remarks on Pellat suggestion that al-Jahiz used the term not with reference to Iranians but to 'second generation' Iraqi-born troops of Turkish parentage, see, *The life and works of Jāhiz* by Pellat, rev. by Beeston, *Journal of Arabic literature*, Vol. II, 1971, p. 196.


In his conclusion for the first part of the *risāla*, al-Jāḥīẓ hopes that he has undertaken his book solely to bring together those hearts that differed, to add to friendship if they were friendly, and to tell of the agreement of their origins, so their that their word can agree and those ignorant of the amount of distance in lineage and extent of difference in descent will learn.

It seems that the main purpose of this part of the *risāla*, firstly, the author mentions some stories which related to the case of study, either matters seen or witnessed, or taken straight from mouths of men and heard, secondly, he will mention all the instruments and tools these groups have, and finally, he will examine which of them uses most, which are least dependent on them, and so on.

After all he hopes this work will be accepted because he said the choice is in the hand of the observer, who leafs through these ideas, ponder their aspects, reflect on the chapters, and compares the beginning with the end.

Moving to the part two of the *risāla*, we find that al-Jāḥīẓ told us the precise date of writing of the *risāla*. He said that he wrote this work in the days of the caliph al-Muṭaṣim Billah. However, he said it did not reach the caliph for the reason which would take a long time to explain. Therefore, he said he did not give information about it. He wants it to be a forthright book and a fair presentation. And he did not want it to be a book with immoderate praise for one people and excessive scorn for others. \(^{1028}\)

Because of this purpose, he said he did not want to mention only the virtue of the Turks, but also the vices of the rest of the troops, and sometimes he said omitting of all would be more correct and forsaking this book more prudent.

6.3.6.2.5 The virtue of the Turks:

We find that al-Jāḥīz in the most part of this section focusing on the quotation of reasoning by which the Turks claim to be closer to the caliphate army rather than the other groups. For instance, al-Jāḥīz records that the Turks have claimed as follows: “The Turks can shoot beasts and birds, targets on spears and human being. The Turks also ride his horse with downward sweep from a mountain or down below inside a ravine at a greater speed. And one single Turk is as good as whole staff. And if a Turk is advancing along with an army composed of some other contingent, where the rest go ten miles, he goes twenty; and again the Turk does not march like other people at all, and does not proceed at all in a straight line .... etc”.1029

Al-Jāḥīz continues his praise and eulogy of the Turks and quoting informations borrowed from the man known as Ḥumayd.1030 From these qualities that had been recorded by al-Jāḥīz was the great evidence which made up the Turks closer to the caliphate army.

---

1030 The full name of this man is Ḥumayd b. ʿAbd al-Ḥamīd al-Ṭūsī, who was also known as Abū Ghānim. He is one of the famous the Abbasid amīr (leader), and he has played a big role in helping the caliph al-Maʿmūn against Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdī. See *ʿUyān al-Sūd*, *Rasāʾil al-Jāḥīz*, Vol. I, p. 34.
Al-Jāḥīz also considers the Turks psychology by pointing out that they are characterised by great home sickness for their own country and exceptional fondness for moving about. He writes: "Homesickness is common to all nations and prevails over all mankind. But it is peculiarly strong among the Turks, and counts for more among them". Al-Jāḥīz repeats: "Love of country and longing for it are mentioned in the Qur'ān and written of all people, although the Turk for the reasons we mentioned is more intense in longing and greater in desire". 1031

From this point, al-Jāḥīz passes on to a consideration of describing national characteristics other than the Turks. He said: "Good examples are the Chinese in craftsmanship, Greeks in philosophy and literature, the Arabs in fields that we mean to deal with in their proper place, the Sasanians in imperial administration". He added: "The Greeks are theoreticians rather than practitioners, while the Chinese are practitioners rather than theoreticians; the former are thinkers, the later doers". 1032

Afterward al-Jāḥīz describes the Arabs by saying: "they were not merchants, artisans, physicians, farmers, mathematicians or fruit farmers. They dwelt in the plains, and grew up in contemplation of the desert...... They obtained every goal, and in some of these respects their souls became larger, concern higher and prouder than all of peoples. Their battle days have been better preserved and remembered". 1033

Then he move on again to speak about the Turks. He explains: "The Turks likewise owners of the tent poles, resident of desert, and master of the flocks. They are the Bedouins of the non-Arabs. ... Since they were like that, they became in war like the Greeks for wisdom, the Chinese for crafts, the Bedouins in what we enumerated and wrote down, and the Sasanians in kingship and leadership". So as a result of these different characteristics and activities, al-Jāḥīz claimed that had broadened their minds and exalted their inspiration, so that of all nations they are now the most glorious and the most given to recalling their past splendours.

At the end of the second part, al-Jāḥīz concludes his work by apologizing for his own deficiencies. He writes: "We have mentioned the good points of all races, in collecting together what we have learned and what has come to our knowledge. And if we have hit the mark, it is by the assistance of Allah and by His appointment. If we have come short of their deserts, then the blame of our shortcomings must rest with the defects of our knowledge and the laps of our memory and our lack of information". He than adds: "If the author (al-Jāḥīz himself) had been expected to aim at exhaustive treatment in very subject that he handled in it,... then, indeed, it would have been a big book, filling many pages of large compass". However, the author suggests "a little that makes for concord is better than a great deal that makes for division".

To sum up, we can say that the Turks were the key element to any reconciliation within the Abbasid society, because of their central political and military role. So, through this *risāla*, it seems that al-Jāḥīz appeal for the acceptance of the Turks and the creation of a united society and he also called for new era, one whole values were to be rooted in the early years of the Abbasid regime. However, Lassner admits that the author’s vision of new society was not destined to be realised.\(^{1038}\)

6.3.7 The style of writing:

Although al-Jāḥīz himself denies that he wrote the *risāla* as a refutation or argument, but the content of the *risāla* obviously part of his argument against the opponent of the Abbasid’s policy as we have seen above. This is based on the style of language used in the *risāla*. Al-Jāḥīz’s style indicates that he is in arguing with his opponent. The word such as *(za’amta)* frequently was used in the text. To illustrate this aspect, let us follow this passage:

\[\text{وزعت أن اختلاف الترکي والخراساني ليس كاختلاف بين العجمي والعربي...} \]

\[\text{وزعت أن هؤلاء وإن اختلوا في بعض اللغة، وفارق بعضهم بعضًا في بعض} \]

\[\text{صوره، فقد تخلفت...} \]

\[\text{وزعت أنه أراد الفرقة والتخريب، وأنّك أردت اللفة والتتريب...} \]

\[\text{وزعت أيضا أن البنوي خراساني، وأن نسب الأبناء نسب أبائهم...} \]

\[\text{ثم زاعت أن الأتراك قد شاركوا هؤلاء القوم في هذا النسب...} \]

\[^{1038}\text{See, Lassner, The Shaping of Abbasid Rule, p. 136.}\]
The tone of the above passages is, on the whole, indicates that the author in argument with his opponent. The rest of al-Jāḥīz’s argument run on the style of “If they say, we say to them” which is also in the framework of the dialogue.

Al-Jāḥīz begins part one and part two of the *risāla* with the Islamic formula ‘In the name of God, the Merciful, the Compasionate’, a formula used to begin all but one Sūra of the Qur’ān. However, we find that the quotation of the Qur’ān and Ḥadīth is absent from this *risāla*. But this comes as not surprise at all, since the content of the *risāla* essentially informations of the composition of the Caliphate army, and we think here there is no space of the use of the Qur’ān and Ḥadīth. On contrary, there are many occasions in this *risāla*, which could be called adaptation of the Qur’ānic stories, for instance, when al-Jāḥīz tell his addressee: “He (Allah) created the angels, and He created Ādam without assigning to him father or mother, but formed him in a clay, and He created Eve of the rib of Ādam, and made her his wife, and He created ʿĪsā without a male parent and traced his descent from his mother, and He created the Jinns from the scorching fire, and the heaven from the smoke, and the earth from the water, and Ishāq from the barren woman, and He gave the power of speech to ʿĪsā in cradle, and He enable
Yahyā to speak prophecy as a child, and He taught Sulaymān the language of birds and the speech of ants...etc.”

In addition, the author surprises with the quotation of the Qurʾānic verse in the type of the Qirāʿāt (the variant reading of the Qurʾān). For example, in his explanation of the origin of Ābnāʾ, he says: “Just Abraham was made a father to one he did not beget, the Banawī is Khurāsānī by birth and the client of Arab as a defendant and inclusion in the group responsible for paying blood money”. And in the same condition, he continues: “the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) made his wives mothers of believers. Yet they did not bear them or nurse them”. In conjunction with this statement, al-Jāḥīz quotes this Qurʾānic verse which narrated with according to some style of Qirāʿāt:

(Quraʾ) و أزواجهم أمهاتهم وهو أب لهم

(His wives are their mothers and he is their father)

Abdullah Yusuf Ali on his commentary said that this verse shows the dignity and position of the Holy Prophet’s wives, who had a special mission and responsibility as Mothers of the Believers. They were not to be like ordinary women; they had to instruct women in spiritual matters, visit and minister to those who were ill or in distress, and do other kindly offices in aid of the Prophet’s mission.

---

1041 Please refer to the Qurʾān al-Karīm, Sūra al-Aḥzāb (33:6).
In short, the style of al-Jāḥiz’s writing in this *risāla* is excellent, as Lessner rightly points out, that the basic thematic lines of the text is clear enough and it does not readily lend itself to a thorough explication. The author’s credentials for observing the government and military were impeccable. ⁶⁴ This is because; the author was an eyewitness to events which occurred in his days.

6.4 Conclusion:

This chapter reviews and attempts a critical assessment of the *rasā'il* of al-Jāḥiz, in particular those relating to the semi-theological and semi-political issues. All of them are the most interesting work of al-Jāḥiz and are worthy of the careful analysis. As for its connection to the subject of semi-theological and semi-political, it is the most helpful in revealing a side of al-Jāḥiz’s interests in the theology and political life of his time. Throughout this works, we can see that *Adab* and Muʿtazilism went hand in hand in al-Jāḥiz’s writing particularly in all his exploration of different issues. From the *rasā'il* of the defence of the Abbasid against their opponent, we have seen how al-Jāḥiz, as Muʿtazila scholar, had presented his duty to attack and refute the ideas of the Abbasid’s opponent either from theological (religious) or political perspectives. It cannot be denied that this group of the *rasā'il* presents a vivid picture of the Muʿtazilī systematic argument against other people or parties. For example, in *Risāla fī al-radd ʿalā al-Naṣārāʾ*, al-Jāḥiz sets his task by attacking the Christians and Jews. While in *Risāla fī al-radd ʿalā al-mushabbiha*, his argument goes to the group of people known as al-Mushabbiha. This

---

rasā'il helps us also to gain an idea about the scope of the activities of al-Jāḥiẓ and the Muṣtazila. They have done their best, as showed by al-Jāḥiẓ, to defend their belief by their unique understanding and interpretation of Qur’ānic verses. Therefore, it can be said that al-Jāḥiẓ played his main role as defender of the Islamic religion and Muslims from the people of other faith particularly Christians and Jews through his works. He also can be assumed as one of religious thinkers in the course of third century of hijra to propose and promote dialogue between Muslims, Christians and Jews. Through his Risāla fī manākib al-Turk, the author provides a concise and cogent statement about the general composition of the early Abbasid armies. Therefore, this risāla can be considered as a historical document that sheds light on the structure of the Abbasid military and certain aspects or problems of the army. In short, we can say that the text of the rasā'il in this group rich of illusion to historical events and personalities at the time of al-Jāḥiẓ. It also represents the sense of al-Jāḥiẓ’s obedience to the Abbasid government against their opponents. From the discussion in this chapter, we are enabling not only to conceive the Islamic tendency in al-Jāḥiẓ’s writing, but also to see his view on historical situation as a Muṣtazilite thinker in a time and environment where various kinds of religious and non-religious tendencies faced each other in a strong dialectical dispute.
CHAPTER SEVEN

THE RASĀ'IL CONCERNING THE QUASI-SCIENTIFIC ISSUES

7.1 Introduction:

There is no doubt that al-Ḥayawān, a monumental work in seven volumes, is an excellent study by al-Jāḥiz concerning the quasi-scientific issue in which the author takes certain animals and sets out verses, anecdotes and traditions concerning them. Pellat has listed six works of al-Jāḥiz in this category; however, this chapter is designed to deal with only two main risāla i.e. Risāla al-tarbīṭ wa al-tadwīr and Risāla fī fakhr al-sūdān ‘alā al-bīdān. These two risāla are known as “the rasā'il of quasi-scientific” because they were based on the character of the work itself, as can be seen later on. An effort will be made here to present this aspect in their true light and to give a clear picture. Therefore, before we go into further discussion, it is important to note here that according to Pellat, the writings in this group are intended as a contribution towards a general education based on Arabic sources with some foreign elements. They also aim to

1044 The term means seemingly; apparently but not really or in limiting sense. The word 'quasi' used in connection with the word following; hence usually treated as a prefix and hyphened, e.g. quasi-art, quasi-scientific, quasi-belief, etc. For the detailed linguistic aspect of the word, see Simpson, The Oxford English Dictionary, Vol. XII, pp. 1001-1002.

1045 We have already discussed briefly about this book. See, chapter two of the thesis. For more information about the theological aspect in al-Ḥayawān, see Sa‘īd H. Maṣṭur, The World View of al-Jāḥiz in Kitāb al-Ḥayawān, Thesis Ph.D., McGill University, 1968. For instance, he argues that for a persuasive argument that the book is a work of philosophy and theology and better translated to “Book of life”.

1046 The rest of al-Jāḥiz's work in this category are as follows: al-Ḥayawān, al-Bīghāl, al-Aṃṣūr wa ajṣīb al-bulūdān, and Aṣ'īmat al-ʿArab, see Pellat, The life and works of Jāḥiz, p. 21-23.
make the reader think, both about receiving knowledge and about the nature and the evidence it offers of the existence of God.  

7.2 Risāla al-tarblīf wa al-tadwīr (The circle and the square)

7.2.1 The Significance of the Risāla:

The significance of the risāla lies in its content, which consists largely of a series of ironic questions on a wide range of topics, as we shall see later. However, when describing the topic of discussion in the risāla, Zubaidi states as follows: “Many of them are religious questions relating to Ṣadām (p.b.u.h.) and Satan, to ancient prophets, kings, peoples and historical events mentioned in the Qur’ān, to angels and devils, to Paradise, Hell and the Day of Resurrection, to prophethood, divine revelation and inspiration, to faith, guidance and perversity”. Consequently, Pellat describes it as “a masterpiece of ironic writing as well as a compendium of all the questions”.

Interestingly, we find that there is another significant element that can be pointed out from the content of this risāla which is related to the theme of the risāla itself. According to Ṭāhā Ḥusayn, the man of letter in modern Arabs world, the risāla can be categorised in the lampoonery theme. Indeed, it is a new approach in prose literature, because this theme normally can be found in Arabic poetry. Obviously, from the

1047 Ibid., p. 21.
1050 Ṭāhā Ḥusayn, Minhāj al-shīr wa al-rathr, p. 56.
introduction of the *risāla*, one can notice that matter when al-Jāḥīz pokes fun at the personality of his addressee as will be seen later.

7.2.2 The title and the text of the *Risāla*:

Hārūn has cited in his editorial remarks on the *risāla* that al-Ḥuṣrī al-Qayrawānī recorded in his *Jamāʾ al-jawāhir* that *Risāla al-tarbīyah wa al-tadwīr* was also known as *Risāla fī al-tawl wa al-qard* (The Lengthwise and the Breadth) and *Risāla fī al-tawassul wa al-tadwīr* (The Expansion and the Square). Hirschfeld stated that this work has been quoted by al-Thaʿālibī (d. 429/1038) in his “*Thimār al-qulūb*” as *Kitāb al-tadwīn wa al-tadwīr*. However, most scholars of al-Jāḥīz in modern times agreed that the correct reading of the title of the *risāla* is *Risāla al-tarbīyah wa al-tadwīr*. The text of the *risāla* has been published for the first time at Leiden in 1903 with two other works of al-Jāḥīz, i.e. *Risāla fī manāqib al-Turk* and *Risāla fī fakhr al-sūdān kāf al-bīlān*. Then, it appeared again in *Majmūʿa rasāʾil* by Sāṣī al-Maghribī. However, the first academic edition of the *risāla* has been done by Pellat in 1955, and then reedited by Hārūn, followed by other scholars of al-Jāḥīz. Now, the text of the *risāla* in academic edition can be found in Hārūn’s, *ʿUyūn al-Sūd’s* and Abū Milḥim’s

---


collection with varying length.\textsuperscript{1056} It was divided into nine divisions; however, the first four pages of the \textit{risāla} are missing from Hārūn’s and ‘Uyūn al-Sūd’s edition. Therefore, the text of the \textit{risāla} in their edition begins with this passage:

\[\text{فانظر لم تساممت النقوس مع تقارب منازلها ، ولم تجاذبت عند تقارب مراتبها ، ولم اختلاف الكثير وافق القليل ...}\]

For the translation, Pellat also has translated a selected text of the \textit{risāla} in his book about the life and works of Jāḥīz under the heading “The circle and the square”, which he claimed that it was the poor translation.\textsuperscript{1057} Elsewhere, Pellat again comes another translation of the title of the \textit{risāla} entitle “The Square and the Round”.\textsuperscript{1058} Apparently, the full translation of the \textit{risāla} has been done by Colville in his \textit{Sobriety and Mirth} entitled “Squaring the Circle”.\textsuperscript{1059} So, all English quotations in the text relating to the \textit{risāla} are from Colville’s translation.

\subsection*{7.2.3 The Addressee of the \textit{Risāla}:}

The addressee of the \textit{risāla} is Ahmad b. ‘Abd al-Wahhāb is fairly plain in internal evidence; however the information of him is very little. Al-Jāḥīz himself described Ahmad b. ‘Abd al-Wahhāb as a \textit{Kātib} (Secretary) and previously was one of his friends,

\footnotesize

\textsuperscript{1057} Pellat, \textit{The life and works of Jāḥīz}, p. 21.

\textsuperscript{1058} Pellat, \textit{al-Jāḥīz}, p. 87.

\textsuperscript{1059} Colville, \textit{Sobriety and Mirth}, p. 256-302. The text of the \textit{risāla} has been translated into French by Maurice Adad and it was published in \textit{Arabica} 13 (1966), pp. 268-294, \textit{Arabica} 14 (1967), pp. 32-59, and 167-190.
but, not after Ahmad b. ʿAbd al-Wahhab starts to show off knowing everything, and he then moved to Mecca. He belonged to Banū Bujayla, and has close relation with Ṣāliḥ b. ʿAlī and Sulaymān b. Wahb. He also was among the best companion of Jaʿfar al-Khayyāt. In many occasion in the *risāla*, al-Jaḥiz has referred his addressee as one of the Shiʿite Rāfiḍiʾs followers when he said clearly as follows: “You (Ahmad b. ʿAbd al-Wahhab) are Rāfiḍite”. 1060 And in another occasion, al-Jaḥiz suggests his addressee to substitutes the doctrines of the Muʿtazila for those of the Rāfiḍa. 1061

Furthermore, Abū al-Faraj al-ʿAsfahānī also gives some information about this man in his *al-Aghānī*. He said that Ahmad b. ʿAbd al-Wahhab was not Ḥāilib al-Dīwān (Secretary of the Administration), but he was one of the Kāṭīb al-Umarāʾ (Secretary of the Abbasid leaders). 1062 In other occasion, Abū al-Faraj claimed that Ahmad b. ʿAbd al-Wahhab was being as associate of the vizier, ʿAbd al-Malik b. al-Zayyāt and he was also a famous poet. 1063 In modern times, al-Ḥaḍīrī in his works says that al-Jaḥiz had described Ahmad b. ʿAbd al-Wahhab in many places in the *risāla* as the Rāfiḍite i.e. the radical Shiʿite. 1064 On the other hand, Khafājī claims that Ahmad b. ʿAbd al-Wahhab was working as al-Warrāq (copyist) with fanatic belief in Shiʿite. 1065 Of course, it can be seen in the *risāla* that al-Jaḥiz referred to him severely. However, the most important thing to say about him is that Ahmad b. ʿAbd al-Wahhab was one of al-Jaḥiz’s friends and his contemporary scholars.

1063 Ibid., p. 32.
El-ʾAṭṭār in his thesis comes with new idea when he assumed that Ahmad b. ʾAbd al-Wahhāb is expected to be a ‘charismatic’ Imam for the Shiʿite particularly between Rāfiḍīte followers.1066 This point of view comes from this passage of the risāla when al-Jāḥīẓ says as follows: “Even you were the Imam of the Rāfiḍa, you would have been killed in twinkle of the eye! And if you were so killed, the Umma would then perish, as you are a man without offspring”. This is the reason why El-ʾAṭṭār admits that Risāla al-tarbī ʾ wa al-tadwīr is anti-Shiʿite in outlook.1067

On the other hand, we would like to add that al-Jāḥīẓ merely pretends to address his victim and in reality speaks to other readers. Among these other readers the foremost one is al-Jāḥīẓ’s patron Ibn al-Zayyāt, which according to Gelder, at whose instigation to risāla was written.1068 Indeed, from the internal evidence, al-Jāḥīẓ himself asserts that his work is pleasing to the vizier and the general reader, not to the addressee.

7.2.4 Time and Purpose of Composition:

Al-Jāḥīẓ claims that he was written Risāla al-tarbī ʾ wa al-tadwīr against Ahmad b. ʾAbd al-Wahhāb, a Kālib (secretary) who is describes by our author as a person who boasted to know everything. From this point of view, we think that this risāla is closely connected with Risāla fī dhamm al-kuttāb in which al-Jāḥīẓ regrets of some of kālib in his

---

1067 Ibid., p. 307.
1068 Gelder, Jest and Earnest in classical Arabic literature, p. 98.
time was preoccupied with false education and appearance. Scholars of al-Jaḥiẓ have not given precise date concerning the composition of the *risāla*. Al-Ḥājirī for example, admits that the *risāla* was written in era of 6 Abd al-Malik b. al-Zayyāt when he appointed as a vizier of the Caliph al-Wāthiq between years 220 until 233. However, El-ʾAttār in his thesis extends to more specific date when he listed this *risāla* among the works which al-Jaḥiẓ has written in the second period of the reign of the caliph al-Wāthiq, which stretched from the year 229 until 231. At the same time al-Jaḥiẓ has already written some early part of *al-Ḥayawān* and *Risāla fī madh al-tujjār*. However, it seems that the *risāla* was written prior to *al-Ḥayawān* because al-Jaḥiẓ in his inventory for the first volume of *al-Ḥayawān* does not refers to this work, he does refer to it as a complete work later in the same volume. Pellat, however, assumed that this work was written between 227 and 230 A.H.

Another important thing to note here concerning the purpose of the composition of the *risāla* is that it is likely that al-Jaḥiẓ wanted to ridicule the person, who in al-Jaḥiẓ’s words “claimed the knowledge of everything”, by facing him with series of one hundred puzzling questions. However, we find that al-Jaḥiẓ avoids giving answer to the issues he raises in the *risāla*. Nevertheless, he suggests the reader especially his addressee to find their solution in his other works mainly in *al-Ḥayawān*. According to El-ʾAttār, the *risāla* also targeted against the interpretations of some old doctrine such as Mazdaism,

---

1069 For more detail on the *risāla*, please refer to chapter four of this thesis.
and Manissm, etc. This concern has been clearly mentioned by the author in his brief outline of the content of the *risāla* while inviting the vizier to examine his denial of this line of reasoning.

With careful reading of the *risāla*, one can notice that al-Jāḥiz’s real aim of his work is to examination the knowledge of his addressee. This is clear from his following statement: “I have asked you questions, knowing very well that you are completely unable to answer them. If you wish to know what is true and false in them, what is fictitious or absurd, what is sound and what corrupt, you must make a point of reading my books and coming to visit me at home”.

### 7.2.5 Outline of the *Risāla*:

The *risāla* can be classified under various subjects as possible. El-ʿAttār for example, classified it as the history of ideas as well as a useful literary mirror, which reflect the intellectual concern of the third century. Pellat claims that this *risāla* contains some literary features and it also draws attention to a variety of problems whose solution is unsatisfactory to a Muʿtazilite. From this point of view, he has recorded what the Arabs say “this book is the central pearl in the necklace”. In some extent, one can notice that the *risāla* is the collection of al-Jāḥiz’s questions he directs at his correspondent which relates to the folk tales, legend and ancient beliefs, etc. However,

---

1074 Ibid., p. 304.
the considerable Islamic interest attaching to the *risāla* is reason enough to examine its content in detail. Now, let us divide the text of the *risāla* into this simple outline to see its content:

a. Introduction (Description of Ahmad b. ʿAbd al-Wahhāb and the purpose of the *risāla*).

b. List of the some embarrassing questions:

1. Question on the flood.
2. Question on the history.
3. Question on the nature.
4. Question on the science of life.
5. Question on the archaeology
6. Question on the geographic and population.
7. Question on the idols.
8. Question on the science of the physiognomy.
10. Question on the fairies.
11. Question on the chemistry.
12. Question on the philosophy.

c. Digression from questions to:

1. Note on the disadvantages of the joking.
2. Apologise from al-Jāḥiẓ.
3. Note on the advantages of the joking.
4. Praise for Ahmad b. ʿAbd al-Wahhāb.
5. Imamate of the Shī'ite.

6. Reason for digression.

d. Return to the embarrassing questions:

13. Question on the prophethood.

14. Question on the religions.

15. Question on the magic.

16. Question on the remembrance and the forgetfulness.

17. Question on the mathematic.

18. Question on the music.

19. Question on the some of the book that has been translated into Arabic.

20. Question on the knowledge.

21. Question on the mirrors works.

22. Question on the colours.

23. Question on the desert tracking and darkness.

24. Question on the internal organ.

25. Question on the magic and Satan.

26. Question on the some of animals strange action.

e. Al-Jāḥiz's proclaim that the answers of these questions can be found in all of his works.

f. Note on the wise people saying.

g. Conclusion.
7.2.6 Analysis of the main issue in the *Risāla*:

7.2.6.1 The Introduction:

The *risāla* begins with the introduction in which al-Jahiz used it in a descriptive method to introduce his addressee by drawing his picture in the bad look. For example, he writes: "Ahmad b. ʿAbd al-Wahhab is a very short fellow who believes he is exceptionally all. Square shaped and squat with a broad chest and spreading waist, he could be mistaken for a ball. His hands and feet are podgy and his fingers short and fat". From this description, one knows that Ahmad b. ʿAbd al-Wahhab shape was very ugly.

Al-Jahiz then proceeds to describe more ironic picture of his addressee, saying that: "He is very old, but claims to be still in the full bloom of youth. His pretensions to knowledge exhibit an ignorance of all fields of learning and his efforts to display it are matched by a staggering incomprehension. He is disagreeable, quarrelsome, stubborn old man, always anxious to have the last word but out of his depth in debate".

Afterwards al-Jahiz adds some worse thing about Ahmad b. ʿAbd al-Wahhab, he says: "I know that you envy nothing as much as you do a handsome appearance, a good looking physique, a large head with clear and bright eyes, a fine reputation and the gifting

---

1079 Ibid., p. 431.
of largesse and favour”. He then goes on to tell his addressee and his reader as well about the subject in which he would write in this risāla. He says: “Having put up with him for so long that I had almost grown used his ways, I have now had enough. Accordingly, I have decided to expose him to one and all – nomad and townsman, villager and city dweller – by asking him one hundred questions. By poking fun at him in such way, the world might come to know the measure of his ignorance”.

It seems that al-Jāḥīz firstly addresses him ironically, then pokes fun at his build, his knowledge, etc., and gives him some advice.

7.2.6.2 Catalogue of embarrassing questions:

At a later stage, al-Jāḥīz decides to expose this person by asking him one hundred embarrassing questions. These questions contain elements of religious history, pre-Islamic tradition, Arabic legends, the genealogies, scientific, etc. Now, let us put it in order some of these questions, he says:

1. Tell me, what the Flood was like? When did the Ma’rib dam collapse? When did the mountains appear and the seas pour from the mountainsides go? In which seas does it end up? Which valley has it filled? How much land has been created and how many new springs have appeared? etc.

1080 Ibid., p. 431.
1081 Ibid., p. 432.
1082 Ibid., p. 433.
2. Tell me, at what date did mankind comprise a single community speaking the same language? How many generations did it take for the Zanj to become black and the Slav white? Why did skin colour change more rapidly than other bodily features? Why is it that a child exhibits physical characteristics acquired by its father, not innate in him, and yet no Arab child is born insane? What is the factor that prevents this happening? How long it was after the Tower of Babel before each group had a complete language of its own in general use?\footnote{Ibid., p. 446.}

3. Tell me, pray, which animal live longest: the vulture, the onager, the snake or the lizard? When can snake go without food? When do lizards live on nothing but air? When do vultures stop breeding? Why is it that the mule, which is a cross between an ordinary pigeon and ring-dove, reproduces itself, and the \textit{bukhti}, which is a cross between two humped camel and a female dromedary, likewise? \ldots\ Tell me about the giraffe: is it really a cross between female hyaena and she-camel?\footnote{Ibid., pp. 446-447.}

4. Tell me about the Anqa' Mughrib; what were its father and mother, and was it created spontaneously or by the union of a male and a female? Why is it said to be sterile, though supposed to be a female? At what point does it make a cradle for this child, and when does it cover the imam's supporters with its wings? When does it have a bridle put on it?\footnote{Ibid., p. 432.}
5. Tell me about the building of the ramparts of Ubulla and the founder of al-Hira'; who raised the building of Miṣr, and who was the founder of the city of Samarkand? Tell me about the buildings of al-Madā'īn: are they really, as is supposed, Shem’s handiwork? And is Palmyra really Solomon’s? How much time elapsed between the reigns of Ahab and Nimrod? And between those of Alexander and Solomon?

The questions are interrupted by some ironic comments on longevity and on legends about people who lived to a great age. Then the author resumes his questioning about various legends, jinns, magic, a passage in the Avesta, the manufacture of glass, the effects of poison, etc. There are more questions about true and false prophets, the various religions, sorcerers and their tricks, the important humours, numerals, music and the mysteries of India. For instance, he says:

6. How do false prophets compare with those candidates for prophecy who did not declare their calling or who did declare it but wore themselves out or whom no one responded to or who did not fulfil their promises? Describe for me the varieties of their trickery and schemes? Etc.

7. Do you believe that the Prophet once cast a spell on a piece of palmbark which he then placed underneath the steps of a well? Tell me what Prophet Isa is supposed to have said inside his mother’s womb and, later, in the cradle?
In addition, al-Jāḥīz asks various other questions about the sense-organs, and about Solomon, Jesus, etc., and interrogates his opponent about the mirror. He says:

8. Tell me about miffor. How is it that faces and other external shapes can be seen in them and in any clean, smooth, polished surface such as a sword-blade, a metal sheet, bottles or still water, or even in gleaming ink....? How is it that running water, flames and the glowing sun do not catch the reflection or fix the image?

9. Indeed, what is this image that is caught in the mirror? Is it accident or substance, thing, reality or illusion? Is what you see your face, or something else? If it is an accident, then what gives rise to it and create it, seeing that your face has not touched it or exerted any influence on it? Does the image seen in the mirror obliterate the image of the space it occupies? Why, since you do not see the image on the surface of the mirror, and why, since you seem to see it in the air behind the body of the mirror?

10. Does this colour, which resembles that of your face, obliterate the colour of the mirror? If not, then there are two images in one body, or two colour in one substance. If it does, how can it do so without having some action on them metal?

The author continues with his questioning, especially about the colour of peacock’s tail, tides, physiognomy, shadows, etc. He says:
11. Tell me about darkness: is it a physical substance that appears when light disappears or are we to understand it simply as the displacement? If darkness is an entity, do you reckon that it is occluded as light diffuses or is the earth itself a disk of darkness, just as the sun’s core is a disk of light? If one were superimposed upon the other, would they not cancel each other out, in which case we would see neither light nor darkness?

Then he turns to soothsayers and their mood of operation. He writes:

12. Tell me who would undertake to do such things (magic)? The devil, you say? Why should he do it for anyone?

Finally, on some animals’ strange action, he says:

13. Where do the saying, “more caring than a lizard” and “more devoted than a cat” come from, when both these animals eat their young? Why does the wolf raise a hyena’s orphaned young? Is it true that the wolf sleeps with one eye fast asleep and the other one alert? And etc.

Near the end of the risāla he says: “I have only a few questions left and with these shall bring this risāla to a close”. Then, the author closes up with questions about Greek philosophers and logic and complaints about the ignorance of the age. Finally, he ended this risāla with this humble statement: “If I have succeeded, it has been because I have only sought the truth. If I have erred, it has not been due to dereliction or

1086 Ibid., p. 486.
indifference but because, perhaps, some trait of character betrayed me or ingrained habit led me astray".  

7.2.7 Analysis of the use of the Qur'ān and Ḥadīth:

Remarkably to note that there are several quotations throughout the catalogue of embracing question in the *risāla* which can be called as Qur'ānic such as the story of Ād and Thamūd, the Abābīl bird, Prophet Sulaymān, Yūsūf, Īsā, etc. On contrary, the usage of the Qur'ānic verses was very limited in the *risāla*. The first Qur'ānic quotation can be found is in the paragraph on the discussion of the shape of human body. Al-Jāḥīz said that only stubborn oppose the plain truth and only the ignorant find fault with the facts. However, to fault an ungainly frame or alarmingly over-stuffed gut is not inconsistent with God’s saying in the Qur’ān:

(QYou can see no fault in the creation of the Most Beneficent) Sūra al-Mulk (67:3)

In the discussion of the merits of width over height, al-Jāḥīz said that his addressee claimed that the earth is described in terms of the former because width is superior attribute. However, according to al-Jāḥīz, God would not have described

---

1088 He says: “Where is the lost tribe of Ād and Thamūd?” See *al-Qur'ān al-Karīm*, Sūra Hūd (11:59-61)
1089 He says: “What can you tell me about the ‘heavenly missiles’? Were they enormous hailstone or block of baked clay dropped by flights of birds?” See *al-Qur'ān al-Karīm*, Sūra al-Fīl (105:3-4)
1090 He says: “Why did Sulaymān not know about the Queen Sheba, although she was powerful sovereign? Did he not have the genii at his command?” See *al-Qur'ān al-Karīm*, Sūra al-Naml (27:23-25)
1091 He asked: “How did Yūsūf not know where his father was? He was no less distressed, after all, and was a prophet and powerful man. And how could his father not have known where Yūsūf was?” See *al-Qur'ān al-Karīm*, Sūra Yūsuf (12:93-97)
1092 He asked: “Tell me what Īsā is supposed to have said inside his mother’s tomb and later in cradle?” See *al-Qur'ān al-Karīm*, Sūra Maryam (19:29-34)
paradise in terms of that attribute alone. Here, al-Jāḥīz quoted what has been mentioned in the Qurʾān:

(And towards Paradise, the width of heaven and earth) Sūra al-Ḥadīd (57:21)

In his advice to his addressee, al-Jāḥīz reminds: “Just drop us kind word and you will have us on board. Take more moderate line and you will me on your side. Then I will tell everyone you behaved with propriety; transgress and I will say you acted quite correctly”. However, al-Jāḥīz told us that his addressee comes up with thing similarly to what Allah has mentioned in the Qurʾān:

(As if the skies are ready to burst, the earth to split asunder, and the mountains to fall down in utter ruin) Sūra Maryam (19:90)

Near the end of the risāla, al-Jāḥīz asks his addressee to wonder at truth not at error. Here, he relates with what has been mentioned in the Qurʾān when Allah said to Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.):

(And if you (O Muhammad) wonder (at these polytheists who deny your message of Islamic Monotheism and have taken besides Allah others for worship who can neither harm nor benefit), then wondrous is their saying) Sūra al-Raʾd (13:5)

And in another verse, the Qurʾān said again:

(Nay, you (O Muhammad) wondered (at their insolence) while they mock (at you and at the Qurʾān) Sūra al-Šāfāt. (37:12)
On the other hand, there is only one quotation from the Ḥadīth of the Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.). This can be found in the paragraph on the question of magic and evil. According to al-Jāḥīz, the Qur'ān has already mentioned magicians. Here, he records Ḥadīth of Prophet Muhammad in which he said as follows:

(كَادَ الْبَيَانُ أَن يَكُونَ سَحْرًا)

Eloquence is within an ace of witchcraft.

And in another Ḥadīth, Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) also said:

(يَوْمُ الْيَمِنِ لَسَحْرًا)

Indeed, eloquence is a form of witchcraft.

The above Ḥadīth indicates that the term Siḥr which has been used by Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) means "eloquence" not "magic".

The risāla revealed that al-Jāḥīz urged his addressee to follow his approaches towards Muʿtazila, for instance, he asks him: "to start by repudiating anthropomorphism and the theory that God can amend an earlier decree; substitutes the doctrines of the Muʿtazila for those of the Rāfīḍa". 1093

---

7.2.8 The language of the *Risāla*:

As we have seen above that a large part of the *risāla* consists of questions without answers, hundred of them, posed in order to demonstrate the ignorance of the addressee. Many of these questions are serious enough in themselves; but according to Gelder, the long list with all its peculiar juxtapositions is irresistibly comical. In this *risāla*, we do find passages explicitly on seriouness and jesting. For instance, al-Jāḥīz says: “Tell me about the difference between Sind and Hind; between Hind and Mayd; tell me about those who perished because of nose-bleed; about those that were destroyed by ants…. What can you say about palmistry of examining shoulders-blades? What can you say about nibbling mice? .... What about a white cock with a split crests? and a black cat? And urinating in hole in the ground?”

It is remarkable to note here that almost all these question seems to highlight the elements of jest and earnest in the addressee, where al-Jāḥīz, at least apparently, intends to assist his reader, relieve his boredom with debate by relaxing him and giving him new energy by means of jest and earnest mixtures. The author himself already mentioned it: “This *risāla* is pleasing with all the mixtures it contains of a likes and opposites, of seriousness and jest, of restriction and letting free, of resuming and breaking off, off preserving and wasting,…etc”. Al-Jāḥīz admits also that when he speak about physical size, shape, height, and so forth about his addressee, all these words according to him may have a serious tone but the are, in truth, mere jest. This is clear that in another

---

1094 Gelder, *Jest and earnest in classical Arabic literature*, p.104.
occasion, he stresses: "You know I am only poking fun at you because I want to see you smile". Gelder suggests that al-Jahiz may have done it here, partly to defend himself against possible accusations of 'traechery and injustice' by Ahmad b. 'Abd al-Wahhab, the addressee, or by others readers including his patron Ibn al-Zayyāt. Therefore, we do find that the author several times mentioned in the risāla with apolgise to his addressee by saying (جعلت فداءك) "I would ransom you with my own life". This special passage indicates that al-Jahiz, as the author of the risāla has his own view towards his addressee. Remarkably to note here that such word has been repeated by the author more than in eight occasions of the risāla.

The use of digression or Istipād is obviously in this risāla, we do find the author transfered his discussion from one topic to another such as from listing the entire question onto the discussion on the joke, and then he comes back to the same subject again. However, the author has his reason for that usage, he says: "I have led you from one topic to the next because it is only natural to find too much of anything tedious and to be put off by what goes on for too long, even if it does contain much that is useful and good. I sought to entice you onto next topic before you had time to get bored with the last".

Al-Jahiz also used debate style in his writing of this risāla. His arguments, however, are sometimes presented in a systematic way in spite of the generally

---

1097 Gelder, Jest and earnest in classical Arabic literature, p.104.
disordered nature of the work. The usage of the following phrases Haddithnī, Khabbirnī, Mā al-faqīr, Wa mā taqūl and Lima zaʿamta, etc, are frequently used by the author.1098

7.3 Risāla fīfakhr al-sūdān ʿalā al-bīdān (The Boasts of the Black over the Whites)

7.3.1 The Significance of the Risāla:

The Qurʾān gives no expression to the idea of that there are superior and inferior races and that the latter are foredoomed to a subordinate status. However, there are only two verses in the Qurʾān which have direct mentioned about the race and colour. The first of these occurs in Sūra al-Rūm (30:22):


“And among His signs is the creation of the heavens and the earth, and the variations, in your languages and your colours; verily in that are signs for those who know”.

The second quotation, Sūra al-Ḥujurāt (49:13), is rather more specific, when the Qurʾān said:


“O mankind! We created you from a single (pair) of a male and female, and made you into nations and tribes, that ye may know each other (not that ye may despise (each

1098 A detailed analysis on the syntax in this risāla can be seen in Malkmus, Syntax and epistemology in the Kitāb al-tarḥīb wa al-tadhīr of al-Jāhiz, Thesis Ph.D., University of London, 1983.
other). Verily the most honoured of you in the sight of Allah is (he who is) the most righteous of you. And Allah has full knowledge and is well-acquainted (with all things)."

From the above verses, it is clear that the Qurʾān expresses no racial or colour prejudices. However, according to Lewis, the question of race and colour appeared in later times particularly when the attitude to black people remains on the whole negative. He further suggests that there are two main factors which helped develop a new sense of colour differences between the different races of people who lived in the Abbasid era. Firstly, the Arabs expansion into Africa and secondly, the growth of the slave trade brought large number of black Africans into Abbasid society. We find in Arabic prose literature that the question of colour particularly blackness, was discussed in special work by our author in his Risāla fī fakhr al-sūdān ʿalā al-bīḍān. Thus, we assume that this risāla was among the earlist references, which discussed the origin of black people and deals with the reasons for their blackness and contains collections of anecdotes illustrating good and pious deeds by them. The same subject was discussed at some length by the later authors such as Jamāl al-Dīn Abū al-Faraj b. al-Jawzī (d. 1200) and Jalāl al-Dīn al-Suyūṭī (d. 911/1505) in their works.

Pellat describes Risāla fī fakhr al-sūdān ʿalā al-bīḍān as a piece of anthropological work by al-Jāḥīz because the author devotes much space to his theory that the skin colour

---

1100 Ibid., p. 32.
1101 Ibn al-Jawzī by his book entitled “Tanwīr ghabash fī faḍāl al-sūdān wa al-ḥabash” (The Lightening of the Darkness on the Merits of the Blacks and the Ethiopians), and al-Suyūṭī through his book “Raf shfīn al-ḥubshān” (The Raising of the Status of the Ethiopian). These two books have been mentioned by Ḥajjī Khalīfa in his Kashf al-ẓanāʿī, Vol. I, pp. 501 & 910. According to Lewis, Ibn al-Jawzī attempts to defend both groups against the various accusations made against them, while, al-Suyūṭī’s work was based in part on the previous one. See, Lewis, Race and slavery in Middles East, Oxford University Press, Oxford, 1990, p. 32.
of black people was solely the result of soil and climate. However, Pellat might be wrong when he claims that this *risāla* is the evident of al-Jāḥīz’s racism, particularly when he says that al-Jāḥīz intended to disparage the white race to which the Arabs belong. Indeed, as one can see, al-Jāḥīz certainly displays a good deal of vigour in recalling the glorious history of his own race, because according to some biographers, it was said that al-Jāḥīz was partly African descent. But, this does not mean that al-Jāḥīz was indulged of racism, we can see that al-Jāḥīz was among the authors who gave balanced and factual accounts, based on his personal knowledge, of the black territories. In addition, Lewis admits that al-Jāḥīz’s defense of black people may perhaps be understood as a parody of Shuʿubiyya tracts, intended to throw ridicule on Persian pretensions by advancing similar arguments on behalf of the lowly and despised Zanj (blacks). On the other hand, Gelder describes this *risāla* as a sample of new genre in Arabic literature known as *taḥsīn wa taqbīḥ*. He writes: “his (al-Jāḥīz) epistle on the superiority of black to the white (i. e. *Risāla fi fakhr al-sūdan ‘alā al-bīdān*) is another instance of beautifying what was commonly deemed ugly”.

1104 Lewis, *Race and Slavery in the Middle East*, p. 33. The term Zanj (pl. Zunāf) originally is found in Arabic literature, and it is given by the Arabs to the black tribes. They come from the coastal regions of East Africa, which were a source of slaves for the Muslim countries in the middle age. The term *Bilād al-Zanj* was used for the territories. See, *The Encyclopedia of Islam*, art. Al-Zandj, Vol. XI, pp. 444, Glassé, *The Shorter Encyclopaedia of Islam*, art. Zanj, p. 432.
7.3.2 Title and date of composition:

The title of the *risāla* is *Risāla fī fakhr al-sūlān ʿalā al-bīdān*. Yāqūt called it as "*Kitāb al-sūlān wa al-bīdān*".\(^{1106}\) While al-Masʿūdī in his *Muriğ al-dhahab* named it "*Risāla fī fakhr al-sūlān wa munāzaratihim maʿ al-bīdān*".\(^{1107}\) Al-Jāḥiz himself mentions this *risāla* under the following description: "... the book of *al-Ṣurahā* ʿwa al-hujanāʾ (The pure Arabs and the mixed), and *Mafakhir al-sūlān wa al-ḥumrān* (The boasting of the black and the red), and *Muwāzana mā bāyna ḥaḍ al-khauʿāla wa al-umūma* (The comparison between maternal and paternal relation).\(^{1108}\)

Therefore, based on the above statement, Pellat suggests that *Risāla fī fakhr al-sūlān ʿalā al-bīdān* is part of the whole work of *al-Ṣurahā* ʿwa al-hujanāʾ.\(^{1109}\) The following remark of al-Jāḥiz himself confirmed this suggestion, he says: "As for the criticism, praising and boasting of the black and the red,\(^{1110}\) it is all collected in the book of *al-Hujanāʾ wa al-ṣurahā*'.\(^{1111}\) However, al-Ḥājirī, on the other hand, suggested that al-Jāḥiz indicates only the one books, it was *Risāla fī fakhr al-sūlān ʿalā al-bīdān*.\(^{1112}\)

---

1109 Pellat, *Gašṭiğana*, p. 175.
1110 Al-Ḥājirī admits that the Red, according to al-Jāḥiz, seems to be the white people, such the Roman, etc. See al-Ḥājirī, *al-Jāḥiz ṭayāwān wa dhamruh*, p. 241. Pellat said that this title might suggest that al-Jāḥiz, who was probably of African origin, and was a racialist. See Pellat, *The life and works of al-Jāḥiz*, p. 23.
The *risāla* itself which was published under the title of *Fī fakhr al-sūlān ʿalā al-bīḍān*.\(^{1113}\) we understand, however, that al-Jāhiz had already written the book of *al-Surahāʾ wa al-hujanāʾ*, when he said: “You have mentioned, may Allah save you from deceit, that you have read my book about the judgment of *al-Surahāʾ wa al-hujanāʾ*, and the answer of the latter ones and the answer of their uncles, and that I have not mentioned in it anything about the boasting of the black. So, I have written what I remember of their boasting”.\(^{1114}\) This note seems contradictory to what al-Jāhiz said about this book in *al-Ḥawayīn* as has been quoted above. However, from this point of view, as was suggested by Najm, that al-Jāhiz wrote the general book on *al-Surahāʾ wa al-hujanāʾ* and then, after he was asked to write in detail about the subject, he wrote another work on the same theme; this was the *Risāla fī fakhr al-sūlān ʿalā al-bīḍān*.\(^{1115}\)

The date of the composition of the *risāla* is not given precisely by scholars of al-Jāhiz. The nearest date has been given by Najm when she suggests that al-Jāhiz had written this *risāla* before the *al-Ḥawayīn*.\(^{1116}\) This indicates that this *risāla* has been written during the reign of the Caliph al-Mutawakkil. What is noticeable here is that the *risāla* seems to have been written according to a wish of an authority. Although al-Jāhiz attributes the arguments in the *risāla* to the Sūlān (Black)\(^{1117}\) themselves, it is evident that al-Jāhiz wrote the *risāla* in their mouth.

---


\(^{1114}\) See also Uyun al-Sūd's edition, Vol. I, p. 123.


\(^{1116}\) Ibid., p. 45.

\(^{1117}\) While the term *Bilāl al-Sūlān* is applied in classical Arabic usage to the whole area of black Africa south of the Sahara, from the Nile to the Atlantic and including such West African black states. Sometimes, according to Lewis, it is extended to the countries of South and Southeast Asia. See, Lewis, *Race and Slavery in the Middle East*, p. 50.
7.3.3. Text and Structure of the Risāla:

The text of the risāla firstly edited by G. van Vloten in his Tria opuscula auctore al-Djāhiz (Leiden, 1903, pp. 58-85), reedited by ʿAbd al-Salām Muhammad Ḥārūn and the latest edition we have is by Muhammad Bāsil ʿUyūn al-Sūd. The risāla, in the printed edition, consists of thirty nine pages with only one division other than paragraphs in both Ḥārūn’s and ʿUyūn al-Sūd’s edition. The only division we find in the text entitled Manāqib al-sūlān (The Virtues of the Blacks), which located in third page of the risāla. The text of the risāla is now available in English translation. Tarif Khalidi, for the first time, translates it under following title “The Boasts of the Black over the Whites”, and the latest translation of the risāla that we have is Colville’s translation in his Sobriety and Mirth. So, all English quotations in the text relating to the risāla are from Khalidi’s and Colville’s translation.

Before exploring the content of this risāla in depth, it is first necessary to break its content into its constituent elements. We would like to note that M.V. McDonald has divided this risāla into these elements: 1. Dedication.

2. Eloquent saying of pre-Islamic blacks.

---


3. Virtues of Luqmān (held to be black by Arab tradition).
6. Wahshī (killed Hamza at Uḥud).
7. Various black poets.
8. Julaybīb (black warrior at the time of the Prophet).
9. Faraj (the Prophet's cupper).
11. More early Islamic black heroes.
12. Ethiopian conquest of Yemen.

Having reach the end of this more or less historical or khabar type material, al-
Jāḥiz moves on to a more argumentative style of discourse which in fact forms of the
major part of the risāla. McDonald assumed that topic one to thirteen can be therefore
reasonably regard as an extended introduction.\textsuperscript{1120}

14. Good qualities of the Zanj. The latter part of this is an extended argument
intended to show that their generosity is not caused by stupidity.
15. The pre-Islamic Arabs had no prejudice against black; yet despite the
coming of Islam such a prejudice is now found.
16. Several poems in praise of Abraha.
17. Praise of the Negus of Abyssinian; the prophet's respect for him.

\textsuperscript{1120} Ibid., pp. 305-306.
18. Good properties of the colour black.


20. Proof on the basis of Ḥadīth that the Arabs belong to the black division of mankind.

21. Black are more numerous than whites, and thus superior.

22. Blacks are highly civilized in the interior of their countries (where Arab trading vessels do not penetrate).

23. Black has more offspring than whites.

24. Black does not feel sexual desire for whites.

25. Curious anecdotes about Zabaj (Jawa/Sumatra)\textsuperscript{1121} tending to show that the population of these regions (classified by al-Jāhiz as black) is enormous.

26. The Prophet married Māriya al-Qibṭiya (the Copt also regarded by al-Jāhiz as black), who bore him a son; he was addressed by Jibrīl as Abū Ibrāhīm.

27. Black Arabs; al-Jāhiz’s theories about the properties of the soil, which affect the coloration of men and animals.

28. A piece of pride (fākhr) by black poet.

29. Skill of the Indians (cookery, music and financial acumen).

30. Final account of another famous black (ʿUbaydullah b. Abī Bakra).

\textsuperscript{1121} For more detail information on the origin of Zabaj, see The Encyclopedia of Islam, Vol. XI, art. Zabadj, pp. 367-368.
7.3.4 Analysis of the content of the *Risāla*:

7.3.4.1 The Virtue of the Blacks:

In his introduction, al-Jāḥīz sets out to write a disquisition on the glories of the *al-Sūd* race. It is seems that the first part of the *risāla* contains quotations, anecdotes and poetry and other sayings of *al-Sūdān*. For example, the author enumerates the famous men such as Luqmn al-Ḥakīm, Saʿīd b. Jubayr and Bilāl b. Rabāḥ, etc. who were black, and then he quotes apposite verse by each of them. He begins with Luqmn al-Ḥakīm. He describes him as follows: “He was one of the blacks, and it is he who says: “There are three types of men whom you do not know except in three moments: the moderate man in moment of anger, the courageous man in moments of fear and the friend in your moments of need…”.”

He then mentions Saʿīd b. Jubayr who according to the author was also one of them. He states that al-Ḥajjāj killed him at the age of forty-nine, six months before al-Ḥajjāj’s own death at the age of fifty-three. When he was killed, men said: “We are all in need of him”...Also among the ranks of the blacks was Bilāl the Abyssinian, of whom ʿUmar b. al-Khaṭṭāb, said: “Abū Bakr is our lord, and he manumitted our lord (Bilāl) while Abū Bakr yet comprised a third of the Muslim community”.

The author mentions other famous black people and refers to the exploits of the Abyssinians and their country’s economic and artistic contributions. He asserts that black is superior to other colours. They are strong, brave, cheerful, and generous, and not as

---


people says, “because of weakness of mind, lack of discernment, and ignorant of consequence”\(^\text{1124}\). Al-Jāḥīz also highlights another false charge towards black people: that of stupidity. To those who ask, “How is it that we have never seen a Zanjī who had the intelligence even of a woman or of a child?” the answer, says al-Jāḥīz, is that the only Zanj they knew were slaves of low origin and from outlying and backward areas\(^\text{1125}\).

Another point is that the blacks are proud of their great number; also, the Arabs do not really know them, since all they see is black slaves. Al-Jāḥīz stresses: “Black say: Black men are more numerous than white. The most whites can count as their own are, Fāris, Jībāl, Khurāsān, etc.” Again he adds: “The Arabs are of our number, not the whites, because their colouring is closer to ours”\(^\text{1126}\). Lewis said that this certainly true, since al-Jāḥīz, along with some other Arabic authors of the third/ninth and fourth/tenth centuries, includes the Copts, the Berbers, the inhabitants of India, South east Asia, and China\(^\text{1127}\).

After some reflections on cross-breeding between races, and on men’s taste for the female slaves commonest in their own countries, and he repast that the blacks outnumber the whites, and gives his view on the origin of black skin. The author reiterates his theory about the influence of environment on skin colour. He says: “Blackness and whiteness are in fact caused by the properties of the region as well as the God- given nature of water and soil and by the proximity of remoteness of the sun and

\(^{1124}\) Ibid., Vol. 1, p. 196; see also *Uyūn al-Sūd’s edition, Vol. 1, p. 139.

\(^{1125}\) Ibid., Vol. 1, p. 212; see also *Uyūn al-Sūd’s edition, Vol. 1, p. 153.

\(^{1126}\) Ibid., Vol. 1, p. 215; see also *Uyūn al-Sūd’s edition, Vol. 1, p. 155.

\(^{1127}\) See, Lewis, Race and Slavery in the Middle East, p. 32.
the intensity or mildness of its heat. Such differences in colour are not the result of any deformity or punishment, disfigurement or shortcoming." It seems here that al-Jāḥiz noticed that blackness is not a curse or punishment, as is commonly alleged, but as result of natural condition. By the above statement, it shows us the quasi-scientific element of al-Jāḥiz's thought in the *risāla*.

Later, we find him quoted some verses such a poet, praising “Usaylim b. al-Ahnaf al-Asadī when he made mention of the black colour of the Yemenite Arabs, and verses of “Amr b. Shas (d. 20 A.H.) in which he described the children of Abyssinian and Zanj women. Then, he proceeds to deal with Indian culture in which he said that they are among the leaders in astronomy, mathematic — in particular, they have Indian numerals and medicine, they have the art of carving statues and painted figures. They posses the game of chess, they have splendid music; the book of *Kalīla wa Dimma* originated with them, and so on.

The concluding lines of the *risāla* are once more concerned with the Zanj particularly concerning one of another famous black people namely ‘Ubaydullah b. Abī Bakra (d. 79 A.H.), who was the blackest of blacks. At the end, al-Jāḥiz declares that “this, in sum, is what came to my mind of the vaunts of the blacks”.

---

1130 Ibid., Vol. I, p. 221; see also ‘Uyūn al-Sūd’s edition, Vol. I, p. 159. For the translation of these verses, see, Khalidi, *The Boast of the black over the whites*, p. 25.
7.3.5 The Style of Writing:

As we have seen, where the praises are sung of everything is black, such as black horses, sheep, stone (including the Black Stone in the Ka'ba), dates, earth, ebony, the pupils of the eyes, musk, ambergris, the state colour of the Abbasids, etc. This risāla, as described by Lewis, is an essay purports to be a defense of the dark-skinned peoples, especially of black people, against their detractors, refuting the accusation commonly brought against them and setting forth their qualities and achievement.\(^{1134}\)

After careful reading, we find that there is limited quotation from the Qur'ān in the risāla. However, McDonald suggested that there is only one topic in this risāla, which could be called Qur'ānic, i.e. Luqmn.\(^{1135}\) On the other hand, there are accounts of saying and doing of Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) and of pious contemporaries of the Prophet. Therefore, there is no doubt that the risāla is strongly Islamic in flavour, especially in the introductory section where we might expect to find this. We find also in the earlier part a fair selection from the Arab tradition, which could certainly be classified as khabar.

The bulk of the main part of the risāla, as seen in the outline above, consists of argumentative qiyās, and the approaching conclusion is signalled by a selection of nawādir. When, therefore, al-Jāhiz concludes quite abruptly by saying, "this is all that

1134 Lewis, *Race and Slavery in the Middle East*, p. 31.
comes to my mind on the subject of the black”. This comes as no surprise to the reader. The use of the poetry is interesting since there is no exclusive block of poetry; it occurs throughout the risāla, and serves to break it up into smaller units.

The language of the risāla is very clear, since the author used the dialogue style which is the standard structure upon which a prose text is usually founded (ḥadīth structure). The phrases like Qāla (He said), Qīla (It has been said), Qālū (They said), Qad qāla al-nās (Some people said), and etc, are frequently used in the text.

To conclude, Lewis said that the reader of al-Jāhiz’s defense of the black may sometimes wonder whether its intention is wholly serious. The reason is that al-Jāhiz was generally known and famous as a great humorist and satirist. We do find his statement in other works, such as al-Bukhalā’, al-Ḫayawān and al-Bayān wa al-tabyān, where he expresses or perhaps cites in several occasions a negative views of the Black (Zanj), for instance, he says:

-We know that the Zanj are the least intelligent and the least discerning of mankind, and the least capable of understanding the consequences of actions.

-Like the crow among the mankind are the Zanj for they are the worst of men and the most vicious of creatures in character and temperament.

1137 Lewis, Race and Slavery in the Middle East, p. 32.
-They (the Shu'ūbiya) maintain that eloquence is prized by all people at all times—even the Zanj, despite their dimness, their boundless stupidity, their obtuseness, their crude perceptions and their evil dispositions, make long speeches.\footnote{Al-Jāḥiz, al-Bayān wa al-tabyīn, Vol. III, p. 12-13.}

### 7.4 CONCLUSION

In the preceding pages we have merely highlighted the two works of al-Jāḥiz concerning the quasi-scientific issue i.e. *Risāla al-tarbī‘ wa al-tawrīr* and *Risāla fī fakhr al-sūlān ‘alā al-bīḍān*. The first shows us that a large part of it consists largely of series of ironic questions on wide range of topics including science, environment, religion, history and so forth, however, the entire question without answers. This indicates that al-Jāḥiz, as the author of the *risāla*, has wide knowledge and experience with the topics which had been discussed. The central message of the text may also reflect the ambiguities of the author’s self-identification. He was familiar with attitude towards mixing jest and earnest in his works. Therefore, he is regarded as the most interesting author on jest and earnest in the history of Arabic prose literature. For instance, we find on several occasions in *Risāla al-tarbī‘ wa al-tawrīr* that al-Jāḥiz justifies and explains his habit of inserting passages which bring some sort of light relief. Whilst, *Risāla fī fakhr al-sūlān ‘alā al-bīḍān* shows us the author interest in the subject of race and colour. It seems from the content of the *risāla* that the author relates his discussion with scientific elements particularly when he suggests that the influence of environment on the skin colour. However, after a close reading of the text seems to suggest that with al-Jāḥiz’s skill and subtle sense of humour, the problem of establishing his real attitude towards
race and colour is likely to be difficult. Indeed, he devotes this risāla to praise of the blacks; while on the other hand, he elegantly pokes a fun at them in another occasion of his works. In short, we find this variety of subject in al-Jāḥiz's discussion support the suggestion made by many scholars that one of the purposes of Adab literature is extension of the readers' knowledge into new areas.
CONCLUDING REMARKS

Before attempting to reach a conclusion on this research, let us now review the information available about al-Jāḥīẓ and his works.

Some points of the ideas:

Al-Jāḥīẓ was born in Basra; it was a centre of commercial and intellectual life where many nationalities and ideologies met. Al-Jāḥīẓ was a child of this Basran milieu and perhaps its best representative. Without a doubt he was a product of the first century of the Abbasid period. He had an Islamic education particularly with the Mu’tazila idea which emphasised the importance of the rational faculties for seeking and verifying the truth. In other words, al-Jāḥīẓ’s characteristic method of thinking manifests itself most significantly in the attempt he makes to compromise between, on the one hand, rational principles and on the other, social fact as they stand in the actual conditions of society. Later on, the importance of this way of thinking appears in the philosophy of history as founded by Ibn Khaldūn.  

The great energy of al-Jāḥīẓ in recording all his thoughts by putting them in books seems to have been one of the reasons why al-Jāḥīẓ’s works deal with almost every subject. His rasā’il, apparently dealing with different matters, contains many interesting remarks. Through this rasā’il we have tried to show that al-Jāḥīẓ lived in intimate contact

with the intellectual, political, social and religious tendencies of his age. His contribution to literary form and expression is a key to the Islamic thought of his time. Based on this great contribution, Beeston believes that al-Jāḥīz deserves to be ranked with Ibn Khaldūn, however, what he lacked was the power of organizing and systematizing his observations which is so conspicuous a feature of Ibn Khaldūn's work.\(^{1142}\) His examples in giving the groups of professions a special place in Arabic literature was followed by later writers who carried on this interest in their work. For instance, in the fourth/tenth century, writers like al-Thaʿalibī and al-Tanūkhī quote al-Jāḥīz on various occasions on themes pertaining to professional groups, classes and the personal characteristics of people.

It is remarkable to note that some of the writers during the Abbasid period lived exclusively by their pens and al-Jāḥīz himself is an example of those who lived by their own writing. With his modest background and powerful court connection, he received large sums of money through the dedication of his books to some of the Abbasid authorities. He seems to have held the opinion that books were the best way by which one could face one's rivals in arguments, whereas in arguing with them face to face, there is the risk of quarrel and rage which spoil the free spirit of reasoning and argument.

Above all, al-Jāḥīz was aware of the value of his work as much as he was aware of the fact that many people, especially his fellow writers, were going to attack him and disagree with him over the ideas within his works. Though al-Jāḥīz is in no way comparable to the Muslim philosophers and thinkers of succeeding centuries, he nevertheless occupies a prominent place in the early history of Muslim thought. He was

not, perhaps, a profound thinker, but he observed widely and his comments on every subject are inspired by solid good sense and sound reason;\textsuperscript{1143} all of which later scholars have been able to draw upon to get a picture of the various strata of religious, political and social elements during the third/ninth century. For this reason, Hirschfeld remarks in his account of the subjects discussed in al-Jaḥiz’s works as follows: “A perusal of al-Jaḥiz’s essays [rasā’il] well repays the time spent on them. He is a keen observer, an original thinker, and reveals deep thought even in apparently trivial subjects. His field is wide”.\textsuperscript{1144} For instance, he continues: “In the essays of which our MS is composed he has much that is relevant to say on matters theological, historical, philosophical, psychological, social, rhetorical, grammatical, and pedagogic, with occasional anecdotes interspersed”.\textsuperscript{1145} Indeed, this variety of subject matter applies, as we have discussed in this thesis, to Rasā’il al-Jaḥiz.

Some points about language and style of writing:

For all that al-Jaḥiz has won almost universal acceptance as the most outstanding writer of the Abbasid period and enjoys a preminent position in the history of Arabic literature, the dimensions of his contribution to the development of Arabic prose cannot be measured in precise term.

Turning to the criteria of language and style, the corpus of rasā’il or essay of al-Jaḥiz can be characterized as a mixed style. This can be distinguished from the corpus of

\textsuperscript{1143} Pellat, \textit{al-Jaḥiz}, p. 93.
\textsuperscript{1144} Hirschfeld, \textit{A Volume of essays by al-Jaḥiz}, p. 200.
\textsuperscript{1145} \textit{Ibid}, p. 200.
rasāʾil of the early period of Islam, which can be characterized as generally brief and concise and seems to be looser in style and simpler in diction.

Al-Jāḥiz’s works in general, are often not merely literary and ethical, but are combined with one or more branches of scholarship, be they the natural sciences, ancient and modern history, linguistics, dogmatic theology, or jurisprudence. His writing typifies the Abbasid concept of Adab, literature designed to impart essential knowledge and personal manners, while at the same time offering amusement and entertainment. His method of writing was characterized by assonances, balance phrasing and a tendency to digress. In addition, his works are distinguished by prolixity of diction, the love of accumulating synonyms, almost to weariness, and of expressing the same idea in as large a variety of phrases as possible. Indeed, the most important of these is his digression or istifrāḍ which has been recognised as the hallmark of Jāḥizian style. Therefore, it is worth quoting al-Masʿūdī’s dictum on al-Jāḥiz’s writing: “Their organization is excellent and their description is very good.... He clothed them in language of the most magnificent kind. Whenever he feared that the reader might be bored or the listener become tired, he shifted from something serious to something light, from a penetrating insight to a choice witticism”\(^{1146}\).

As religious controversies spread among the scholars of his time, therefore, as a Muʿtazilite thinker, the flavour of this school of thought becomes apparent in his works, both in content and in method. The method or argumentation throughout the rasāʾil is

that of a Mu'tazilite dialectician and we find this influence through the treatment of various aspects of his arguments which he presented with variety and linguistic skill.

As the Qur'an and Hadith were the starting point of the religious, literary and linguistic sciences which developed among the Muslims scholars, al-Jahiz employed both of these main sources of Islam in his writing. There are good deals of Qur'anic verses and stories which can be found scattered throughout his works which shows the author's tendency towards Islamic elements. As for quotations from the Hadith, we find that they are not always authentic (sahih) and this indicates that he tends to pick texts from those Islamic sources which confirm his own attitudes. Furthermore, he does not mention whether a particular Hadith is authentic or not and they will sometimes come in different wording from the original. However, it seems that the differences in wording which do not affect the meaning, favor al-Jahiz as a composer of literary prose. Based on the usage of these two important sources of Islam therefore, we can say that his theological, ethical and political writings are in tune with the religious principles of the writer which reflect the spirit of Islam.¹⁴⁷

Be that as it may, the importance of al-Jahiz in the history of Arabic prose writing is of the highest order and has never been questioned. Of its importance there can be no better assessment than that encapsulated in Pellat's verdict on the man: "Jahiz was not, however, merely a polemical writer in defence of the regime (Abbasid), the Arabs and Islam. He was also, indeed mainly, an adib. It was precisely because of his literary ability

that he was used by the authorities as a means of popularising the religious views of the moment and expounding current policies to the literate public". 1148

With his books and rasā'il being of a deliberately mixed style, al-Jāḥīz achieved several things: he was read and appreciated and rewarded by a different kind of readership; he popularised scholarly and theological ideas; he created a new genre and a new style in Arabic literature; and thus he contributed to the lighter and more exhilarating strain in Arabic literature that serves as a counterbalance to sobriety and gravity. Therefore, al-Jāḥīz has never lacked at least some admirers who explicitly praised him such as Thābit b. Qurra, al-Māṣūdī, Abū Ḥayyān al-Tawḥīdī and of course, modern scholars and researchers.

Pointers to future research:

Rasā'il al-Jāḥīz is an essay by al-Jāḥīz in which Arabic literature and Islamic thought merge together. This is a fruitful area of research which would repay further investigation. The rasā'il itself would yield rich information to the student of Islamic thought through al-Jāḥīz's discussion and reflection of specific subject matters. All the ideas that we have met in the analysis of al-Jāḥīz's Islamic tendency in this thesis deserve another independent study in order to see their place in the historical development of Islamic thought. His rasā'il, have been analysed and they combined anecdotal prose with other elements, including Qur'ānic verses, traditions of the Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.), poetry etc. We have already mentioned in passing issues such as Adab, social

1148 See Pellat, The life and works of Jāḥīz, p. 12.
problems, theological issues, inter religious dialogue etc. With this thesis, we hope that the vacuum in the scholarly library has been substantially filled. However, that is not to say, of course, that there is not an enormous amount of research that is still needed on the works of al-Jāḥiz. There might be some other directions which are worth taking. For instance, his rasā'il provides one of the richest resources for research on the social, political and religious life of the Abbasid age. His rasā'il on subjects such as trade, teachers, singers, writers etc. demonstrates the realistic attitude in his prose literature. It would be best to treat each risāla separately and to indicate its relevance to al-Jāḥiz’s theological, historical, political and social outlook. Al-Jāḥiz’s views on such aspects would make an interesting field for researchers.

In this, I have come to the conclusion that the study of al-Jāḥiz’s works seem to me to have become even more interesting and essential. His great ability was to produce works which to this day remain a masterpiece of Arabic prose. He was like a mirror to his time, reflecting in his works its richness, diversity and novelty. Finally, I cannot do better than quote the saying of al-Jāḥiz: 1149

"If I have succeeded, it has been because I have only sought the truth. If I have erred, it has not been due to dereliction or indifference but, perhaps some trait of character that has betrayed me or ingrained habit that has led me astray. Perhaps inadvertency waylaid me or distraction". (Colville’s translation)

GLOSARY OF ARABIC LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE TERMS APPEARING IN THE TEXT

Adab (pl. Ādāb): Bellers-letters, refinement, culture, manners, literature.
Adīb: Writer of adab; man of letters.
Ahl al-kitāb: The People of the Books.
Al-Khabar (pl. al-Akhbār) or Ḥadīth (pl. al-Ḥadīth): Narrative anecdotes.
'Arūḍ, prosody.
Al-ʾAṣr al-Jāhil or Jāhiliyya: The term used by Muslim writers to denote the period before Muhammad mission or known as “The Heroic Age”.
Āya (pl. Āyāt): Sign; miracle; verse of the Qurʾān.
Badr*: The art of rhetoric.
Al-Balūgha or al-Bayān: These two terms had each the meaning of both rhetoric and eloquence. Specifically, the terms meant eloquence and, when prefix with ʾilm (science), they meant rhetoric, i.e. the science of eloquence.
Diwān al-rasāʾil: Correspondence office; the bureau which dealt with correspondence.
Fann al-rasāʾil: The art/genre of writing risāla.
Fīqh: Islamic law.
Al-Fukā: Humour.
Al-Ghazal:
Ḥadīth: The Prophetic Tradition.
Ḥalqa: Circle of student listening to the lectures.
Al-Ḥamqā: The silliness people.
Ḥijra: The Emigration of Prophet Muhammad from Mecca to Medina.
ʾImāma: Chalipate.
Al-Istītārāl: Digression or in other word a temporary departure from one subject to another more or less distantly related topic before discussion of the first subject is resumed.
Al-Itāwa: Land tax.
Al-Jidd: Seriousness.
Al-Hazl: Joking.
Kăhin: Pre-Islamic soothsayer.
Kātib (pl. Kuttāb): Secretary.
Khaṭaba: It was used to denote both oratory and rhetoric; and khīṭab (pl. khutāb) from the same root, was the term for speech or sermons.
Kitāba: Writing.
Kunya: Name compounded with Abū ... or Umm ...
Laqab: Name alluding to a personal characteristic (earlier); honorific title (later).
Majlis: Meeting; Session; scholarly discussion; salon.
Masjidiyyūn: Members of the bourgeois, or idlers who exchanged ideas and held conversations on varied subjects at the masjid (mosque). The group was diverse, including, among others, poets and transmitters of poetry.
Mirbadiyyūn: Scholars who were based their lessons at Mirbad.
Mukhadram: Islamic poet born in pre-Islamic period.
Mutakklīmūn: Dogmatic theologians.
Nādir (pl. nawādir): Literally means rare thing, and its denotes a pleasing anecdotes containing wit, humor, jocularity of type which has never ceased to be an integral feature of all social gatherings, whether intimate or official.
Nāthir: Prose.
Al-Nāthr al-adabī: Prose literature.
Al-Nawkā: The idiocy people.
Qāfiya: Rhyme.
Qaṣīda: This term is generally defined according to its length that is from fifteen to eighteen lines of poetry.
Al-Qāṣī(pl. al-Qussāṣ): The story tellers.
Al-Qirāʾāt: The variant reading of the Qurʾān.
Risāla (pl. Rasāʾil): The literary essay; treatise; or epistle which addressed to a name (or without naming) person as a literary device.
Saf: Balanced and rhyming prose; utterance originating with pre-Islamic soothsayers, of primitive style, short and with a single, invariable monohyme at the end of each member.


Shuṭṭīyya: Anti-Arab political and literary movement, especially strong in Iranian circle.

Ṭubaqa (pl. Ṭabaqā): Generation; Class; Layer (mainly biographies of the illustrious men, cities, etc.).

Al-Tabyīn: The clarity of exposition.

Tafsīr: Exegesis.

Ṭībāq: Acronym or antithesis.

Uṣlūb al-mulaq or Uslūb al-mursal: The free unadorned style.

Uṣlūb al-mudawaj or Uslūb al-mutawā’in: The assonantal style; Rhythmic Balance and measured termination style.

Uslūb al-musajjāf: The rhyming style.

Uslūb al-qasam: The Oath Style.

Al-Warrāq: A term used to call people who are working as copyist.

INDEX OF AL-JĀHIZ'S WORKS AS APPEARED IN MUCJAM AL-UDABA' BY YĀQŪT AL-ḤAMAWĪ (d. 626/1229)

1. al-Ḥayawān.
2. al-Nisā'.
3. al-Nafīl.
4. al-Ibil.
5. al-Bayān wa al-Tabyīn.
6. al-Zar al-nakhl.
7. al-Nabī wa al-mutanabbiyya.
8. al-Ma'rifa.
10. Masā'il kitāb al-ma'rifa.
11. al-Radd 'alā 'Aṣghāb al-ilhām.
15. al-Radd 'alā al-mushabbiha.
16. al-Imama 'alā madhāhib al-Shī'a.
17. Ḥikāya qawl aṣnāf al-Zaydiyya.
18. al-'Uthmāniyya.
19. al-Akhbār wa kāfay taṣbihā.
20. al-Radd 'alā al-Nāṣirīyya.
21. 'Īṣām al-murkūl.
22. al-Radd 'alā al-'Uthmāniyya.
23. Imāma Muḥāwiyya.
25. al-Fityān.
26. al-Quwwūd.
27. al-Luṣūṣ.
29. Siyāgha al-kalām.
30. al-Mukhātabbūt fī al-tawḥīd.
32. Wujūb al-imāma.
33. al-Aṣnām.
34. al-Wukalā' wa al-muwakkalān.
35. al-Shārīb wa al-mashrūb.
36. al-Ifikhrūr al-ṣayf wa al-shītā.
37. al-Mu'allimān.
38. al-Jawārīn.
40. al-Bukhārī.
41. Fakhr mā bayn ʿAbd Shams wa Makhzūmī.
42. al-'Urfūn wa al-burshūn.
43. Fakhr al-Qahtāniyya wa al-ʿAdānīniyya.
44. al-Tarbhī wa al-tadwīr.
45. al-Ṭufayliyyīn.
46. Akhlaq al-mulūk.
47. al-Futūyā.
49. al-Ḥāsid wa al-maḥsūl.
50. al-Radd 'alā al-Yahūd.
51. al-\textit{Ṣura}'\textit{hā} wa al-hujānā\textit{hā}.
52. al-Sāliṭān wa al-bāliṭān.
53. al-Ma\textit{ḍ}āsh wa al-ma\textit{ḍ} āš.
54. al-Nisā\textit{hā}.
55. al-Taswiyya bāyn al-\textit{Ṣ}ār\textit{ab} wā al-
\textit{ṣ}ājam.
56. al-Sulṭān wā akhlāq ahlīh.
57. al-Wā \textit{ḍ} āl.
58. al-Buldūn.
59. al-Akhbār.
60. al-Dīlā\textit{a} 'alā \textit{ṣ}ā anna al-imāma
\textit{fārd}.
61. al-Istīlā\textit{a} wā khalq al-\textit{ṣ}ā lāl.
62. al-Muqayyinīn wā al-ghinā\textit{h} wā
al-\textit{ṣ}ān\textit{a}.
63. Hadāyyī\textit{a} manhūlīl.
64. al-Ikhwānīn.
65. al-Radd ʾalā man aḥad fī kitāb Allah ʾazz wā Jāl.
66. Ay al-Qurʾānīn.
67. al-Nāšī\textit{h}ī wā al-mutalāshī.
68. ḫanū\textit{tī} ʾattīrīn.
69. al-Tamthīlīn.
70. Faḍl al-\textit{ṣ}ālimīn.
71. al-Muzāh wā al-jiddīn.
73. al-Sawālijaīn.
74. Zamm al-zināīn.
75. al-Tasfakkur wa al-rītbārīn.
76. al-Ḥajar wā al-nubwawa.
77. Āl Ibrāhīmīn al-Mudabbīr fī al-
mukātabātīn.
78. Iḥlat al-qudra ʾalā al-ẓūlīn.
79. Ummahāt al-awlādīn.
80. al-Līțālīn wā fādīlīn ʾan al-fādīlān.
81. al-Akhtār wā al-marātīb wā al-
sinīrātān.
82. Uḥdīlā\textit{h}at al-\textit{ṣ}ālamīn.
83. al-Radd ʾalā man za'am 'anna
al-insān juz' lāy yatajazza'ā.
84. Abī al-Najmīm wā jawābihīn.
85. al-Tuffāḥīn.
86. al-Unsīn wā al-sulūkīn.
87. al-Kibrīn al-mustaṣfīsan wā al-
mustaqṣābihān.
88. Nadq al-ṭibīnīn.
89. al-Hazmīn wā al-faṣīmīnīn.
90. Anāṣīr al-adābīn.
91. Taḥsīnīn al-amwālīn.
92. al-Anmālīn.
93. Faḍl al-Fursīn.
94. al-Hinlājīn.
95. Risāla ilā Abī al-Faraj b. Najāhī al-
intīhān 'uqūl al-awliyā'īn.
96. Risāla ilā Abī al-Najmaīn fī al-
kharājīnīn.
97. Risāla fī al-qulūmbīnīn.
98. Risāla fī ittiḥād al-kutūbīnīn.
100. Madḥ al-nabākīnīn.
101. Dhamm al-nabākīnīn.
102. Risāla fī al-safw wa al-saḥḥ.
103. Risāla fī ithm al-sukr.
104. Risāla fī al-amal wa al-ma’mul.
105. Risāla fī al-ḥilya.
106. Dhamm al-kuttāb.
108. Dhamm al-wurrāq.
110. Risāla fī man yusammā min al-shu’ārā’ Amr.
111. Risāla fī al-yatima.
115. Risāla fī al-mīrāth.
116. al-Asad wa al-dhi‘b.
117. Risāla fī kitāb al-kimiyyā‘.
118. al-Istibdād wa al-mushāwara fī al-ḥarb.
119. Risāla fī al-qudā‘ wa al-wulūt.
120. al-Mūlūk wa al-umam al-sāliha wa al-bāqiyya.
121. al-Radd ḍalāl al-qawliyya.
122. al-‘Alim wa al-jāhil.
123. al-Nard wa al-shīṭrānī.
125. Khuṣūmat al-hawl wa al-‘awr.
126. Dhawī al-‘aḥat.
127. al-Mughannī.
128. Akhlāq al-shuṭṭār.
A: PRIMARY SOURCES

1.0 THE QUR'ĀN:

Al-Qur’ān al-Karīm


2.0 THE ḤADĪTH:

Abū Dawūd, Sulaymān b. al-Ashʿath al-Sajistānī (d. 275 A.H.), Sunan Abū Dawūd, Beirut: Maktabat al-ʿAṣriyya, undated.


al-Mundhīrī, ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz b. ʿAbd al-Qawī (d. 656 A.H.), al-Targhib wa al-tarhib, Cairo: Dār al- Ḥadīth, undated.


3.0 AL-JĀḤIZ’S WORKS


Majmū'a rasā'il, Edited by: Ṭahā al-Ḥājirī and Paul Kraus, Cairo: Lajnat al-Ta'līf wa al-Ṭarjama wa al- Nasr, 1943.


Kitāb al-bayān wa al-tabīyīn, Edited by: ʿAbd al-Salām Muḥammad Ḥārūn, Cairo: Maktabat al-Khanjī, undated.


Risāla fī tafsīl al-sūl ālā al-bīdān (The boasts of the black over the whites), Transl. by: Khalidi, in The Islamic Quarterly, Volume XXV (Number 1&2) 1981, pp. 3-51.


4.0 OTHER THAN AL-JĀḤĪZ’S WORKS


Al-Dāmirī, Kamāl al-Dīn Muhammad b. Mūsā (d. 808 A.H.), Ḥayāt al-ḥayawān al-kubrā; Cairo: Maṭba’at al-Ḥijāzi, undated.

Al-Dhahabī, Sham al-Dīn Abū Abdullah Muhammad b. Ahmad (d. 748 A.H.), Mizān al-ʿtīdāl fī naqḍ al-rijāḥ; Cairo: Maṭba’at al-Saʿāda, 1904.


______________________________, al-Iqtisād fī al-īṭiqād; Cairo: Maktabat al-Ḥusayn al-Tijāriyya, undated.


______________________________, Ḥamūf al-jawāhir fī al-mulḥ wa al-nawādir; Cairo: Dār Iḥyāʾ al-Kutub al-ʿArabiyya, 1953.


**B: SECONDARY SOURCES**

1.0 BOOKS:


Dāyf, Shawqī, al-‘Aṣr al-‘Abbāsī al-awwal, Cairo: Dār al-Ma‘ārif, undated.


Mardam, Khalīl, al-Jāḥriz, Damascus: Maktabat ʿArafā, 1930.


__The Majesty that was Islam__, London: Sidgwick & Jackson, 1984.


2.0 ENCYCLOPAEDIA:


*Encyclopaedia Britannica*.


3.0 DICTIONARY:


4.0 ARTICLE IN JOURNAL:


**5.0 ARTICLE IN PROCEEDING:**


Izzi Dien, Mawil, ‘Religion, the State and the Ḥadâthâ Movement in Saudi literature’, *BRISMES*, (St. Andrew, 1992), 574-581.


6.0 OCCASIONAL PAPERS:


7.0 THESIS:


8.0 INTERNET:

http://www.muslimphilosophy.com/ei/JAHLIZ.htm

http://www.google.com/u/lamp?q=aljahiz%2C+zamri+arisin&domains

http://www.geocities.com/abu_gurnah/abuutmanamribnbahralbasrialjahiz.html

http://www.muslimtents.com/almarja/jahiz.html

http://www.harf.com/arb/

http://www.geocities.com/Hot springs/677/j-4.html